

THE TURKISH LANGUAGE EXPLAINED FOR ENGLISH SPEAKERS

**A Treatise on the Turkish
Language and its Grammar**



JOHN GUISE

THE TURKISH LANGUAGE EXPLAINED FOR ENGLISH SPEAKERS

**A Treatise on the Turkish
Language and its Grammar**



JOHN GUISE



The Turkish Language Explained for English Speakers

A Treatise on the Turkish Language and its Grammar.

John Guise



Title: The Turkish Language Explained for English Speakers.

Description: A Treatise on the Turkish Language and its Grammar.

Updated: August 2015 **ISBN 978-0-473-20817-2**

Copyright: 2012 John Guise. All rights reserved.



Manisa Turkish

<http://www.turkishlanguage.co.uk>

ISBN 978-0-4732081-7-2



Table of Contents

[The Turkish Language Explained for English Speakers](#)

[Foreword](#)

[Ch. 1 : About the Turkish Language.](#)

[Ch. 2 : Vowel Harmony](#)

[Ch. 3 : Consonant Mutation](#)

[Ch. 4 : Buffer Letters](#)

[Ch. 5 : The Suffixes](#)

[Ch. 6 : The Articles](#)

[Ch. 7 : Nouns](#)

[Ch. 8 : Adjectives](#)

[Ch. 9 : Personal Pronouns](#)

[Ch. 10 : Possessive Adjectives](#)

[Ch. 11 : The Possessive Relationship](#)

[Ch. 12 : Possessive Constructions](#)

[Ch. 13 : Possession Var and Yok](#)

[Ch. 14 : Verbs The Infinitive](#)

[Ch. 15 : The Verb "To be"](#)

[Ch. 16 : Present Continuous Tense](#)

[Ch. 17 : Simple Tense Positive](#)

[Ch. 18 : Simple Tense Negative](#)

[Ch. 19 : Future Tense](#)

[Ch. 20 : Past Tense](#)

[Ch. 21 : The Conditional Mood](#)

[Ch. 22 : Auxiliary Verbs](#)

[Ch. 23 : The Imperative Mood](#)

[Ch. 24 : The Co-operative Mood](#)

[Ch. 25 : The Passive Mood](#)

[Ch. 26 : The Causative Mood](#)
[Ch. 27 : The Mood of Obligation](#)
[Ch. 28 : The Potential Mood](#)
[Ch. 29 : The Mood of Wish and Desire](#)
[Ch. 30 : Verbal Adjectives and Nouns](#)
[Ch. 31 : Object Participles](#)
[Ch. 32 : İken "while"](#)
[Ch. 33 : Verbal Nouns](#)
[Ch. 34 : Adverbial Clauses](#)
[Ch. 35 : Ki "that, which, who"](#)
[Ch. 36 : Demonstratives](#)
[Ch. 37 : Spatial](#)
[Ch. 38 : Spatial Relationships](#)
[Ch. 39 : Time and Seasons](#)
[Ch. 40 : Colours](#)
[Ch. 41 : Numbers](#)
[Ch. 42 : Word Recognition in Turkish](#)
[Ch. 43 : Conversation Items](#)
[Ch. 44 : How to say "Thank you"](#)
[Ch. 45 : Street Turkish and Daily Talk](#)
[Ch. 46 : About buyurun "Please be so kind"](#)
[Ch. 47 : Turkish Modes of Address](#)
[Ch. 48 : Greetings](#)
[Ch. 49 : How to say - "Too much, many"](#)
[Ch. 50 : Word Glossaries](#)
[Ch. 51 : An Apocopating Noun List](#)
[Ch. 52 : Conversational Locutions](#)
[Ch. 53 : Common Daily Words](#)
[Ch. 54 : Irregular Simple Tense Verbs](#)
[Ch. 55 : Single Syllable Verbs](#)

[Ch. 56 : Turkish Intensified Adjectives](#)

[Ch. 57 : Turkish Doubled Words](#)

[Ch. 58 : The Author and the Book](#)

[ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS](#)

Foreword



This Treatise on the Turkish Language and its Grammar explains and answers some of the difficulties that the learner of Turkish may encounter along their way.

The focus is on understanding Turkish grammar and logic. Those who are interested in the whys and wherefores of Turkish will find amongst these pages the key to their particular problem of Turkish grammar and syntax.

This book covers the basics of Turkish and further expands knowledge and understanding of Turkish by using many examples with explanations.

It does not contain any practice exercises or sound files. Many of these type of basic Turkish grammar lessons can be found in other text books or on the world wide web.

It is a book that will be used over the whole of the learning process from basic beginner through to intermediate and advanced stages of learning.

Turkish Basic Grammar:

Alphabet

Vowel Harmony

Agglutination (*suffixing words to change their meaning.*)

Consonant Mutation

Lack of Gender.

Intermediate:

Nouns and Pronouns

Adjectives

Verbs and Tenses

verbs and tenses

Possessive Relationship and Possession.

Advanced:

Verb Moods (*can, may, must*)

Participles (*verbal nouns and adjectives*)

Spatials and Spatial Relationships (*where to, from, at*)

Word Formation in Turkish.

Conversational Items:

Time, Seasons, Numbers, Colours

Saying "*Thank you*"

About "*buyurun* " to express politeness

Expressing need and obligation

Daily Interjections

Modes of Address

Turkish Sign Language

How to say "*too much, too many*"

Daily Talk

Common Door Signs.

Glossaries:

List of Daily Locutions

Daily Word List

Irregular Tense List

Turkish Single Syllable Verb List

Intensified Adjectives List

Reduplicated Words.

A Nutshell Overview Turkish

In Turkish words are changed by suffixing other words on to them. These other little important words show motion towards, location and motion from.

These added words change their spelling according to set rules and they must follow the same vowel pattern (*Vowel Harmony*) as the word they are being

affixed to.

Sometimes they also have a consonant change (*Consonant Mutation*) for ease of pronunciation.

These little words (*suffixes*) added to the stem of a verb may indicate its positive or negative form. Suffixes are then added for tense and person.

Further meaning to verbs (*Verb Moods*) such as **may, might, can, can't** are also supplied by a suffix to the original verb, thus producing a new word.

Nouns are also suffixed with possessor and the motion or location words are then added.

There is no word for the Definite Article *the* and also there are no gender forms (*no "le" or "la" as in French.*)

Adjectives (*describing words*) precede their noun as in English and always remain in their basic form. There being a lack of gender, thus no agreement is required.

The sentence form is **SOV** *Subject, Object, Verb*.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 1 : About the Turkish Language.



The Turkish Language and its Grammar

"Turkish is a real pleasure; the ingenious grammar, the regularity, the transparency and intelligibility of the whole structure show the wonderful power of the human mind displaying itself in language."

The Origins of Turkish.

The Turkish Language originated in The Altay Mountain Range in Northern Siberia centuries ago. For this reason it is called an Altaic Language.

As nomads expanded further into Asia Minor they brought their language to Turkmenistan, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Azerbaijan and other countries.

Many of these languages are mutually intelligible although local usage and vocabulary, spelling and alphabet may differ.

They all exhibit the same grammatical structure of agglutination and vowel harmony.

Turkish, being a language emanating from Central Asia, is spoken from the borders of Greece into the hinterland of Western China.

While the Ottoman Empire flourished Turkish was spoken from Vienna to Arabia, Egypt and Northern Africa.

The Turkish vocabulary contains many words from Arabic, Persian and European languages.

These imported words mostly follow the basic grammar and vowel harmony of native Turkish.

The Structure of Turkish.

Turkish is not a Classical Structured Language.

The Turkish grammar is not looked on by the Turks themselves as a Classical Structured Language. They have their own grammar rules which are not based on the Classical System as those in Latin or Greek. Most Turkish grammars for foreigners are written by linguists and grammarians, usually in consort with a Turkish national, and they tend to use a classical language framework.

Consequently most grammars are peppered with "classical terms" as "accusative, dative, locative and ablative" together with such tenses and moods as "aorist, subjunctive etc."

This book uses Turkish grammar nomenclature and many classical grammar terms have been discarded.

Turkish has the concept of Vowel Harmony; the vowels of suffixes must mirror the final vowel of the root word being suffixed.

Also there is Consonant Mutation, where spelling changes are made to preserve phonetic euphony with actual pronunciation.

English has some consonant change usually to distinguish between different meanings of utterance. (*fare, fair, peer, pier*) There is also a "Reflexive Genitive" in Turkish where both the "owner" and "owned" are suffixed. This construction does not occur in English as only "owner" is modified (John's chair.) In this book, Turkish grammar rules are followed and it is called the "Possessive Relationship".

Turkish is characterized by vowel harmony, consonant mutation and agglutination (*word suffixation*).

Post-positions (*suffixes*) are used instead of prepositions as in English.

Suffixes added to the stem of a verb may indicate positive or negative forms of the passive, reflexive, causative, potential, subjunctive moods plus further additions for tense and person.

Nouns can be suffixed with possessor (*my, your*) and condition (*to from, in*).

Both the subject definite article and grammatical gender are lacking.

Adjectives precede their noun and do not have to agree in number or case.

The sentence form is **SOV** *Subject, Object, Verb*.

The Turkish Alphabet.

The Turkish Alphabet was changed in 1928 from the Ottoman script to Latin characters soon after the Turkish Republic was declared.

Turkish does not as a rule allow two vowels to occur together. There are exceptions, but mostly in foreign imported words.

As there are no diphthongs, whenever vowels do occur together they are each pronounced as a separate sound.

The letter **-Y-** is considered as a consonant in Turkish. It is widely used as a **buffer consonant** to keep vowels apart during word building.

The alphabet consists of twenty-one consonants and eight vowels. There are no letters W, X, Q.

Turkish pronunciation is phonetic as each letter retains its individual pronunciation at all times.

A B C Ç D E F G Ğ H I İ J K L M N O Ö P R S Ş T U Ü V Y Z

Letter Pairs

There are six pairs of similar but different letters. Each letter of the pair has a different pronunciation.

C - Ç G - Ğ I - İ
O - Ö S - Ş U - Ü

Turkish Vowel Pronunciation.

The Eight Vowels are divided into two groups for Vowel Harmony purposes.

The **A-UnDotted Group** of four vowels **a i o u**

The **E-Dotted Group** of four vowels **e i ö ü**

All pronunciation examples shown are given in British English.

The A-UnDotted Vowel Group.

A is as **u** in English *lucky* or *mutter*.

I [UnDotted I] is the **er** sound in *porter* or *water* without any **r** sound.

O is as the **o** sound in *lottery* or *bottom*.

U is as the **oo** sound in *loot* or *boot*.

The E-Dotted Vowel Group.

E is as **e** in *letter* or *set* or *met*.

İ [Dotted İ] is as **ee** in *meet* or **ea** in *seat*.

Ö is as **ir** in *bird* or *shirt* without any **r** sound.

Ü is as **ew** sound *few* or *stew*.

Turkish vowels are pronounced shorter than English vowels.

This is one of the difficulties for Turkish learners as they are sometimes difficult to distinguish in normal paced conversation.

Turkish Consonant Pronunciation.

The Pronunciation of these Consonants differs from English Pronunciation:

C is always a **J** sound as in *JamJar*.

[In Turkish the word sound "jamjar" would be spelled "camcar"]

Ç is the **CH** sound as in **CHurCH**.

G is always hard as in **Gate**. It is never soft as in "General."

Ğ (soft G) lengthens the preceding vowel. It has no sound and never begins a word.

[The Turkish **soft ğ** can be likened to the **silent "gh"** sound in the English words *weight, light, fought*.]

H is always aspirated as in **Henry**. It is never silent as in "Heir".

R is always strongly rolled even on the end of words.

S is always hissed as in **Safe**. It is never a **z** sound as in "these" or "those".

Ş is the **SH** sound as in **SHarp** or **baSH**.

Sound Names used in Wireless and Telegraphy.

A-Adana, B-Bolu, C-Ceyhan, Ç-Çanakkale, D-Denizli, E-Edirne, F-Fatsa, G-Giresun, Ğ-Yumuşak ge, H-Hatay, I-Isparta, İ-İzmir, J-Jandarma, K-Kars, L-Lüleburgas, M-Muş, N-Niğde, O-Ordu, Ö-Ödemiş, P-Polatlı, R-Rize, S-Sinop, Ş-Şırnak, T-Tokat, U-Uşak, Ü-Ünye, V-Van, Y- Yozgat, Z-Zonguldak

The Features of Turkish Grammar.

The Adjectives

Adjectives and adjectival phrases precede their noun and do not agree in number or gender.

Adjectives can not be suffixed and cannot be plural.

Some adjectives have an "intensified" version. A list of these is shown in the Word Glossary (Ch. 56)

Vowel Harmony

Turkish has eight vowels consisting of four pairs:

A - E I - İ O - Ö U - Ü

having corresponding front/back, and rounded/un-rounded sounds.

This difference in pronunciation forms the basis for Vowel Harmony Rules.

According to these rules, vowels of suffixes must have the same properties as the vowel in the last syllable of the word being suffixed: either front/back or rounded/un-rounded.

Agglutination (addition of suffixes)

Agglutination in Turkish takes the form of suffixes attached to the end of nouns and verbs.

These suffixes add to the word's meaning and/or mark its grammatical function.

Words may have chains of different suffixes added to them.

The Absence of Gender

Turkish has no gender distinctions, nor does it have gender pronouns.

The single word "O" signifies *he, she, it*.

Verbs

The verb always come at the end of the sentence.

Sentence construction follows the *subject-object-verb* (SOV) pattern.

The Structure of Turkish

Turkish differs in both grammatical structure and vocabulary to the Indo-European and Romance languages, English, Spanish, French *etc.*

Turkish is a phonetic language as each letter always retains its own sound.

In English the sound of the letters can change, as the letter *a* does in "*fat, fate, fare*" etc.

Turkish has no such pronunciation change to letters of the alphabet.

Consonant Mutation

In certain circumstances changes are made to the spelling of consonants.

If the pronunciation of a consonant changes the spelling also changes to reflect this.

Turkish Noun Conditions.

These six conditions are suffixed to the root word according to Vowel Harmony Rules.

The vowels of the suffix match the final vowel of the root word.

Subject Condition (Nominative)

The root word (nominative) carries no suffix. The Subject Condition is regarded as already substantive in Turkish.

There is no separate subject definite article.

el

hand, the hand.

adam

man, the man

Ownership Condition (Genitive): -in/-ın/-un/-ün

The condition of "belonging to" meaning *of*, 's in English.

elin [el-in]

the hand's, of the hand.

arabının

[araba-nın]
the car's, of the car

Specific Object Condition (Accusative): -i/-ı/-u/-ü

The direct object of a verb meaning *specific the* in English.

eli

[el-i]
the hand (obj.)

gözü

[göz-ü]
the eye (obj.)

Movement Towards Condition (Dative): -(y)a/-(y)e

The condition of movement towards meaning *to, towards* in English.

ele

[el-e]
to/towards the hand.

masaya

[masa-ya]
to, towards the table

Static Position Condition (Locative): -da -ta/-de -te

The condition of place and position meaning *in, on, at* in English.

elde

[el-de]
in/on/at the hand.

işte

[iş-te]
at work.

Movement Away Condition (Ablative): -dan/-den/-ten/-ten

Movement Away Condition (Ablative): -dan -tan/-den -ten

The Movement Away condition meaning *from, by, via* in English.

elden

[el-den]

from/by/via the hand.

işten

[iş-ten]

from work.

Turkish Grammar is Regular.

Turkish Pronunciation is Phonetic, In Turkish each letter of the alphabet always retains its basic pronunciation.

Turkish grammar is regular but differs in that it consists of post-positions which are suffixed directly to nouns or other parts of speech to modify their meaning.

Agglutination (*a sticking on to.*)

The putting together of language particles where each expresses a single definite meaning, thus forming a new word.

The use of suffixes is called **agglutination**, literally meaning "a gluing on". This is in contrast to English which uses individual prepositions for the same reasons.

In English there are many words which agglutinate (extend) to form other words.

The word **argue** can be agglutinated to **argument** by sticking on a **-ment** suffix.

his word can take addition the suffix **-ative** producing **argumentative** and even further to **argumentatively** by adding a the **-ly** suffix.

This then, is the way of Turkish. Even the little words like *in, from, at* are suffixed to their noun, thus producing an extended word.

Consonant Mutation.

Changes in pronunciation and spelling of consonants to preserve phonetics and euphony.

About Voicing of Consonants.

A Voiced Consonant is one where the voice box is used to produce the sound **d**, **b** are in this category.

An Unvoiced Consonant is where the voice is silent and only air is expelled to produce the sound such as **t**, **p**.

The Main Consonants with Two Forms in Turkish.

There is some consonant mutation in English. The terminal *-y* of *lady* changes to an *-ie-* in its plural *ladies*, and the terminal *-f* of *knife* changes to a *-v-* in its plural *knives*.

Turkish has consonant change, but it is on a larger scale than English.

The changes: *k* to *ğ* and *d* to *t*.

The main changes that occur in Turkish words is that a terminal **-k** may change to a **-ğ** (soft **g**) when a suffix with a vowel is added.

The first letter **-d** of a suffix may change to a **-t** when the suffix is added to a word ending in a hard (unvoiced) consonant **ç f h k p s ş t**.

There are also some other minor consonant changes.

The Eight Vowels of Turkish.

In Turkish the voice sounds are separated into two main groups, consonants and vowels. When there is no obstacle to a voice then the sound is called a vowel.

Vowel Classification.

This is a description of how the Turkish vowels are classified by linguists. This book does not use this system, it is only added for completeness.

(A) According to the position of tongue and exit

(A) According to the position of tongue and exit.

The A-UnDotted vowels are pronounced at the back of the mouth more like English.

Thick vowels: **a ı o u.**

The A-UnDotted vowels are pronounced at the back of the mouth more like English.

Thin vowels: **e i ö ü.**

E-Dotted vowels are pronounced at the front of the mouth, as the French Language.

(B) According to the lips positioning.

Straight vowels: **a e ı i**

Rounded vowels: **o ö u ü**

(C) According to the mouth opening.

Wide Vowels: **a e o ö**

Narrow vowels: **ı i u ü**

Vowel Harmony Basics.

Vowel Harmony: *A grammatical rule where subsequent vowels in a word or suffix follow the vowel properties (rounded/un-rounded, front produced/back produced) of the previous vowel.*

A peculiarity of Turkish is **Vowel Harmony** where vowels can change in pronunciation and spelling to mirror the previous vowel in a word.

In this book Turkish vowels are classified into two groups as follows:

The **A-UnDotted Group** of four vowels are **a ı o u**

The **E-Dotted Group** of four vowels are **e i ö ü**

The harmony lies in the fact that all Turkish words of Altaic Turkic Origin are

pronounced entirely containing: **(1) A-UnDotted Vowels**

The A-UnDotted plural suffix **-lar** is added to **kapı** to form the word for *doors* **kapılar** **(2) E-Dotted Vowels**

The E-Dotted plural suffix **-ler** is added to **köylü** to produce *villagers* **köylüler**.

All suffixes follow vowel harmony.

For every suffix there is both an A-UnDotted Vowel Form and an E-Dotted Vowel Form .

Adding the suffix **-de** *in, on, at* and the suffix **-den** *from*

These suffixes harmonize with the vowel in the word **ev** *house*

evlerde

[ev-ler-de]

in the houses.

evden

[ev-den]

from the house.

evlerinden

[ev-leri-nden]

from their house

Similarly adding suffix **-da** *in, on, at* and **-dan** *from*

These suffixes harmonize with the final vowel of the word **oda** *room*.

odalarda

[oda-lar-da]

in the rooms

odadan

[oda-dan]

from the room

bulmacalarında

[bulmaca-ları-nda]

in their crosswords.

Foreign Words Incorporated into Turkish

Turkish has imported many words from French, such as **televizyon** *télévision* and **müziyen** *musician*, **kuaför** *coiffure*.

These importations have been modified phonetically to the Turkish Alphabet and incorporated into the language.

These are spelled according to Turkish phonetics and often have both A-UnDotted and E-Dotted vowels within one word which is unnatural for Turkish.

Such is true for the numerous Turkish words of Arabic origin, such as **mektup** *letter* and **merhaba** *hello*, and of Persian origin as **hane** *office* where vowel harmony does not occur in the word itself.

In these cases, consistent with the general rule for vowel harmony in Turkish, the final vowel of the word determines the vowel harmony for suffixation.

Vowel Harmony Rules Summary

UnDotted Vowels follow each other.

Dotted Vowels follow each other.

Turkish Verbs.

There are no irregular verbs in Turkish. One single conjugation is used for all verbs. Turkish Verbs are also obey vowel harmony rules.

All verbs belong to one of two groups determined by their infinitive forms, those ending in **-mak** (The A-UnDotted Vowel Group) and those ending in **-mek** (The E-Dotted Vowel Group).

In consequence there is more than one form for the tense sign suffix. For illustration the Future Tense suffix may be **-acak** or **-ecek** to follow Vowel Harmony Rules.

The suffixes for all **-mak** verbs have only A-UnDotted Back Vowels. **bakmak**

to look becomes **bakacak** [bak-acak] *he will look*.

However only E-Dotted Front Vowels are found in the suffixes of **-mek** verbs
gelmek *to come* becomes **gelecek** [gel-ecek] *He will come*.

Turkish Articles.

English uses the same Definite Article "THE" for both subjects and objects.

THE dog bit **THE** man."

Turkish does not have separate definite articles. Turkish does not have a Subject Definite Article "*THE*"

Turkish makes an object word definitive by adding an objective suffix
"-i -ı -u -ü" which equates to the English Object Definite Article "*THE*".

This is one of the difficulties for those learning Turkish as English does not distinguish between subject "*the*" and object "*the*" as it uses the definite article "*THE*" for both of them.

An illustration of the Objective Definite Article (accusative):

Fincan masada.

The cup is on the table.

[subject: "*The cup*" is already considered as a specific subject in Turkish.]

Masadaki fincanı bana verin.

Give me the cup which is on the table.

[object: "*The cup*"]

Here the object *the cup* **fincan** has been made definitive (specific) by the addition of the objective suffix **-ı** to produce **fincanı** [fincan-ı], the way of saying "*the cup*" as a specific object.

Turkish Adjectives

Turkish is a descriptive language, adjectives abound. If Turkish can make something into an adjective then it will do so.

Being an descriptive language basically the adjective or adjectival phrase always preceded its noun: **kara kedi** a *black cat* as in English.

However Turkish makes great use of adjectival phrases and clauses to describes nouns, actions and thoughts.

An Example In English:

The black cat with the long tail which is sitting on the mat looks hungry.

Using a reduced relative clause:

The long-tailed black cat sitting on the mat looks hungry.

The Turkish Way

Describes the cat not only as "black and long-tailed" but also "where and upon what it is sitting" together with any other attributes, such as "its long tail":

Minderin üstünde oturan uzun kuyruklu kara kedi aç görünüyor.

On the mat which is sitting long tailed black cat hungry looks.

In Turkish the subject and object are described adjectivally with regards to place and disposition.

Once all the describing is done, the verb is placed last in the sentence.

Structure of Turkish Words.

In the structure of Turkish words a vowel always follows a consonant and a consonant always follows a vowel.

There are no diphthongs (two vowels occurring together) in Turkish words, other than imported foreign exceptions.

In order to preserve this rule certain consonants are inserted as "buffers" between vowels.

These buffers are always **Y**, **N** or **S**. (**Y** is considered as a consonant in Turkish.) The majority of Turkish Vowels are always pronounced quite short, there is no lengthening of vowels.

For Turkish learners this sometimes makes understanding difficult as there is little and light stress in Turkish pronunciation.

There is no gender distinction, so there are no "le" and "la" problems as in French. This borne out by the fact that Turkish only has one word "**O**" for *he, she and it*.

Turkish Word Order.

Word order is regular, but differs from English.

1. Adjectival Descriptions of Subject.
2. The Subject.
3. Time Clauses.
4. Adjectival Descriptions of Object.
5. The Object.
6. The Verb.
7. The verb is always last in a sentence.

Turkish punctuation normally puts a comma after the subject of a sentence.

It is good practice to do this especially if the subject is extended by a long adjectival description.

English Sentence Structure:

The man with the fishing rods in his hands, (a long described subject) will be (the verb) at your friend's 50th birthday party (a long described object) tomorrow night (time phrase).

Turkish Sentence Structure:

Ellerinde oltası olan adam, yarın gece arkadaşının 50'ci doğum günü partisinde bulunacak.

Hands-his-in which are fishing-rods-the man, (a described and suffixed subject)

tomorrow night (time phrase)

friend-your-of 50th birth day-its party-his-at (a described and suffixed object)

found-be-will (and at last, the verb.)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 2 : Vowel Harmony



The Eight Vowels of Turkish

There are eight vowels in Turkish which are divided into two groups as follows:

The A-UnDotted Vowels

A I O U

The E-Dotted Vowels

E İ Ö Ü

The vowels A and E

Forming the Plural

Either the Plural Suffix **-ler** or **-lar** is chosen to mirror the final vowel of its noun.

All other suffixes will follow these Vowel Harmony rules. To form the plural we have a choice to add either **-lar** or **-ler** to the word:

Plural of the A-UnDotted Vowel Group

Add **-lar** to words whose final vowel is any of the **A-UnDotted Vowels**

balta final vowel **-a** *axe*

baltalar [balta-lar] *axes*

kapı final vowel **-ı** *door*

kapılar [kapı-lar] *doors*

palto final vowel **-o** *overcoat*
paltolar [palto-lar] *overcoats*

boncuk final vowel **-u** *bead*
boncuklar [boncuk-lar] *beads*

The vowels in these Turkish words are all of the **A-UnDotted Group** so the added Plural suffix **-lar** must also contain an **A-UnDotted Vowel**.

Plural of the E-Dotted Vowel Group

Add **-ler** to words whose final vowel is one of the **E-Dotted Vowels**

ev final vowel **-e** *house*
evler [ev-ler] *houses*

kedi final vowel **-i** *cat*
kediler [kedi-ler] *cats*

göz final vowel **-ö** *eye*
gözler [göz-ler] *eyes*

ödül final vowel **-ü** *present (gift)*
ödüller [ödül-ler] *presents*

The vowels in these Turkish words are all of the **E-Dotted Group** so the added Plural suffix **-ler** must also contain an **E-Dotted Vowel**.

This echoing of the final vowel by the suffix is called *Vowel Harmony*.

Some Exceptions In Formation of Words

There are a very few exceptions to this rule where the suffix does not vowel harmonize:

saat *hour, clock*
saatler *hours, clocks*

harf *letter (of alphabet)*

harfler letters

To form the word **rol** *rôle* in Turkish the suffix **-ler** is added to form its plural **roller** *rôles*. This is contrary to the general rule. Normally **-lar** would be added to **rol**, as it contains the UnDotted Vowel **O**.

Words like **rol** also constitute exceptions when other suffixes are attached :

Bu rolü almak istiyorum

[rol-ü NOT rol-u]

I want to take (on) the this rôle.

Bu rolden çok bıktım

[rol-den NOT rol-dan]

I am really fed up with this rôle.

["-den bıkmak" "to get fed up with"]

Bu rolde bir sürü aksaklık var

[rol-de NOT rol-da]

There is something wrong in this rôle.

Bu role hiç alışamadım

[rol-e NOT rol-a]

I could not get used to this rôle at all.

["-e alışmak" "to get used to"]

Some Other Exceptions

Vaat *Promise*

Vaatler *Promises*

Vaadi *Promise (obj.)*

Vaadin *of the promise*

Vaade *to the promise*

Vaatten *from the promise*

Kalp *Heart*

Kalpler *Hearts*

Kalbi *Heart (obj.)*

Kalbin *of the heart*

Kalbe *to the heart*
Kalpten *from the heart*

Harf *Letter (alpha.)*
Harfler *Letters*
Harfi *Letter (obj.)*
Harfin *of the letter*
Harfe *to the letter*
Harften *from the letter*

There are imports from Arabic and other foreign languages which exhibit this irregularity.

Vowel Harmony of Suffixes

Words with their last vowel in the **A-UnDotted Group** take **-lar** as their plural.
This rule applies for all suffixes which contain **-a-**

Those words with an **E-Dotted Group Vowel** take **-ler** as their plural.
This rule applies for all suffixes which contain **-e-**

The common and important words in constant use *in, on, at, from, to, with, etc.* are suffixes in Turkish and are affixed to the word they modify.

The Principle of Vowel Harmony must be taken into account.

The Static Position (Locative) Suffix **-da/-de or -ta/-te** *-in, on, at*

For words ending in an **Unvoiced Consonant** [p ç t k f h s ş], when adding a suffix beginning with a consonant then the suffix consonant **"-d"** changes to its Unvoiced Form **"-t"**. See Ch. 3 Consonant Mutation

This suffix shows concrete place (static location):

Odadayım.
[oda-da-yım]
I am in the room.
Ali bey, evdeymiş.

[ev-de-ymiş]
Ali bey is at home.

kedide
[kedi-de]
on the cat

kedilerde
[kedi-ler-de]
on the cats

girişte
[giriş-te]
in/at the entrance

girişlerde
[giriş-ler-de]
in/at the entrances

evde
[ev-de]
at the house, at home

evlerde
[ev-ler-de]
at the houses

köprüde
[köprü-de]
on the bridge

köprülerde
[köprü-ler-de]
on the bridges

adamda
[adam-da]
on the man

adamlarda
[adam-lar-da]
on the men

kapıda
[kapı-da]

at the door

kapılarda

[kapı-lar-da]

at/by the doors

çıkışta

[çıkış-ta]

in/at the exit

çıkışlarda

[çıkış-lar-da]

in/at the exits

odada

[oda-da]

in the room

odalarda

[oda-lar-da]

in the rooms

Two suffixes have been used; **-ler** and **-de** or **-lar** and **-da**.

They are tagged together to make a single word in Turkish.

The suffix -dan/-den or -tan/-ten *from, by, via, through*

For words ending in an **Unvoiced Consonant** [p ç t k f h s ş], when adding a suffix beginning with a consonant then the suffix consonant **"-d"** changes to its Unvoiced Form **"-t"**. *See Ch. 3 Consonant Mutation*

This is the Motion Away suffix:

kediden

[kedi-den]

from the cat

kedilerden

[kediler-den]

from the cats

girişten

[giriş-ten]
from/via the entrance

girişlerden
[giriş-ler-den]
from/via the entrances

evden
[ev-den]
from home

evlerden
[evler-den]
from the houses

köprüden
[köprü-den]
from the bridge

köprülerden
[köprüler-den]
from the bridges

adamdan
[adam-dan]
from the man

adamlardan
[adamlar-dan]
from the men

kapıdan
[kapı-dan]
from the door

kapılardan
[kapılar-dan]
from the doors

odadan
[oda-dan]
from the room

odalardan
[odalar-dan]

from the rooms

çıkıştan

[çıkış-tan]

from/via the exit

çıkışlardan

[çıkış-lar-dan]

from/via the exits

Two suffixes **-ler** and **-den** or **-lar** and **-dan** have been used and tagged together to make a single word in Turkish.

The suffix -(ya)/-(y)e to, towards

If the root word ends in a vowel then the buffer letter -y- is used to separate the suffix -e or -a

This is the Motion Towards suffix:

adama

[adam-a]

to the man

adamlara

[adamlar-a]

to the men

kediye

[kedi-ye]

to the cat

kedi cat ends in a vowel so "kedi-y-e" is used [kedi-e] would be incorrect.

kedilere

[kediler-e]

to the cats

eve

[ev-e]

to home

evlere

[evler-e]

to the houses

kapıya

[kapı-ya]

to the door

kapı door ends in a vowel so "kapı-y-a" is used [kapı-a] would be incorrect

kapılara

[kapılar-a]

to the doors

Examples which show the buffer -y- inserted

köprüye

[köprü-ye]

to the bridge

köprülere

[köprü-ler-e]

to the bridges

odaya

[oda-ya]

to the room

odalara

[oda-lar-a]

to the rooms

The Buffer Letter -y- is used when the word ends in a vowel. Turkish does not like two vowels to be together.

The Vowels I, İ and U, Ü

The Front Produced (Dotted) Vowels are formed at the the front of the mouth

similar to the French Language.

The Back Produced (UnDotted) Vowels are produced nearer the throat as in English.

The Four Forms of the Suffix -I-

There are two different forms of I (İ) and two different forms of U (Ü) in Turkish.

(1) The UnDotted Forms of I or U must follow the **A-UnDotted group A I O U**

(2) The Dotted Forms of İ or Ü must follow the **E-Dotted group E İ Ö Ü**

The Principle of Vowel Harmony states that a suffix containing the letter **a** can have two forms either **a** or **e**.

The suffix **-den** from which is used with the E-Dotted vowels and **-dan**, which is used with the A-UnDotted vowels.

Suffixes which contain a (generic) letter **-i** can have four forms. These are **-i -ı -u -ü**.

For example the suffix **-im** *my*.

Its own vowel, basically the **-i-** changes to any of **-i -ı -u -ü** to mirror the last vowel of the word to which it is suffixed.

Similarly all other suffixes with an internal **-i-** vowel will follow these Vowel Harmony Rules

ev

house

evim

[ev-im]

my house

evlerim

[ev-ler-im]

my houses

raf

shelf

rafın

[raf-ın]

your shelf

rafların

[raf-lar-ın]

your shelves

çit

hedge

çiti

[çit-i]

his hedge

çitleri

[çit-ler-i]

his hedges

kız

girl/daughter

kızım

[kız-ım]

my girl

kızlarım

[kız-lar-ım]

my girls

göz

eye

gözüm

[göz-üm]

my eye

gözlerim

[göz-ler-im]

my eyes

yol
road

yolunuz
[yol-unuz]
your road

yollarınız
[yol-lar-ınız] y
our roads

gün
day

günümüz
[gün-ümüz]
our day

günlerimiz
[gün-ler-imiz]
our days

okul
school

okulları
[okul-ları]
their school(s)

okulları
[okul-lar-ı]
his schools

Choosing the correct vowel i ı u ü

The suffix form **-im** my follows words whose last vowel is **-e** or **-i**:
Harmonizing with final E-Dotted Group Vowel **-e** in the root word:

bilet

ticket

biletim

[bilet-im]

my ticket

Harmonising with final Dotted **-i** in the root word:

diş

tooth

dişim

[diş-im]

my tooth

dişlerim

[dişler-im]

my teeth

The suffix **-im** must contain a dotted **-i-** as it follows a vowel from the *E-Dotted Group*. This is also true of the plural form **-ler**

The suffix **-ım** *my* follows words whose last vowel is **-a** or **-ı**

Harmonizing with final A-UnDotted Group Vowel **-a** in the root word:

at

horse

atım

[at-ım]

my horse

atlarım

[atlar-ım]

my horses

Harmonizing with final UnDotted **-ı** in the root word:

kız

girl

kızım

[kız-ım]

my girl

kızlarım

[kızlar-ım]

my girls

The suffix **-ım** must contain an UnDotted **-ı-** as it follows a vowel from the *A-dotted Group*. This is also true of the plural form **-lar**

The suffix **-üm** follows words whose last vowel is **-ö** or **-ü**
Harmonizing with final Dotted **-ö** in the root word:

göz

eye

gözüm

[göz-üm]

my eye

gözlerim

[gözler-im]

my eyes

Harmonizing with final Dotted **-ü** in the root word:

gül

rose

gülüm [gül-üm]

my rose

güllerim

[güller-im]

my roses

The plurals **gözlerim** and **güllerim** take the **-ım** suffix (not the **-üm** suffix as in the singular) as they immediately follow the final vowel **-e** of the plural **-ler**

The suffix **-um** *my* follows words whose last vowel is **-o** or **-u**
Harmonizing with final UnDotted **-o** in the root word:

jeton

token, jeton

jetonum

[jeton-um]

my token, my jeton

jetonlarım [jetonlar-ım]

my tokens, my jetons

Harmonizing with final UnDotted **-u** in the root word:

oyun

game

oyunum

[oyun-um]

my game

oyunlarım

[oyunlar-ım]

my games

The plurals **jetonlarım** and **oyunlarım** take the **-ım** suffix (not the **-um** suffix as in the singular) as they immediately follow the final vowel **-a** of the plural **-lar**

The Complete Rules of Vowel Harmony

Final Vowel is followed by Suffix Vowel

UnDotted A I O U are followed by **A**

Dotted E İ Ö Ü are followed by **E**

UnDotted A or I are followed by **I**

Dotted E or İ are followed by **İ**

UnDotted O or U are followed by **U**

Dotted Ö or Ü are followed by **Ü**

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 3 : Consonant Mutation



Consonant Mutation

Changes in Spelling to reflect Changes in Pronunciation In Turkish the spelling of the words is changed when the pronunciation changes.

Generally this does not happen in English. When the pronunciation changes the spelling does not usually change.

English spelling is often changed when the pronunciation is the same so that we can recognize the correct meaning.

A number of words show this: "*meet vs meat, feet vs feat, right vs write, main vs mane, sea vs see*", and many more. If English were written phonetically, the word "does" would be spelt "duz".

Turkish however, being a phonetically written language will make changes in spelling due to pronunciation changes. This is for ease of speaking and is concerned with consonants which have voiced and unvoiced equivalents.

About Voicing of Consonants

A voiced consonant is one where the voice is used to produce the sound "(as Letter D)" and an unvoiced consonant is where the voice is silent and only air is expelled to produce the sound "(as Letter T)".

In Turkish when a word ends in a consonant it is usually the Un-Voiced Form.

The word for *letter* is **mektup**, but *my letter* is **mektubum**. The terminal **-p** has changed to **-b-** when it appears between two vowels.

This is because it is easier to pronounce in its Voiced form "**b**."
In Turkish the spelling must reflect this change for the rules of phonetics to operate.

Unvoiced and Voiced Equivalents

Unvoiced **p** equivalent to Voiced **b**

Unvoiced **ç** equivalent to Voiced **c**

Unvoiced **t** equivalent to Voiced **d**

Unvoiced **k** equivalent to Voiced **ğ**

Unvoiced **f** no equivalent

Unvoiced **s** no equivalent

Unvoiced **ş** no equivalent

Unvoiced **h** no equivalent

The letters **f s ş h** do not have a voiced form, but they do affect the added suffix as they are considered as unvoiced consonants:

raf
shelf

raftan
[not "rafdan"]
from the shelf

nefis

delicious

nefistir

[not "nefisdir"]

it is (certainly) delicious

sabah

morning

sabahtan

[not "sabahdan"]

from morning

güneş

sun

güneşten

[not "güneşden"]

from the sun

Words ending in an unvoiced consonant change to the voiced equivalent when a vowel is added:

bilek

wrist

bileği

[bileğ-i]

his wrist

kitap

book

kitaba

[kitab-a]

to the book

kağıt
paper

kağıdın
[kağıd-ın]
your paper

Examples of Changes

Words ending in unvoiced **-K** change to voiced **-Ğ-** when a suffixed vowel is added:

köpek
dog

köpeğim
[köpek + ım]
my dog

bacak
leg

bacağıın
[bacak + ım]
your leg

topuk
ankle

topuğu
[topuk + u]
his ankle

bilek
wrist

bileğimiz

[bilek + imiz]

our wrists

gözlük

spectacles

gözlüğünüz

[gözlük + ünüz]

your spectacles

durak

bus stop

durağa

[durak + a]

to the bus stop

görecek

will see

göreceğim

[görecek + im]

I shall see

yaptık

we did

yaptığımız

[yaptık + ımız]

that which we did

bardak

glass (tumbler)

bardağı

[bardak + ı]

his glass

The consonant change from unvoiced **-k** to voiced **-ğ-** when adding suffixes is the most widespread mainly because so many Turkish words end in a terminal **-k**

A Special Case Exception (terminal **-nk**)

Examples where terminal **-nk** changes to **-ng** when adding a vowel.

If the word ends in **-nk**, the terminal **-k** changes directly to a unvoiced **-g** as it is totally impossible to utter the letter cluster **-nğ** plus an added vowel.

denk

bale, equation

dengim

[deng-im]

my bale

ahenk

harmony, accord

ahengi

[aheng-i]

its harmony

kepenk

shutter (on a shop front)

kepenginiz

[kepeng-iniz]

your shutter

renk

color

rengimiz
[reng-imiz]
our colour

Other Consonant Changes

Some of the other unvoiced consonants which change to their voiced form in similar fashion are as follows:

-p changes to **-b** in front of suffixed vowels.

-ç changes to **-c** in front of suffixed vowels.

-t changes to **-d** in front of suffixed vowels, mainly in verb and tense suffixes.

kitap
book

kitabın
[kitab-ın]
your book

öğüt
advice

öğüdüm
[öğüd-üm]
my advice

tat
taste

tadı
[tad-ı]
its taste

ilaç
medicine

ilacı
[ilac-ı]
his medicine

ağaç
tree

ağacın
[ağac-ın]
the tree's

Consonants Single Syllable Word Roots

Single syllable words do not change their final unvoiced consonants in line with the general rule.

Unvoiced Roots Single Syllable Words

ak
egg white

akı
the egg white/his egg white

at
horse

atı
the horse/his horse

ek
addition

eki

the addition/its addition

et

meat

eti

the meat/his, her, its meat

göç

migration

göçü

the migration

ip

rope

ipi

the rope

kaç?

how many?

kaçıncı?

which one?

kök

root

kökü

the root/its root

ok

arrow

oku

the arrow/his arrow

ot
grass

otu
the grass/its grass

saç
hair

saçı
the hair/his, her hair

sap
handle

sapı
the handle/its handle

suç
fault

suçu
the fault/his,her, its fault

süt
milk

sütü
the milk/his, her its milk

üç
three

üçü
the three/trio

Voiced Roots (the exceptions) Single Syllable Words

There are some exceptions to this rule where a single syllable word does take on its voiced form when adding a vowel suffix:

but
thigh

budu
the thigh/his,her,its thigh

dip
bottom/base

dibi
the bottom/the inside base/its bottom

çok
a lot/much/very

çoğu
the lot/his, her, its lot

gök
sky

göğü
the sky/its sky

kap
vessel (utensil)

kabı
the vessel/his vessel

kurt
worm/wolf

kurdu

the worm, the wolf/his wolf

uç

point/tip/end

ucu

he point/his, her, its point

yok

none

yoğu

nil

yurt

tent, village

yurdu

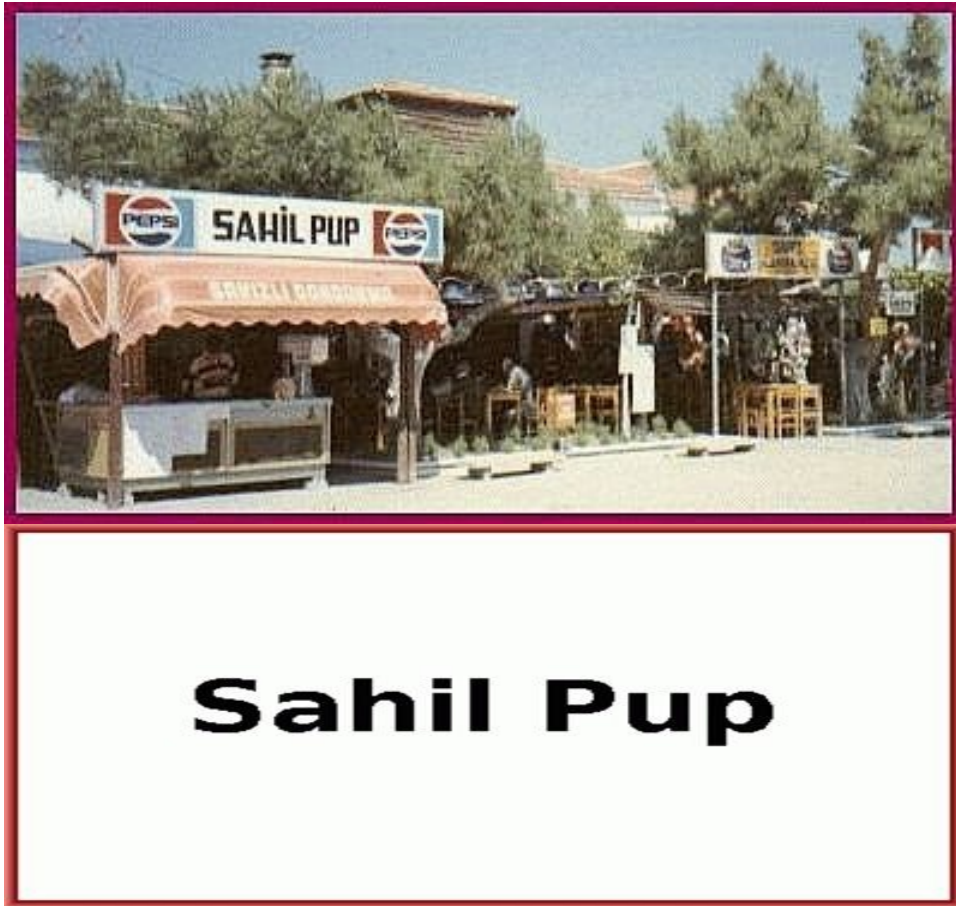
the tent, the village

Terminal Consonant Rules

*Words cannot end with the **voiced** consonants **b c d g**.*

Words must end in the equivalent **unvoiced** forms **p ç t k** in order to finish the pronunciation without continuity thus helping the listener to determine word breaks in conversation.

A Public House sign in Altınkum:



In the picture the English import of the word **Pub** (public house) has been changed into a Turkish version of the word "**Pup**" which ends in the equivalent unvoiced consonant **-p**.

Sahil Pup has been written for "Sahil Pub" [The Seaside Pub].

Similarly the spelling **kebab** is wrong **kebap** is correct.

The name **Mehmed** is wrong **Mehmet** is correct.

There are a few words which do end in voiced consonants such as **ad, od, sac**. This is to make their meaning recognizable from similar word that have a unvoiced consonant at the end.

ad *name*

at *horse*

od *fire*

ot *grass*

sac *sheet iron*

saç *hair*

This little group of words is an exception to the general rule that words always end in a unvoiced Consonant.

Proper Names

Proper Names do not change in writing **Memed'in** *Mehmet's* is only valid in spoken language. It should be written as **Mehmet'in** but should be pronounced **Memedin**.

Although the letter **-h-** is always articulated and pronounced in Turkish (it being a phonetic language), the name "Mehmet" is an exception it is always pronounced as "Memed" through constant usage.

Another example is **Burak'in** (as written) should be pronounced as **Burağın**.

Suffix Mutation and Vowel Harmony

Words ending in Unvoiced Consonants

1. The leading consonant of the suffix must mutate to follow with the word's terminal consonant.
2. The suffix reverts to its unvoiced form when added to words ending in an unvoiced consonant.
3. The vowels of the suffixes must change to agree with the final vowel of the

word.

4. The suffix *in, on, at* **-de/-da** [voiced form] changes to **-te/-ta** [unvoiced form]

ayak
foot

ayakta
on the foot.

parmak
finger

parmakta
on the finger

sabah
morning

sabahtı
it was morning

The suffix *from* **-den/-dan** changes to **-ten/-tan**

ağaç
tree

ağaçtan
from the tree

bilet
ticket

biletten
from the ticket

kitap
book

kitapta
[not kitap-da]
in the book

otobüs
bus

otobüstü
[not otobüs-dü]
it was a bus

dolmuş
dolmush (small bus)

dolmuşta
[not dolmuş-da]
in the dolmush

ilaç
medicine

ilaçta
[not ilaç-da]
in the medicine

sabah
morning

sabahtan
[not sabah-dan]
from morning

kibrit
match

kibritten

[not kibrit-den]

from the match

The last example **kibrit** preserves a double letter *-tt-* when adding the suffix **-ten** to produce **kibritten** [kibrit-ten]

Turkish generally abhors two consonants arising together but here are two separate words *match* and *from* being joined together, so each word must retain its full form.

There are a few words that historically end in a voiced consonant but for these words that do end in a voiced consonant the suffix retains its voiced form.

Mutation of words ending in Unvoiced Consonants:

Example of the effect of adding a suffix **-dı** *it was* which begins with a consonant.

1. **kitap** *book* ends in unvoiced **-p**, therefore suffix **"-dı"** *"it was"* mutates to **"-tı"**
2. The suffix **-tı** takes its unvoiced form from the terminal **-t** ending.
3. The vowel of the suffix becomes **-ı** [UnDotted I] to harmonize with the final vowel of **kitap**.

kitaptı

[kitap-tı]

it was a book.

The same example when adding a suffix which begins with a vowel:

kitabınız *your book* suffix **-ınız** begins with a vowel so **kitap** becomes **kitab-ınız**.

Suffixed Extended word ends in voiced **-z** thus **kitabınız-da**

kitabınızda
[kitab-ınız-da]
in your book.

The plural -ler/-lar which ends in an voiced letter -r.

Adding suffixes terminal vowels and the Plural Suffix **-lar/-ler** which ends in voiced **-r**

köpekten
from the dog

köpeklerden
from the dogs

köpeğinden
[köpeğ-in-den]
from his dog

ilaçta
in the medicine

ilaçlarda
in the medicines

ilacında
[ilac-ın-da]
in his medicine

otobüsten
from the bus

otobüslerden
[otobüs-ler-den]

from the buses

sokaktan

from the street

sokaklardan

[sokak-lar-dan]

from the streets

The examples above show where the voiced **-r** ending of the plural suffix **-ler/-lar** forces the subsequent suffix to take its voiced form.

Consonant Mutation Rules

1. If the word ends these **Unvoiced Consonants** [p ç t k]

When adding a suffix beginning with a vowel then the last letter of the root word changes to its voiced form: **p ⇔ b** **ç ⇔ c** **t ⇔ d** **k ⇔ ğ**

kitap

book

kitabı **p ⇔ b** [kitab-ı]

his book

kazanç

profit

kazancı **ç ⇔ c** [kazanc-ı]

his profit

kilit

lock

kilidi t ⇔ d [kilid-i]

his lock

köpek

dog

köpeğiniz k ⇔ ğ [köpeğ-iniz]

your dog

2. If the word ends in an **Unvoiced Consonants** [p ç t k f h s ş]

When adding a suffix beginning with a consonant then the suffix consonant "-d" changes to its Unvoiced Form "-t"

tıkaç

plug, stopper

tıkaçtan

[tıkaç-tan]

from the plug

kitap

book

kitaptan

[kitap-tan]

from the book

kilit

lock

kilitte

[kilit-te]

in the lock

köpek

dog

köpekten
[köpek-ten]
from the dog

sabah
morning

sabahtan
[sabah-tan]
from the morning

domates *tomato*

domatesten
[domates-ten]
from the tomato(es)

giriş
exit

girişte
[giriş-te]
at the exit

raf
shelf

raftan
[raf-tan]
from the shelf

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 4 : Buffer Letters



Turkish uses three buffer letters -n-, -y-, -s- to keep vowels apart and to separate suffixes. There are rules for the use of each one.

The buffer letter -S-

Buffer Letter -S- is only used with the third person suffix -i -ı -u -ü meaning his, her, its thus taking the form -si -sı -sü -su when added to a root word which ends in a vowel.

şapka

hat, the hat

şapkası

[şapka-sı NOT "şapka-ı"]

his/her hat.

As the third person singular suffix is a single vowel -i, then it becomes -si by using buffer letter -s- in order to keep two vowels apart and preserve the original root word.

kedî

cat

kedisi

[kedi-s-i]

his/her cat

şemsiye

umbrella

şemsiyesi

[şemsiye-s-i]

his/her umbrella

kapı

door

kapısı

[kapı-s-ı]

his/her/its door

palto

overcoat

paltosu

[palto-s-u]

his overcoat

ütü

flatiron

ütüsü

[ütü-s-ü]

his/her iron

araba

car

arabası

[araba-s-ı]

his/her car

kuzu
sheep

kuzusu
[kuzu-s-u]
his/her sheep

The buffer letter **-s-** is only used for the third person singular possessive suffix. It is not used in any other instance.

The buffer letter -Y- with Direct Object Condition

Buffer Letter **-Y-** is used **ON PLAIN SIMPLE UN-SUFFIXED NOUNS ONLY** when suffixed with the Direct Object Condition **-i** *the*.

The Direct Object Condition suffix (Accusative) **-i -ı -ü -u** *the [obj.]* adds buffer letter **-Y-** to become **-yi -yı -yu -yü** when added to a root word which ends in a vowel.

kedi
cat, the cat (subj.)

kediyi
[kedi-y-i]
the cat (object)

banka
bank

bankayı
[banka-y-ı]
the bank (object)

kuzu

sheep

kuzuyu

[kuzu-y-u]

the sheep (obj.)

Buffer Letter "N" with Direct Object Condition

Buffer Letter **-N-** is used **ON ALREADY SUFFIXED NOUNS** when suffixed with the Direct Object Condition **-i -ı -ü -u** *the*. (obj.) It takes buffer letter **-n-** to become **-ni -nı -nü -nu** when added as a second suffix to an already extended noun.

kuzusunu

[kuzu-su-nu]

his sheep (object)

bankasını

[banka-sı-nı]

his bank (object)

The buffer letter -Y- with Motion Toward Condition

Buffer Letter **-Y** is used **ON PLAIN SIMPLE UN-SUFFIXED NOUNS ONLY** when suffixed with the Motion Towards Condition **-a/-e** *to, towards* The Motion Towards Condition **-a, -e** *to, towards* (Dative) takes buffer letter **-Y-** to become **-ya/-ye** when added to a root word which ends in a vowel.

kedi

cat

kediye

[kedi-y-e]

to the cat

banka

bank

bankaya

[banka-y-a]

to the bank

baba

father

babaya

[baba-y-a]

to the father

Buffer Letter "N" with Motion Toward Condition

Buffer Letter **-N** is used **ON ALREADY SUFFIXED NOUNS** when suffixed with the Motion Toward Condition **-e/-a** *to, toward*.

Buffer letter **-N-** is used with nouns that have already been suffixed.

The Motion Toward Suffix becomes **-(n)a/-(n)e** when added as a second suffix.

kedisi

[kedi-si]

his/her cat

kedisine

[kedi-si-n-e]

to his/her cat

bankası

[banka-sı]

his/her bank

bankasına

[banka-sı-n-a]

to his/her bank

babaları

[baba-ları]

their father

babalarına

[baba-ları-n-a]

to their father

Summary : Buffer Letter "N" with Suffixed Nouns

Buffer Letter -N is used on **NOUNS ALREADY SUFFIXED** with the 3rd Person suffixes **-(s)i** **-(s)ı** **-(s)ü** **-(s)u** *his, her, its* and **-ları** **-leri** *their*. This shift of buffer letter -Y- to -N- enables the listener to discern that the word is already agglutinated (extended) by previous suffixes.

Examples of already extended nouns:

kedisi

[kedi-s-i]

his/her cat

kedisini

[kedi-s-i-n-i]

his/her cat (object)

kedisi

[kedi-s-i]

his/her cat

kedisine

[kedi-s-i-n-e]

to his/her cat (motion toward)

bankası

[banka-s-ı]
his/her bank

bankasını
[banka-s-ı-n-ı]
his/her bank (object)

gözleri
[göz-leri]
their eye(s)

gözlerinin
[gözü-leri-nin]
of his eye, his eye's

mutfaqları
[mutfak-ları]
their kitchen(s)

mutfaqlarının
[mutfak-ları-n-ın]
of their kitchen(s), their kitchen's, their kitchens'

The Buffer Letter -N- with Ownership Condition

*Buffer Letter "N" Ownership Condition (Genitive possessor). It **does not use** Buffer Letter -Y-.*

The Ownership condition uses Buffer Letter -N- for both root words and already extended words.

The Ownership Condition **-in -ın -ün -un** of, 's (Genitive) takes buffer letter -N- to become **-nin -nın -nün -nun** when added to a ROOT word which ends in a vowel.

kedi

cat

kedinin

[kedi-n-in]

of the cat, the cats

banka

bank

bankanın

[banka-n-ın]

of the bank, the bank's

The Ownership Condition also takes buffer letter **-N-** when added to an ALREADY EXTENDED word which ends in a vowel.

bankası

[banka-sı]

his bank

bankasının

[banka-sı-n-ın]

of this bank, this bank's

gözü

[göz-ü]

his eye

gözünün

[gözü-n-ün]

of his eye, his eye's

mutfağı

[mutfağ-ı]

his/her kitchen

mutfağının

[mutfağ-ı-n-ın]

of his kitchen, her kitchen's

Motion Away and Static Position Conditions

The suffixes **-de** *in, on, at* and **-dan** *with, by* are added directly to basic nouns

kedî

cat

kedide

[kedi-de]

on the cat

kediden

[kedi-den]

from the cat

kapı

door

kapıda

[kapı-da]

on/at the door

kapıdan

[kapı-dan]

from the door

Buffer Letter "N" with -de and -den

Buffer letter **-N-** used with **-da/-de** *in, on, at* and **-dan/-den** *from, via, by, through*.

When adding these suffixes to **ALREADY EXTENDED** nouns, they become

-nda/-nde and **-ndan/-nden** to keep the suffix apart from the noun it modifies.

kedisi

[kedi-si]

his cat

kedisinde

[kedi-si-nde]

on his cat

kedisinden

[kedi-si-nden]

from his/her cat

kediden

[kedi-den]

from the cat

kedilerinden

[kedi-leri-nden]

from their cat(s)

kedisinden

[kedi-s-i-n-den]

from his/her cat

kedilerinden

[kedi-ler-i-nden]

from his/her cats

kapısı

door

kapısında

[kapı-sı-n-da]

on/at his/her door

kapisından
[kapı-sı-ndan]
from his/her door

evi
[ev-i]
his/her house

evinde
[ev-i-n-de]
in his/her house

evden
[ev-den]
from the house/from home

evinden
[ev-i-nden]
from his house/home

evlerde
[evler-de]
in the houses

evlerinde
[ev-leri-nde]
in their house(s)

evinde
[ev-i-n-de]
in his/her house

evlerinde
[ev-leri-nde]
in their house

evinden
[ev-i-n-den]
from his/her house

evlerinden

[ev-leri-nden]

from their house

bankadan

[banka-dan]

from the bank

bankasından

[banka-sı-ndan]

from his/her bank

bankada

[banka-da]

in/at the bank

bankasında

[banka-sı-nda]

in/at his bank

bankası

[banka-s-ı]

is/her bank

bankasından

[banka-s-ı-n-dan]

from his/her bank

bankalardan

[banka-lar-dan]

from the banks

onların bankalarından

[onlar-ın banka-ları-ndan]

from their bank(s)

bankasında

[banka-s-ı-n-da]

in hi/her bank

bankalarında
[banka-ları-nda]
in their bank

Both the suffixes -da/-de and -dan/-den require a buffer -N- when added to an extended word.

Buffer Letter Usage Examples

Babası [Baba-s-ı]
his father

Sırası
[his turn]

Kuzusu [Kuzu-s-u]
his sheep

Kapısını [Kapı-s-ı-n-ı]
its door (obj.)

Bundan [Bu-n-dan]
from this

Onu [O-n-u]
that/him/her/it (obj.)

Onun [O-n-un]
his/her/its

Ondan [O-n-dan]
from him/from that

Şunda [Şu-n-da]
in/on/at that

Şundan [Şu-n-dan]

from that

Nereye? [Nere-y-e]

Where to?

Oraya [Ora-y-a]

o there

Sobaya [Soba-y-a]

to the stove

Parayı [Para-y-ı]

the money (obj.)

Suyu [Su-y-u]

the water (obj.)

Kapısını [Kapı-s-ı-n-ı]

its door (obj.)

Arabanın [Araba-n-ın]

of the car

Yanından [Yanı-n-dan]

from his/her/its side

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 5 : The Suffixes



Turkish Language The Main Suffixes

In English prepositions "in, on, of, by, etc." are placed separately in front of the word they modify.

In Turkish, they are post-positions suffixed directly to the noun that they modify thus forming new complete words.

Suffixes and Vowel Harmony

English uses agglutination to form other words. The word *hope* produces *hopeless* by the addition of a *-less* suffix. It can be further agglutinated to *hopelessness*.

This then is the way of Turkish. Even the little words like *in, on, at, from* are suffixed to their noun thus producing extended words with different meanings.

Turkish suffixes follow Vowel Harmony Rules:

Adding the suffixes **-de** *in, on, at* and **-den** *from* to an E-Dotted Vowel Form **E İ Ö Ü**

ev *house*

evde [ev-de] *in the house*

evden [ev-den] *from the house*

Adding the suffixes **-da** and **-dan** to an A-UnDotted Vowel Form **A I O U**

oda *room*

odada [oda-da] *in the room*
odadan [oda-dan] *from the room*

The Six Noun Conditions

Turkish has a Subject Condition (nominative) which carries no suffix and five conditions each with a typical ending.

The vowels of the suffix must match final vowel of the root word according to *Vowel Harmony Rules*. (Ch.2) The initial consonant of the suffix may change according to *Consonant Mutation Rules*. (Ch.3)

(1) Subject Condition:

The noun in its root form without a suffix.

The Subject Condition is the subject of a sentence. (*nominative*)

The subject is considered a specific in Turkish so it does not need a definite article "THE".

(2) Object Condition:

Suffix **-i -ı -u -ü** or **-yi -yı -yu -yü** when affixed to words ending in a vowel or **-ni -nı -nu -nü** when affixed to already extended words ending in a vowel.

The Objective is the direct object of a verb, it equates to *the* in English (*accusative*)

(3) Movement Towards Condition:

Suffix **-a/-e** or **-ya/-ye** when affixed direct to word ending in a vowel or **-ne/-na** when affixed to already extended words ending in a vowel.

Movement Towards equates to *to, towards* in English. (*dative*)

(4) Static Position Condition:

Suffix **-da/-de** or **-ta/-te** according to Consonant Mutation rules or **-nde/-nda** when affixed to extended words which end in a vowel.

The Static is the condition of place equates to *in, on, at* in English. (*locative*)

(5) Movement Away Condition:

Suffix **-dan/-den** or **-tan/-ten** according to Consonant Mutation rules or **-nden/-ndan** when affixed to extended words which end in a vowel.

The Movement Away suffix equates to *from, by, via* in English. (*ablative*)

(6) Ownership Condition:

Ownership suffix **-in -in -un -ün** when affixed to plain or extended words ending in a consonant.

It becomes **-nin -nin -nun -nün** when affixed to plain or extended words ending in a vowel.

The Ownership Suffix DOES NOT use buffer letter **-Y-**

The Ownership suffix signifies that the noun "owns" something. (*the genitive*).

This suffix equates to *of, -'s* [of Mehmet, Mehmet's]

(7) With Condition:

Suffix **-le/-la** or **-yle/-yla** after vowels.

It can also stand alone as a separate word **ile** [without Vowel harmony.]

This suffix means *together with, and, also*,

(8) Without Condition (lacking):

Suffix **-siz -siz -suz -süz**. This suffix gives the sense of lacking.

This suffix equates to *without* ["without sugar"] and the various negating

prefixes and suffixes of English *un-*, *dis-*, *non-*, *-less* ["unfair, dishonest, nonsense, hopeless"]

(9) Containing Condition:

Suffix **-li -lı -lu -lū** gives the sense of belonging to somewhere or being contained in something. *Furnished with, Containing, Belonging to, Place of The*
-li suffix equates to *furnished with* in English:

["with sugar, sugary, sugured"]

and various additional or augmenting suffixes and prefixes:

["leafy, salty, coloured, numbered"]

The Subject Condition

There is no Turkish word for the Subject Definite Article. The context tells us when to insert a specifier THE in English.

Subject Singular Nouns

Un-suffixed nouns are in the Subject Condition (Nominative). They can be specific or non-specific in Turkish. English uses the specifier *THE*.

Turkish has no Subject Condition specifier. This can cause translation difficulties both ways.

okul

school, the school

bulut

cloud, the cloud

gazete

newspaper, the newspaper

hafta

week, the week

ödül

present, the gift

Subject Plural Nouns

Plural Noun form used for two or more items of an object.

The plural suffix is **-ler** or **-lar** which is added to the root word according to Vowel Harmony Rules.

okullar [okul-lar]
schools, the schools

bulutlar [bulut-lar]
clouds, the clouds

gazeteler [gazete-ler]
newspapers, the newspapers

haftalar [hafta-lar]
weeks, the weeks

ödüller [ödül-ler]
presents, the gifts

The subject can be non-specific or made specific in English with insertion of the Definite Article "*The*"

The Object Condition

The English Object Definite Article "THE" appears as the suffix -i -ı -ü -u according to Vowel Harmony in Turkish.

It has the forms:

1. Suffixed to Plain Nouns: **-i -ı -ü -u** which end in a consonant.
2. Suffixed to Plain Nouns which end in vowel **-yi -yı -yu -yü**
3. Suffixed to Extended Nouns which end in vowel: **-ni -nı -nu -nü**

ev
house, the house

evi [ev-i]

the house (obj.)

sokak

street, the street

sokağ [sokağ-ı]

the street (obj.)

[-k mutates to -ğ]

göl

rose, the rose

gölü [göl-ü]

the rose (obj.)

It takes buffer letter -y to become **-yi -yı -yu -yü** when added to a root word which ends in a vowel:

kedi

cat, the cat

kediyi [kedi-y-i]

the cat (obj.)

banka

bank, the bank

bankayı [banka-y-ı]

the bank (obj.)

kutu

box, the box

kutuyu [kutu-y-u]

the box (obj.)

The buffer letter **-y-** is only used with simple nouns ending in a vowel which have not already been suffixed.

It is also suffixed to extended (already suffixed) nouns which end in a

consonant:

evim

my house

evimi [ev-im-i]

my house (obj.)

sokağın

your street

sokağını [sokağ-ın-ı]

your street (obj.)

güller

roses

gülleri [gül-ler-i]

The roses (obj.)

But it takes buffer letter **-n-** to become **-ni -nı -nu -nü** when added as a second suffix to an already extended noun.

kedisi [kedi-si]

his/her cat

kedisini [kedi-si-n-i]

his/her cat (obj.)

bankası [banka-sı]

his/her bank

bankasını [banka-sı-n-ı]

his/her bank (obj.)

This shift of buffer letter **y** to **n** enables the listener to discern that the word is already agglutinated (extended) by previous suffixes.

To reiterate: The buffer letter **-n-** is only used on already extended (suffixed)

nouns.

The Direct Object Suffix is difficult to use naturally for English speakers. It requires observation and practice.

Motion Towards Condition

Formation of the Motion Towards Condition -e/-ye, -a/-ya, -ne/-na.

1. **-e/-a** is used with root nouns which end in a consonant or used with extended (already suffixed) nouns which end in a consonant.
2. **-ye/-ya** [buffer letter -y] is only used with root nouns which end in a vowel.
3. **-ne/-na** [buffer letter -n] is only used with extended (already suffixed) nouns ending in a vowel.

The Motion Towards suffix **-a** or **-e** *to, towards* is suffixed directly to all root words which end in a consonant:

ev

house, the house

eve [ev-e]

to the house

sokak

street, the street

sokağa [sokağ-a]

to the street

gül

rose, the rose

güle [gül-e]

to the rose

It takes buffer letter **-y-** when added directly as the first suffix to a root word which ends in a vowel, thus taking the form **-ye, -ya**

kedî

cat, the cat

kedîye [kedi-y-e]

to the cat

banka

bank, the bank

bankaya [banka-y-a]

to the bank

It is also suffixed to extended (already suffixed) nouns which end in a consonant:

evim

my house

evime [ev-im-e]

to my house

sokağın

your street

sokağına [sokağ-ın-a]

to your street

güller

roses

güllere [gül-ler-e]

to the roses

But it takes buffer letter **-n-** when added as a second suffix to an already extended noun, thus taking the form **-ne -na**.

kedî

cat, the cat

kedisi [kedi-si]

his cat

kedisine [kedi-si-ne]

to his cat

baba

father, the father

babaları [baba-ları]

their father

babalarına [baba-ları-n-a]

to their father

This shift of Buffer Letter **-y** to **-n** helps the listener to discern that that noun has already been extended by a previous suffix.

To reiterate: The buffer letter **-n-** is only used on already extended (suffixed) nouns.

Examples of Motion Toward Suffix

adama [adam-a]

to the man

adamlara [adamlar-a]

to the men

kekiye [kedi-y-e]

to the cat

kedi *cat* ends in a vowel so "kedi-y-e" is used. "kedi-e" is incorrect.

kedilere [kedi-ler-e]

to the cats

eve [ev-e]

to home

evlere [ev-ler-e]

to the houses

kapı

door ends in a vowel

kapıya [kapı-y-a]

["kapı-a" is incorrect.]

to the door

kapılara [kapı-lar-a]

to the doors

Static Position Condition (Locative) "-de/-da, -te/-ta, -nde/-nda"

*The Static Position (Locative) Suffix **de** or **da** in, on, at. This suffix shows concrete place (location):*

adamda [adam-da]

on the man

adamlarda [adam-lar-da]

on the men

kedide [kedi-de]

on the cat

kedilerde [kedi-ler-de]

on the cats

evde [ev-de]

at home

evlerde [ev-ler-de]

at the houses

Ali bey, evdeymiş. [ev-de-ymiş]

Probably Ali bey is at home.

kapıda [kapı-da]

at the door

kapılarda [kapı-lar-da]
at/by the doors

köprüde [köprü-de]
on the bridge

köprülerde [köprü-ler-de]
on the bridges

odada [oda-da]
in the room

odalarda [oda-lar-da]
in the rooms

odadayım [oda-da-yım]
I am in the room

For the plural we have added two suffixes **-ler** (Plural Suffix) and **-de** (Static Location Suffix) or **-lar** and **-da** and tagged them together to make one word in Turkish.

Movement Away Suffix (Ablative) "-den/-dan, -ten/-tan, -nden/-ndan"

*The suffix **-den** or **-dan** from, by, via, through. This suffix show movement from a location.*

adamdan [adam-dan]
from the man

adamlardan [adam-lar-da]
from the men

kediden [kedi-den]
from the cat

kedilerden [kedi-ler-den]
from the cats

evden [ev-den]

from home

evlerden [ev-ler-den]

from the houses

kapıdan [kapı-dan]

from the door

kapılardan [kapı-lar-dan]

from the doors

köprüden [köprü-den]

from the bridge

köprülerden [köprü-ler-den]

from the bridges

odadan [oda-dan]

from the room

odalardan [oda-lar-dan]

from the rooms

For the plural we have added two suffixes **-ler** (Plural Suffix) and **-den** (Movement Away Suffix) or **-lar** and **-dan** and tagged them altogether to make one word in Turkish.

The Suffix of Ownership (Genitive Case)

*The form of the ownership suffix is: **-in** or **-nin** (using buffer letter **-n-** when added to words which already end in a vowel) meaning of, belonging to.*

This suffix is used for ownership. It is also used as part of the Possessive Relationship . (Ch. 11) The sign of the Ownership Condition suffix is **-in** which is added to the noun, singular, plural or extended forms.

It is subject to Vowel Harmony, the Vowel Harmonized forms become **-in -ın** **-ün -un** of , belonging to.

A sole exception **su** water.

The translation for *of the water* is not "sunun", but **suyun** with the exceptional buffer letter -y which is always used with the word **su** water.

This exception also applies to the Possessed Case you cannot say for *Fruit Juice* "Meyve Susu" as the buffer letter -y- is always used with the word **su** water.

Meyve Suyu is the correct way to say "*Fruit Juice*".

Formation of the Ownership Suffix

The suffix **-in -ın -un -ün** is added to the noun.

ev, evler

house, houses

evin [ev-in]

the house's, of the house

evlerin [ev-ler-in]

the houses', of the houses

evimin [ev-im-in]

my house's, of my house

evlerimin [ev-ler-im-in]

my houses', of my houses

evinin [ev-in-in]

your house's, of your house

evlerinin [ev-ler-in-in]

your houses', of your houses

memurun [memur-un]

the official's, of the official

memurların [memur-lar-ın]

the officials', of the officials

gözün [göz-ün]

the eye's, of the eye

gözlerimin [göz-ler-im-in]
my eyes', of my eyes

akşamın [akşam-ın]
the evening's, of the evening

akşamların [akşam-lar-ın]
the evenings', of the evenings

tavuk
chicken

tavuğun [tavuğ-un]
the chicken's, of the chicken

tavukların [tavuk-lar-ın]
the chickens', of the chickens

bakkalın [bakkal-ın]
the grocer's, of the grocer

bakkalların [bakkal-lar-ın]
the grocers', of the grocers

The Plural Suffix is added as the first suffix.

The Possessive Adjective is added secondly, and finally the Ownership Suffix indicating Possession.

The Ownership Suffix Nouns ending in Vowels

The Suffix changes to **-nin/-nın/-nun/-nün** of or *belonging to* using buffer **-n-** in order to keep two vowels apart.

kedinin [kedi-n-in]
of the cat, the cat's

kedisinin [kedi-si-n-in]
of his cat, his cat's

onun kedilerinin [kedi-ler-in-in]

of his cats, his cats'

onların kedilerinin [kedi-leri-n-in]

of their cat/of their cats, their cat's/cats'

bankanın [banka-n-in]

the bank's, of the bank

bankasının [banka-sı-n-in]

his bank's, of his bank

köprünün [köprü-n-ün]

the bridge's, of the bridge

All suffixes, except the **-li** containing suffix, are written apart from any Proper Name which begins with a capital letter.

Ali 'nin [Ali-'n-in]

Ali's, of Ali

Londra 'nın [Londra-'n-in]

London's, of London

The Ownership Suffix with Extended words (already suffixed)

The suffix **-in -ın -ün -un** of, belonging to always takes buffer letter **-n-** to become **-nin -nın -nün -nun** when added either to a root word or to an extended word which ends in a vowel.

kedinin [kedi-nin]

the cat's

kedisinin [kedi-si-nin]

his cat's, of his cat

bankanın

of the bank

bankasının

of his bank

arabanın

the car's

arabasının

his car's, of his car

Ali 'nin

Ali's, of Ali

Ayşe 'nin

Ayshe's, of Ayshe

köprünün

of the bridge

köprülerinin

of their bridge(s)

The suffix **-in** always becomes **-nin** whether suffixed to a Simple Noun or to an already suffixed noun.

The With Condition "ile, -le/-la, -yle/-yla"

The Suffix -le -la with, and, also.

The word for *with* in Turkish is **ile**. This is one word which can stand on its own after the word it modifies. In which case it does not follow vowel harmony rules but is always written and spoken **ile**.

Mehmed ile [Mehmed ile]

with Mehmet or

Mehmet'le [Mehmet-'le]

with Mehmet

gözlerim ile [gözler-im ile]

with my eyes or

gözlerimle [gözler-im-le]
with my eyes

domuzla [domuz-la]
with the pig or

domuz ile [domuz ile]
with a (any) pig

domuzuyla [domuz-u-yla]
with the/his pig or

domuzu ile [domuz-u ile]
with the/his pig

arkadaşınla [arkadaş-ın-la]
with your friend or

arkadaşın ile [arkadaş-ın ile]
with your friend

Using "ile" with words which end in a vowel.

When adding **ile** to words that end in a vowel the initial letter **-i** of **-ile** changes to a buffer letter **-y** in order to keep two vowels apart, thus the forms **-yla** and **-yle** are used.

paltosuyla [palto-su-yla]
with his overcoat

bir arabayla [bir araba-yla]
with a car

kediyle [kedi-yle]
with the cat

kedisiyle [kedi-si-yle]
with his cat

iskemleyle [iskemle-yle]
with the chair

eliyle [el-i-yile]

with his hand

elleriyle [eller-i-yile]

with his hands

babasıyla [baba-sı-yla]

with his father

If the suffixed form is used then it changes to **-yle -yla** after vowels.

Whether to use **ile** as *stand alone* or as a *suffix* is a free choice of the speaker or writer, but there is no change in the meaning.

The Containing Condition **-li -lı -lÜ -lu**

The Suffix **-li -lı -lÜ -lu** *originating from, furnished with, place of*

This suffix gives the sense of belonging to something or somewhere. It is used with place names, especially to say where one is from.

The **-li** suffix is not separated from a Proper Noun by an apostrophe as other suffixes generally are "Londra'lı" would be incorrect **Londralı** is correct.

Londralı [Londra-lı]

a Londoner

Londralılar [Londra-lı-lar]

Londoners

İstanbullu [İstanbul-lu]

an Istanbuli

İstanbulular [İstanbul-lu-lar]

Istanbulis

İngiltereliyim [İngiltere-li-yim]

I am English

Bolulu [Bolu-lu]

a person from Bolu

Çinli [Çin-li]
a Chinese Man (China-man)

This suffix also gives the sense of belonging to something or somewhere.
It is widely used with place names, especially to say where one is from:

İngiltereliyim.
I am from England.

Mançesterliyim.
I come from Manchester.

Nerelisiniz?
Where (exactly) are you from?

An Actual Example of the "containing" suffix.

Here is a picture of a sandwich bar's billboard showing the type of sandwiches available :





The picture shows three forms of the suffix suffix **-li**

karışık

mixed

kaşarlı [kaşar-lı]

containing hard cheese

sucuklu [sucuk-lu]

containing Turkish type sausage

salamlı [salam-lı]

containing salami

sosisli [sosis-li]

containing sausage

The meaning of "*furnished with*" is used to make attributive adjectives:

tuz salt becomes **tuzlu** salty

şekerli çay sweet tea, sugared tea, sugary tea, according to context.

sabır

patience

sabırlı [sabır-lı]

patient

Mehmet sabırlı bir adamdır.

Mehmet is a patient man.

kuvvet

strength

kuvvetli [kuvvet-li]

strong

Ali kuvvetli bir genç.

Ali is a strong youth.

yaprak

leaf

yapraklı [yaprak-lı]

leafy

Bir yapraklı ağaç.

A leafy tree.

çimen

lawn

çimenli

having a lawn

Çimenli bir ev.

It is a house with a lawn.

yaş

age

yaşlı

old (aged)

Yaşlı bir at.

It is an old horse.

renk

colour

renkli

coloured

ses
noise

sesli
noisy

yatak
bed

yataklı
furnished with a bed

biber
pepper

biberli
peppery, peppered

İçkili bir lokantaya gittik.
We went to an alcohol serving bistro.
ıçkili means *furnished with alcoholic drinks.*
[ie: Alcoholic drinks are served.]

Plural nouns are formed by adding the **-ler** or **-lar** plural suffix to an adjective:

sabırlılar [sabır-lı-lar]
the patient ones

kuvvetliler [kuvvet-li-ler]
the strong ones

yaşlılar [yaş-lı-lar]
the aged [old people]

The Lacking Condition "-siz -sız -süz -suz"

The Suffix -siz -sız -süz -suz without, un-, non-, -less, dis-

This suffix gives the sense of lacking. In English it can be translated as *un-* as in *unavailable* or *-less* as in *worthless* or *dis-* as in *distaste*.

ehliyet

licence

ehliyetsiz [ehliyet-siz]

unlicensed

ehliyetli [ehliyet-li]

licensed

renk

colour

renksiz [renk-siz]

colourless

renkli [renk-li]

coloured

sabır

patience

sabırsız

impatient

sabırlı

patient

işaret

sign

işaretsiz

unsigned

işaretli

signed

ses *noise*

sessiz

noiseless

sesli

noisy

şeker

sugar

şekersiz

unsugared

şekerli

sugared, sweetened

namus

honesty

namussuz

dishonest

namuslu

honest

Bir çay, şekersiz olsun, lütfen.

A tea, no sugar, please.

Sonsuz bir yolculuk gibiydi.

It was like an endless journey.

Sensiz gidiyorum

I'm going without you.

Değersiz bir saat aldım.

I bought a worthless watch.

İçkisiz bir aile gazinosuna gittik.

We went to a non-alcoholic family restaurant.

içkisiz means *without alcoholic drinks*

[ie: Alcohol is not served] is seen on many Public Signs.

Plural nouns are formed by adding the **-ler** or **-lar** plural suffix to an adjective:

sabırsızlar [sabır-sız-lar]

the impatient ones

şekersizler [şeker-siz-ler]

the unsugared ones

renksizler [renk-siz-ler]

the uncoloured/colourless ones

Dependent Adverbs

Dependant adverbs require that the preceding noun have the Motion Towards (dative) -e/-ye, -a/-ya to/toward suffix:

-e nazaran compared with

buna nazaran

compared to this

bunlara nazaran

compared to these

şuna nazaran

compared to that

şunlara nazaran

compared to those

ona nazaran

compared to that

onlara nazaran

compared to those

Düne nazaran bugün hava daha güzel

Compared to yesterday, the weather is better today.

Rakiplerine nazaran ücretsizdir.

Compared to the competitors it is price free.

-e kadar up to, until, as far as.

şimdiye kadar [şimdi-ye kadar]

up to now

Ankara'ya kadar
as far as Ankara

Gelecek pazara kadar bekleyelim.
Let us wait until next Sunday.

Çarşıya kadar gidiyorum.
I am going as far as the shops.

-e doğru straight toward.

bankaya doğru [banka-ya doğru]
straight to the bank

Eve doğru git!
Go straight home!

Evden okula doğru gidin.
Go straight to school from home.

-e göre according to, compared to

bana göre
according to me

sana göre
according to you

Memed'e göre
according to Mehmet.

This has both or either the *comparing to* and *according to* meanings in a sentence.

Yeni plâna göre, evimizin arka bahçesi küçültülecekti. [plân-a göre]
According to the new plan our back garden will be made smaller.

Okuduğun kitap benimkine göre daha kalın görünüyor. [benim-ki-n-e göre]
The book that you are reading looks thicker than mine. ["compared to mine", a

comparison]

Bu gazeteye göre hiç yeni haberi daha çıkmamış. [gazete-y-e göre]
According to this newspaper no more new news has happened yet.

-e karşı against

duvara karşı [duvar-a karşı]
against the wall

rüzgara karşı [rüzgar-a karşı]
against the wind

Garajın kapısına karşı bisikletimi bırakmışım.
I believe I left my bicycle against the garage door.

-e rağmen in spite of in positive sentences

buna rağmen
in spite of this

bunlara rağmen
in spite of these

şuna rağmen
in spite of that

şunlara rağmen
in spite of those

ona rağmen
in spite of that

onlara rağmen
in spite of those

In English there are many types of **-e rağmen** *although, though, in spite of, despite, notwithstanding, albeit etc.* Turkish has only two words: **-e rağmen** or **-e karşı**.

Her şeye rağmen başarabilirdik. [şey-e rağmen]

In spite of everything we were able to succeed.

Havanın kararmasına rağmen, yollarına hâlâ yürüyerek devam ediyorlardı.
[kararma-sı-n-a rağmen]

Despite the weather getting worse, they still carried on walking along the road.

Bütün bu olumsuz koşullara rağmen yine de başarabiliriz. [koşul-lar-a rağmen]

Despite all these negative circumstances, he was able to succeed again.

Akşam saat 7'den sonra yemek yemenin sağlığa zararlı olduğunu bilmesine rağmen, her gece yatmadan önce atıştırmaktan kendini alamıyordu.

[bilme-si-n-e rağmen]

("kendini alamamak" "can't help myself")

In spite of knowing that eating after 7 o'clock in the evening is dangerous to health, he could not help taking a snack before going to bed.

-e rağmen despite in negative sentences.

Ben hiçbir suçum olmamasına rağmen pişmanım, ya sen? [olma-ma-sı-n-a rağmen]

Despite not being at fault, I am sorry, how about you?

Kalan benzinimizin şehre varmaya yeteceği belli olmamasına rağmen, ısrarla yola devam ettiler. [olma-ma-sı-n-a rağmen]

Despite us not having petrol left to get to town, they insisted on continuing on the road.

[olma-ma-sı-n-a] This is Negative Infinitive of "olmama(k)" "to not be", with the addition of **-(s)ı** making it a specific definite noun described by "Kalan benzinimiz" "which-remains petrol-our", which is further suffixed with **-(n)-a** to make it part of "rağmen" clause.

A Newspaper Article

İSTANBUL, 5 Mart (Reuters)

Fransız otomotiv üreticisi Peugeot'nun CEO'su Jean Pilleppe Colin, krize rağmen Türkiye'ye ilişkin yatırım projelerinin devam ettiğini, kompakt sedan sınıfı araçların Türkiye'de üretimi için fizibilite çalışmaları yaptıklarını söyledi.

ISTANBUL, 5 March (Reuters)

The CEO of French car producer Peugeot Jean Pillepe Colin has said that in spite of the crisis, that the investment project concerning the compact sedan class vehicles' production in Turkey feasibility studies are on-going.

Peugeot krize rağmen (kriz-e rağmen) Türkiye'ye yatırım projesini sürdürüyor.

In spite of the Peugeot crisis the investment project is still carrying on for Turkey.

Dependent Adverbs with "-den/-dan"

These adverbs require that the preceding noun have the motion away -den/-dan, -ten/-tan from suffix:

-dan dolayı

because of.

-dan başka

except for, apart from, other than.

-dan beri

since.

-dan önce

before (in time). [Modern Turkish]

-dan evvel

before (in time). [Older Turkish, still in use]

-dan sonra

after(wards)

Bundan dolayı because of this

Mehmet'in yaptıklarından dolayı asla başaramayız! [Mehmet'-in yaptık-lar-ı-n-dan]

Because of what Mehmet did we will never be able succeed.

Ondan başka except for that

Piyanomdan başka her şeyi geri bırakacağım. [Piyano-m-dan başka]
Except for my piano I will leave everything behind.

Ondan beri since then

saat üçten beri
since 3 o'clock. [üç-ten beri]

Saat üçten beri sizi arıyordum.
I have been looking for you since three o'clock

Geçen haftadan beri hastayım. [hafta-dan beri]
I have been ill since last week./I have been ill for a week. (This means that I am still ill.)

Şundan önce, Şundan evvel before that (in time)

Mayıs ayından önce mühendis olarak çalışıyordum. [ay-ı-n-dan önce]
Before May I was working as an engineer.

Ondan evvel lokantaya gidelim. [On-dan evvel]
Before that, let's go to the cafe.

Ondan sonra after that

Haziran ayından sonra emekli olacağım. [ay-ı-n-dan sonra]
After (the month of) July I shall retire (from work).

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 6 : The Articles



The Subject Definite Article "THE"

There is no Turkish word for the subject definite article only the context tells us when to insert "THE" in English: Çay pahalı.

Tea is expensive.

[*"tea" is in general. The Definite Article is not required.*]

Çay soğuk.

The tea is cold.

[*The "tea" is particular. The Definite Article is required.*]

Araba caddede.

The car is in the road.

The Subject Definite Article "*THE*" does not exist in Turkish as a word or a suffix, but it does exist as a Direct Objective Suffix.

When the noun is an object of a verb as in "Mehmet mended *THE* radio" then Turkish does use an Objective Suffix "*THE*"

The Direct Object Suffix "the"

Turkish Grammar: the Noun Object Condition (accusative).

The direct object suffix which makes the object substantive is one of the most difficult hurdles for English Speakers to surmount when speaking, reading and understanding the Turkish Language.

It has the form of a suffix:

-i -ı -u -ü used with bare nouns which end in a consonant.

-yi -yı -yu -yü used with bare nouns which end in a vowel.

-ni -nı -nu -nü used with extended (already suffixed) nouns ending in a vowel.

In English both the Subject and Object of a sentence are made substantive by the use of the same Definite Article *THE*.

This "doubling" causes many learning problems for English Speakers. As an example: **Adam kapıyı** (kapı-yı) **kapattı**

THE (subject substantive) *man closed THE* (object substantive) *door* The subject is already understood as substantive in Turkish.

Unlike English, the Definite Article "*THE*" does not exist in Turkish.

There is no "*THE man*" as the subject definite article "*THE*" is already understood.

However, there is an Object Definite Article "*THE*" in Turkish which appears as the suffix **-i** (governed by Vowel Harmony).

To form an object **-i** is added to a bare noun stem:
ev house (subj.) becomes **evi** *the house* (obj.)

When added extended (already suffixed) nouns which terminate in a consonant:
evim *my house* (subj.) becomes **evimi** *my house* (obj.)

Buffer letter **-y** is used when added to a bare noun stem ending in a vowel.
(Ch.4)

oda *room* becomes **odayı** *the room*

Buffer letter **-n** is used when added to an already extended (suffixed) nouns which end in a vowel (Ch.4) **odası** *his room* becomes **odasını** *his room* (obj.)

The Direct Object is suffixed according to Vowel Harmony Rules.

Simple noun ending in a consonant:

Adam kilidi (kilid-i) **kapattı.**

THE man locked THE lock.

The **-i** suffix makes the bare noun *THE LOCK* substantive as a Direct Object.

Extended noun ending in a consonant:

Adam kilidimi (kilid-im-i) kapattı.

THE man locked MY lock.

The **-i** suffix makes the extended noun *MY LOCK* substantive as a Direct Object.

Simple noun ending in a vowel:

Adam kapıyı (kapı-yı) kapattı.

THE man closed THE door.

The **-yı** suffix makes the bare noun *THE DOOR* substantive as a Direct Object.

Extended noun ending in a vowel:

Adam kapısını (kapı-sı-nı) kapattı

THE man closed HIS door.

The **-nı** suffix makes the extended [already suffixed] noun *HIS DOOR* substantive as a Direct Object.

To sum up Object Pointers:

As objects of a verb nouns needs an object pointers (Objective Condition) in Turkish.

This is the suffix **-(y)i -(y)ı -(y)ü -(y)u** using buffer letter **-y-** after vowels.

If the object pointer follows another suffix then the buffer letter becomes **-n-** and thus the object pointer suffix is **-ni -nı -nü -nu** when attached to possessed objects.

Some examples of Objective Condition.

onun of him and **onların** of them has been used here to make the meaning clear.

Direct Object pointer **-i** for Simple Noun.

Evi boyuyorum [ev-i]

I am painting the house.

Direct Object pointer **-n-i** for Extended Noun.

(onun) Evini boyuyorum [ev-i-n-i]

I am painting his house. [the house of him]

Direct Object pointer **-y-i** for Simple Noun.

Arabayı boyuyorum [araba-y-i]

I am painting the car.

Possessive Pronoun **-s-i** plus Direct object pointer **-n-i** for Extended Noun.

(onun) Arabasını boyuyorum [araba-s-i-n-i]

I am painting his car. [the car of him]

Possessive pronoun **-ları** plus Object Pointer **-nı** for Extended Noun.

(onların) Arabalarını boyuyoruz. [araba-ları-n-ı]

We are painting their car. [the car of them]

Possessive Pronoun **-sı** plus Direct object pointer **-nı** for Extended Noun.

(onun) Arabasını boyuyor musunuz? [araba-s-ı-n-ı]

Are you painting his car?

Possessive Pronoun **-nız** plus Direct object pointer **-ı** for Extended Noun.

Mehmet, arabanızı boyamıyor mu? [araba-nız-ı]

Isn't Mehmet painting your car?

Possessive Pronoun **-si** plus Direct object pointer **-ni** for Extended Noun.

(onun) Kedisini aramıyor muyum? [kedi-s-i-n-i]

Aren't I looking for his cat?

Direct Object Pointer **-i** for Personal Pronoun.

Beni istiyor musun? [ben-i] *Do you want me?*

Seni istemiyor muyum? [sen-i] *Don't I want you?*

The Indefinite Article

The Singular Indefinite Article is: **bir** *a, an, one*

bir kapı *a gate*
bir elma *an apple*
bir bardak *one glass*

Caddede bir araba var.
There is a car in the road.

The Positive Plural Indefinite Article: birkaç some

In English the Article *some* is only used in Positive Statements whereas *any* is used in Negative Statements and also both in Positive and Negative Questions.

Positive Statements use some in English:

Bahçede birkaç kapı var.
There are some gates in the garden.

Bahçede birkaç kedi var.
There are some cats in the garden.

Caddede birkaç araba var
There are some cars in the road.

The Negative Singular Indefinite Article is "hiçbir" not one

Negative Statements use *any* (usually with the plural) in English.

Bahçede hiçbir kapı yok.
There is not a gate in the garden at all./There aren't any gates in the garden.

Bahçede hiçbir kedi yok.
There is not a (single) cat in the garden./There aren't any cats in the garden.

Caddede hiçbir araba yok.
There is not a car in the road (at all)./There aren't any cars in the road.

"hiçbir" at all? in Questions

Bahçede hiçbir kapı yok mu?

Isn't there a (single) gate in the garden?

Bahçede bir kedi var mı?

Is there there a cat in the garden?

Caddede hiçbir araba yok mu?

Isn't there a car in the road at all?

Caddede bir araba var mı?

Is there a car in the road?

"hiç" any, none at all

Negative Statements use *any* in English:

Bahçede hiç kapı yok.

There are not any gates in the garden.

Bahçede hiç kedi yok.

There are not any cats in the garden.

Caddede hiç araba yok.

There are not any cars in the road.

"hiç"> not any?

Bahçede hiç kapı yok mu?

Aren't there any gates in the garden?

Bahçede birkaç kedi var mı?

Are there any cats in the garden?

Caddede hiç araba yok mu?

Aren't there any cars in the road?

Caddede birkaç araba var mı?

Are there any cars in the road?

birkaç *some* and **hiç** *not any* always take a singular noun in Turkish but the meaning is plural in both Turkish and English: **birkaç kadın** *some ladies*
hiç ev *not any houses*

From the previous section we can see that **hiçbir** *not a single one* is used for the singular both in Turkish and English: **Caddede hiçbir araba yok.**
There is not a car in the road?

"Hiç" *ever, never.*

In normal verbal *positive questions* **hiç** translates as *ever*.

Hiç Alanya'ya gittiniz mi?
Have you ever been to Alanya?

In normal verbal *negative questions* **hiç** translates as *never*.

Hiç Alanya'ya gitmediniz mi?
Have you never been to Alanya?

Other Indefinite Articles are:

bazı *some*

Caddedeki bazı arabalar artık yok.
There were some cars in the road. (now there are none).

bazı *some* always takes the plural.

bazı kadınlar *some ladies*
bazı evler *some houses*

birçok *a lot of or many.*

Caddede birçok araba var.
There are a lot of cars on the road.

Caddede birçok araba var.
There are many cars on the road.

biraz *a little, a small amount*

Biraz şeker, lütfen

A little sugar, please.

About Gender

Turkish has no gender.

There is only one form of the noun, no masculine as *author, hero* and feminine as *authoress, heroine*. English has two forms of these nouns.

When gender distinction is necessary Turkish uses locutions:

kız *girl* or **kadın** *lady* can be placed in front of the noun to show human femininity: **terzi** *tailor*

kadın terzi *tailoress*.

arkadaş *friend*

kız arkadaş *girl friend*.

dişi *female* is used before nouns to show a female animal:

köpek *dog*

dişi köpek *bitch*.

erkek *male/man* is used to show maleness:

kardeş *sister/brother*

erkek kardeş *brother*.

kız *girl/maiden* can be used to show human femininity:

kardeş *sister/brother*

kız kardeş *sister*.

This method is used whenever it is necessary to differentiate between the sexes of brothers and sisters.

The Exceptions of Family Relationships

Although there is generally no gender distinction in Turkish this does not apply to close family relationships.

Relationships on the mother's side will have a different word than those of the father's side.

amca *uncle* [father's brother]

dayı *uncle* [mother's brother]

teyze *aunt* [mother's sister]

hala *aunt* [father's sister]

A word list of Turkish Family Relations

father - **baba**

mother - **anne**

baby - **bebek**

brother - **erkek kardeş**

sister - **kız kardeş**

elder brother - **abi (ağabey)**

elder brother's wife - **yenge**

elder sister - **abla**

elder sister's husband - **enişte**

son - **oğul, erkek çocuk**

daughter - **kız, kız çocuk**

aunt (mother's side) - **teyze**

aunt (father's side) - **hala**

grandfather - **dede, büyükbaba**

grandmother - **nine, büyükanne**

grandmother (mother's side) - **anneanne**

grandmother (father's side) - **babaanne**

nephew, niece - **yeğen**

uncle (father's side) - **amca**
uncle (mother's side) - **dayı**
cousin - **kuzen**
father-in-law - **kayınbaba, kayınpeder**
mother-in-law - **kaynana, kayınvalide**
sister-in-law (of a male) - **baldız**
sister-in-law (of a female) - **görümce**
brother-in-law - **kayınbirader**
brother-in-law's wife of a female - **elti**
sister-in-law's husband of a male - **bacanak**
son-in-law ; bridegroom - **damat**
daughter-in-law ; bride - **gelin**
sister's husband - **enişte**
grandson ; granddaughter, grandchild - **torun**
twin - **ikiz**
twin brother, twin sister - **ikiz kardeş**
wife - **eş, hanım, karı**
husband - **koca**
step mother - **üvey anne**
step father - **üvey baba**

Turkish Conjunctions

The Particle **de** or **da** and, also, too

This is not a Static Position Suffix but written separately and it is translated *too, also, and, both*. It is a word in its own right but it does follow Vowel Harmony rules, hence the choice of **de** or **da**.

The translations of the Static Position suffix **-de/-da** and of the particle **de** have

two very different meanings.

It is always written separately as **de** or **da** and pronounced as **de** or **da**. It does not show any Consonant Mutation to "te" or "ta".

The following examples show this clearly:

Dolapta bir çanta var.

There is a bag in the cupboard.

Bu dolap da küçükmüş.

This cupboard is small too.

Conversational Stress

The Static Position suffix **-de** is stressed, but the separate particle **de** the stress occurs on the preceding syllable.

Dolapta bir çanta var.

There is a bag in the cupboard.

Bu dolap da küçükmüş.

This cupboard also seems (to be) small.

Ali bey de odada *Ali bey is also in the room*

Benim de param yok *I also have no money*

Benim param var. *I have money*

Benim de param var *I have got money too.*

Bahçedeki çocuklar da top ile oynuyorlar.

The children in the garden are playing with a ball too.

Ali bey de ben de sigara içeriz.

Both Mr. Ali and I smoke (cigarettes).

The particle **de** also is repeated after each individual subject.

"Hem... Hem..." both, both of

Hem bunu hem şunu al.. *Take both this one and that one.*

Hem bu hem şu tamam. *Both this and that are OK.*

"Ya... ya..." either... or...

Ya benimle gel ya onlu git. *Either you come with me or you go with him.*

Ya girin ya çıkın. *Either go in or come out.*

"Ne... ne..." neither... nor...

Ne bunu ne şunu istiyorum. *I want neither this or that.*

Mehmet, ne beni ne seni seviyor. *Mehmet loves likes you nor me.*

Some Other Conjunctions

ancak *scarcely, hardly*

ayrıca *moreover*

bari *at least*

bu sebeple *consequently*

bununla beraber *nevertheless*

çünkü *because*

fakat, ama *but*

halbuki *whereas*

ise *as for*

mademki *seeing that*

mesela *for example*

neyse *whatever*

olmazsa *at least*

örnek *for example*

öyleyse *if so*

sanki *as if*

ve *and*

veya *or*

yalnız *only*

yani *that is to say*

yoksa *otherwise*

zaten *besides*

Translation of "ile" *and, also*

When it stands between two nouns the suffix **ile** can be used to translate *and* when the basic meaning is *with, also*. Even when it is suffixed as **-le/-la** or **-yle** **-yla** [when added to vowel] it is still translated as *and* meaning "also".

If **ile** is in between two people or things as in **Ali ile arkadaşı; Mustafa ile Selim** then these sentences are translated into English by the conjunction "and", *Ali and his friends; Mustafa and Selim*.

Masada fincanla tabaklar var.

There are cups and plates on the table.

Ali ile arkadaşı, odaya girdi.

Ali and his friend entered the room.

Mustafa ile Selim partiye gitti.

Mustapha and Selim went to the party.

However if the suffix **-le/-la** does not come between the nouns then it is translated as *with, together with*.

Benimle Mehmet geldi

Mehmet came with me.

[Lit: With me Mehmet came.]

Ali arkadaşıyla, odaya girdi

Ali entered the room with his friend.

Mustafa, Selim 'le partiye gitti
Mustapha went to the party with Selim.

Toplantıya sekreterimle katıldım.
I attended the meeting with my secretary.

Patron ile adamları aniden silahlarını çektiler.
The boss and his men suddenly pulled their guns.

In this type of sentence **ve** *and*, *also* could be used in place of **ile** **Ali ve arkadaşı odaya girdi.** [and]
Mustafa ve Selim partiye gitti. [and]
Masada fincan ve tabak var. [and]

For the other sentences we can not use "ve" in place of "ile".
Benimle Mehmet geldi. [with] ("ve" cannot be used)
Ali, arkadaşıyla odaya girdi. [with] ("ve" cannot be used.)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 7 : Nouns



Formation of Nouns

Formation of Nouns from Adjectives the suffix "-lik"

This suffix is vowel harmonized forms are **-lik -lık -luk -lük**.

The suffix **-lik** four main uses in Turkish.

1. Formation of Abstract Nouns from Adjectives.

güzel *beautiful*
güzellik *beauty*

mutlu *happy*
mutluluk *happiness*

iyi *good*
iyilik *goodness*

çocuk *child*
çocukluk *childhood*

zor *difficult*
zorluk *difficulty, complication*

Some English abstract nouns end in *-ness, -tion, -ity*.

These abstract nouns can be further suffixed in Turkish according to their function in meaning:

Hepimiz, çocukluğumuzu mutluluk içinde geçirdik.

["çocuk-luğ-umuz-u" "our chldhood" (obj.), "mutlu-luk" "happiness"]

All of us passed our childhood in happiness.

O zamanlarda mutluluğum sonsuzdu.

[O zaman-lar-da mutlu-luğ-um "my happiness" son-suz-du.]

At that time my happiness was endless

2. Formation of Collective Nouns

genç *young*

gençlik *youth*

yaşlı *old*

yaşlılık *age*

insan *person*

insanlık *human-kind*

Bakan *Minister*

Bakanlık *Ministry*

balık *fish*

balıkçı *fisherman* can be extended to **balıkçılık** *Fishing Club, Group, Association.*

The example [balık-çı-lık] shows that noun suffixes can be chained to produce further extended meanings.

3. Forming Nouns of Usage.

Adding **-lik** to concrete nouns or verb stems forms nouns and adjectives meaning "suitable for, intended for, place of"

tuz *salt*

tuzluk *salt cellar*

biber *pepper*

biberlik *pepper shaker*

göz *eye*
gözlük *spectacles*

kira *hire*
kiralık *for hire*

yağmur *rain*
yağmurluk *raincoat, mackintosh*

4. Forming Nouns of Location

Bakan *Minister*
Bakanlık *Ministry*

çamaşır *linen, laundry items*
çamaşırılık *a laundry*

orman *forest*
ormanlık *forest place, forestry*

O tepenin arkasında büyük bir ormanlık bulunur.
There is a large forestry (to be found) behind that hill.
The word **ormanlık** is used as a general Substantive Noun of Location.

We may go on to talk about this particular **orman** itself:
O ormanda çok yabani hayvan varmış.
There are (probably) many wild animals in that forest.

Many place names (see a Turkish map) often end in the suffix **-lik**.

Ayvalık *Place of the Quince*
["ayva" quince]

Değirmenlik *Place of the Mill*
["değirmen" mill]

It is difficult to translate this suffix directly into English. We can only say *Quinceville, Milltown* or similar.

Arising from the above, the suffix **-lik** also form nouns of "*Place of*"

elmalık *apple orchard* from **elma** *apple*

sebzelik *vegetable garden, stall* from **sebze** *vegetable*

çiçeklik *flower garden, stall* from **çiçek** *flower*

kitaplık *book case, book store* from **kitap** *book*

The Suffix "**-lik**" with Numbers.

A number is normally used as an adjective thus the number 10 (as an adjective)

On yumurta *Ten eggs.*

Turkish changes numbers and numeric expressions into nouns by the addition of the **-lik** suffix.

Thus the number 10 **on** becomes **onluk** [on-luk] *the amount of 10.*

This similar to "*Lend me a 'tenner'*" in English where the number 10 has become a noun "*of the amount ten*".

In English when saying "*I want a ten egg box.*" we understand that our requirement is "*A box that will contain the amount of ten eggs*"

On yumurta bir kutu.

Lit: "Ten eggs, one box."

This example has no meaning in Turkish it is just two items "ten eggs" and "one box".

Turkish is more precise. The suffix **-lik** is added to produce a complex counted noun **on yumurtalık** *ten eggs-amount..*

I want a ten egg box becomes:

On yumurtalık bir kutu istiyorum.

[Lit: "I want a ten egg-amount box"]

To say *I want a box of ten eggs.* the Turkish uses the **-li** *furnished with, containing* suffix:

On yumurtalı bir kutu istiyorum.

I want a box containing ten eggs.

İki kişilik çadır var mı?

[Lit: "Is there a tent of two person-amount?"]

English says: *Is there a double tent?*

Evet var. Kaç günlük ?

[Lit: "Yes, there is. How many day-amount?"]

English says: *Yes there is. For how many days?*

Formation of Negative Abstract Nouns.

The suffix **-sizlik** without

The **-lik** suffix is added to the **-siz** without, lacking in suffix to form Negative abstract nouns in **-sizlik**.

Further suffixes can be added to show the noun condition:

sabır patience becomes **sabırsızlığı** impatience (obj.)

Bazı kişilerin sabırsızlığını anlayabiliriz.

[sabırsız-lığ-ın-ı "impatience" (obj.)]

We can understand some people's impatience.

istek wish, desire becomes **isteksizliğim** my reluctance, my unwillingness.

Onu yapmama isteksizliğimi itiraf etmek zorundaydım.

[istek-siz-liğ-im-i "my reluctance"]

I had to confess my reluctance to do it.

mutusuz unhappy becomes **mutusuzluğum**. my unhappiness

Mutsuzluğum sonsuza kadar sürer.

[mutusuz-luğ-um "my unhappiness"]

My unhappiness has no end.

dikkat care becomes **dikkatsizliğiniz** your carelessness

Demin dikkatsizliğini fark ettim.

[dikkat-siz-liğ-i-ni "your carelessness"]
I just noticed your carelessness.

dikkat is from an Arabic Feminine Plural "-at" and as such it does not follow Turkish Vowel harmony Rules as the final letter **-a-** is pronounced very long **dikkAAat**. Consequently any added suffixes take the Dotted form.

Compound Nouns

A noun may take another one or more nouns as describing nouns in order to make its basic meaning clear.

These noun groups are called Compound Nouns.

The describing nouns are called Completing Nouns and the Noun itself is called a Completed Noun.

Definite Noun Completion

The first noun possesses the noun it modifies. The second noun is then suffixed as definitive.

Both components retain their grammatical function as nouns in their own right.

Bisikletimin garajı.

[Bisiklet-im-in garaj-ı]

My bicycle's garage.

[Lit: "the garage of my bicycle"]

kapının zili

[kapı-nın zil-i]

the door-bell

[Lit: the bell of the door]

Mehmet'in arabası

[Mehmet'-in araba-sı]

Mehmet's car

[Lit: the car of Mehmet]

pencerenin perdesi

[pencere-nin perde-si]

the window-curtain

[Lit: the curtain of the window]

All the above are Definite Compound nouns as they are both particular and both definite.

The last example **pencerenin perdesi**

the window's curtain

[the-curtain of-the-window] is a Definite Noun Compound.

It is a particular definite curtain belonging to a particular definite window.

However it can also be an Indefinite Noun Compound "any window curtain, window curtaining":

pencere perdesi *window curtain(ing)*.

This is the difference between Definite and Indefinite Compound Nouns (see below).

Definite Noun Compound:

Pencerenin perdelerini yıkamalıyım.

[Pencere-nin perde-ler-i-ni yıkamalıyım]

I must wash the window curtains.

["perdeleri-ni" the curtains (obj.)]

The Describing (Completing) Noun shows who or what is owned by the Described (Completed) Noun.

The Describing Noun is suffixed with ownership **-in -ın -ün -un**

The Described Noun is suffixed with the third person singular

-(s)i -(s)ı -(s)ü -(s)u

Konağın bahçesi.

The garden of the mansion.

The mansion's garden.

Shows that "the garden belongs to the mansion".

Describing Noun Suffix **-in**.

Described noun Suffix **-si** uses buffer Letter **-s** to keep vowels apart.

Çantanın fermuarı.

The zip of the bag,

The bag's zip.

Showing "the zip belongs to (is part of) the bag".

Describing Noun Ownership Suffix **-nın** uses buffer Letter **-n-** to keep vowels apart.

Described Noun Suffix **-ı**

Bankanın kapısı.

The door of the bank,.

The bank's door.

Showing "the door is part of and belongs to the bank".

Describing Noun Ownership Suffix, **-nın** uses buffer Letter **-n-** to keep vowels apart.

Described Noun Suffix, **-sı** uses buffer letter **-s** to keep vowels apart.

Kavanozun kapağı.

The lid of the jar, The jar's lid.

Showing "the lid belongs to the jar".

Describing Noun Ownership Suffix **-un**.

Described Noun Suffix **-ı**.

The terminal **-k** of **kapak** mutates to **ğ** (Ch.3) on addition of a vowel suffix.

Bisikletimizi bıraktığımız yeri hatırlayamayacağız.

[Bisiklet-imiz-in bırak-tığ-ımız yer-i-ni hatırla-ya-ma-y-acağız]

We will not be able to remember the place where we leave/have left our bicycle(s).

In these sentences **yeri** (obj.) is the "place that we can not remember where we left the bicycles", and **bisikletimizi** is the "our bicycles" (obj.) are both in the Object Condition.

Bisikletimin yerini hatırlayamıyorum. *I can't remember my bicycle's place*

In this sentence **Bisikletimin yeri** is a Definite Noun Combination (both nouns are substantive)

The "bicycle" is in the Ownership Condition and "place" is made substantive with the Object condition.

Summary of Definite Noun Completion Suffixes

The Describing Noun Ownership suffixes are always **-(n)in -(n)ın -(n)ün -(n)un**.

Describing Nouns which end in a vowel always use buffer letter **-n-** where required.

The Described Noun suffixes are always **-(s)i -(s)ı -(s)ü -(s)u**.

Described Nouns which end in a vowel always use buffer letter **-s-** where required.

A Special case **su** (water)

The single exception **su** *water* which takes buffer letter **-y-** as both a Describing or Described Noun

The only noun in Turkish which does not conform to Buffer Letter rules is **su** *water*.

Whether as a Describing (Completing) Noun or as a Described (Completed) Noun it takes the Buffer letter **-y-** instead of the normal **-s-**. This avoids the ugly "susu".

Suyun sesi.

The sound of the water.

The water's sound.

The Describing Noun Suffix is **Su-y-un** to make this noun the "owner" [buffer letter **-y-**]

The Described Noun Suffix is **ses-i** to make this noun substantive.

Indefinite Compound Noun Completion

The first noun acts as an adjective to describe the second noun which is suffixed as a definitive noun.

Indefinite Noun Compound:

Pencere perdesi ambarda kaldı mı?

Is there any window curtain left in the store-room?

Only the Completed Noun takes the suffix of the third person singular
-(s)i -(s)ı -(s)ü -(s)u

Yaz mevsimi

["mevsim-i" Completed Noun Suffix]

summer season

Kış tatili

["tatil-i" Completed Noun Suffix]

winter holiday

Armut ağacı

["ağac-i" Completed Noun Suffix]

pear tree

Yolcu gemisi

["gemi-si" Completed Noun Suffix]

ferryboat

[Lit: traveller boat]

When two nouns are joined as in *lamp-post*, the second noun takes the third person possessive suffix, e.g. **ışık direği** [ışık direğ-i] *lamp-post* (Lit: Lamp its-post.)

Similarly **gece kulübü** [gece kulüb-ü]

night-club

[Lit: night its-club.]

This is the way that Turkish shows a connection between the two words to make a complex noun the first noun "lamp" becomes an adjective to describe the

a complex noun the first noun "lamp" becomes an adjective to describe the second "post" which is made into a definitive noun by the addition of the third person suffix.

Further suffixes can be added to this complex noun as required:

ışık direği [direğ-i]

lamp-post

[Lit: lamp its-post]

onun ışık direği [direğ-i]

his lamp-post

Mehmet'in ışık direği [direğ-i]

Mehmet's lamp-post

onun ışık direğinden [direğ-i-nden]

from his lamp-post

Mehmet'in ışık direğinden [direğ-i-nden]

from Mehmet's lamp-post

ışık direğinden [direğ-i-nden]

from the lamp-post

This shows the conflict between Indefinite Noun Completion Suffix **-i** and 3rd. Person Possessed Suffix **-i**.

To distinguish between them **onun** *his, her* is used: **onun ışık direği** *his lamp-post*

bisiklet yeri [bisiklet yer-i]

the bicycle place

kapı tokmağı [kapı tokmağ-ı]

from the door knob

yaz okulu [yaz okul-u]

the summer school

yolcu gemisinde [yolcu gemi-si-nde]

on the ferry boat

Ali'nin elma ağacını [elma ağac-ı-nı]

Ali's apple tree

ayakkabı boyası [ayakkabı boya-sı]

the shoe polish

bilgisayar ekranı [bilgisayar (Lit: "knowledge-counter") ekran-ı]

the computer screen

kızımın öğrenci karnesini [öğrenci karne-si-ni]

my daughter's student (school) report

The definitive of su (water) is **suyu** [not susu] is the ONLY exception in the Turkish language.

su borusu [su boru-su]

water pipe

elma suyu [elma su-yu]

apple juice

deniz suyu [deniz su-yu]

sea water

Descriptive (Uncompleted) Compound Nouns

1. Neither noun is made definitive thus producing a Descriptive Combined Noun.
2. The first noun acts as an adjective describing the main noun which follows.
3. In this compound neither Completing or Completed Noun take a suffix.
4. It describes the material from which the second noun is made or its general use.

el çanta

handbag (hand + bag)

elma ağaç
apple tree (apple + tree)

tahta kapı
wooden door

alüminyum pencere
aluminium window

demir köprü
iron bridge

plastik sandalye
plastic chair

pamuk mendil
cotton handkerchief

tahta masa
wooden table

demir köprü
iron bridge

su bardak
water glass (tumbler)

benzin depo
petrol dump

Some of these compound nouns have formed words through historical usage:

ortaokul
middle school (middle + school)

başbakan
prime minister (head + minister)

ayakkabı
shoe (foot + cover)

Vowel Harmony does not operate as each word is individual.

Compound Noun Chains

Nouns can be chained together using the Ownership (genitive) suffix as in English:

Arkadaşımın annesinin köpek kulübesi.

[Arkadaş-ım-ın anne-si-nin köpek kulübe-si.]

My friend's mother's dog kennel.

OR The dog kennel of friend's mother.

Kavak ağacının dalları.

[Kavak ağac-ı-nın dal-lar-ı]

The poplar tree's branches.

Ali beyin çaydanlığın kapağı.

[Ali bey-in çaydanlığ-ın kapağ-ı]

Ali Bey's teapot's lid.

Kitabının sayfaların resimleri.

[Kitab-ın sayfa-lar-ın-ın resim-ler-i]

The pictures of the book's pages.

Belediye parkının kapısı.

[Belediye park-ı-nın kapı-sı]

The gate of the corporation park.

Manisa Trafik Polis karakolu

[Manisa Trafik Polis karakol-u]

Manisa Traffic Police headquarters.

Plural Compound Nouns:

Armut bahçeleri [bahçe-ler-i]

Plum orchards.

Müdürler Toplantısı [Toplantı-sı]

Managers Meeting.

Öğrencinin defterleri [defter-ler-i]

Student's notebooks.

Evlerin kapılarının zilleri.

[Ev-ler-in kapı-lar-ın-ın zil-ler-i]

house door bells

[Lit: The bells of the doors of the houses]

Compound Nouns with Suffixes of Condition:

Kiraz bahçeleri güzelce çiçekleniyor.

[bahçeler-i (subj.)]

The cherry orchards are flowering nicely.

Çiftçi elma bahçelerini suladı.

[bahçeler-i-ni (obj.)]

The farmer watered the apple orchards.

Çiftçi portakal bahçesine gitti.

[bahçe-si-ne "Movement Towards Condition".]

The farmer went to his orange orchard.

Çocuk sebze bostanında oynuyorlar.

[bostan-ı-nda "Static Position Condition."]

The children are playing in the vegetable garden.

Mehmet belediye parkından çıktı.

[park-ı-ndan "Movement Away Condition."]

Mehmet came out from the municipal park.

Compound Nouns with Proper Names

Şair Eşref Bulvarı

[Indefinite Compound Proper Noun]

Şair Eşref Avenue

Şair Eşref Describing Noun ("The Poet Eşref")

Bulvarı[Bulvar-ı] Described Noun

Apocopating Nouns

Apocopate (verb.) to cut off or drop word, syllable, letter.

A comprehensive list of Turkish apocopating nouns can be found in The Glossary Ch. 51.

Some Turkish nouns which lose their final vowel (apocopate) when a suffix which itself begins with a vowel is added to the noun.

Adding a suffix beginning with a vowel DOES affect the Noun.

izin *leave, time off* becomes **izn-im** *my leave*. [NOT izin-im]

The final vowel of the noun root is dropped when adding a suffix which begins in a vowel.

iznim *my leave* becomes **iznimden** [izn-im-den] *since my time off*

The final vowel in the noun root is lost when adding **-im** *my* suffix (which begins with a vowel)

Adding a suffix beginning with a consonant DOES NOT affect the Noun.

izindeyim [izin-de-yim]

I am on leave.

The vowel of **izin** is NOT LOST as the first suffix **-de** begins with a consonant.

Possessive Adjective Examples

fikir *idea* becomes **fikrimiz** *our idea*

keyif *joy* becomes **keyfi** *his/her joy*

oğul *son* becomes **oğlun** *your son*

boyun *neck* becomes **boynum** *my neck*

ağız *mouth* becomes **ağzınız** *your mouth*

vakit (arb.) *time, occasion* becomes **vaktim** *my time* without any consonant mutation.

kayıp *loss* becomes **kaybı** *his loss*

"kayıp" changes its terminal **-p** to **-b.** before a vowel.

nakit *transport* becomes **onun nakdi** *his transport*

The final consonant **-t** has Mutated to its soft form **-d.**

The rules of Consonant Mutation are still observed in the apocopated form of the noun.

There are some nouns which do not soften their root vowel as they may be considered:

- (a) Single Syllable Words
- (b) Foreign Word Imports.

Case Suffix Addition Examples

Mehmet filmi seyretmiş [film-i]

It seems Mehmet watched the film.

Here the Direct Object suffix **-i** affects the noun **film**

Ali'nin alnı terliyor [Ali'nin aln-ı]

Ali's forehead is sweating.

Here the word **aln** *forehead* is in the Possessive Relationship which affects the noun **aln** shortening it to **aln-ı**

The noun root retains its basic form when adding a suffix which begins with a consonant

ağızda [ağız-da]

in the mouth

beyinden [beyin-den]

from the brain

kayıptan [kayıp-tan]

from the loss

The noun root is shortened if the first added suffix begins with a vowel:

ağzında [ağz-ı-nda]

in his mouth

beynimden [beyn-im-den]

from my brain

kaybımızdan [kayb-ımız-dan]

from our loss

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 8 : Adjectives



Adjectives Basic Rules

Words which describe the condition, colour size, number, position and place of nouns are called adjectives.

1. Adjectives are invariable.
They do not have to agree with the noun they describe in either number or gender as in French or Spanish.
2. Adjectives have no singular or plural form.
Never add a **-lar/-ler** plural suffix to an adjective.
3. Adjectives have no gender.
There is no masculine, feminine or neuter form.
4. Adjectives and adjectival phrases precede the noun as they do in English.
5. Adjectives can be formed from both nouns or verbs as in English.
6. Adjectives cannot have any other suffixes added to them.

Position of Adjectives

*Adjectives are words that describe nouns "A **blue** house." "A **hot** oven."
The adjective always precedes its noun as in English.*

mavi ev the blue house
mavi evler (the) blue houses

zengin adam the rich man
yorgun çocuklar tired children

When adjectives follow a noun the meaning is entirely different.

It becomes a "Statement of Fact".

Generally a comma is added after the subject noun:

ev, mavi

the house is blue

evler, mavi

the houses are blue

adam, zengin

the man is rich

Uzun geniş yol. *The long wide road.*

is different to:

Uzun yol, geniş(tir.) *The long road is wide*

Geniş yol, uzun(dur.) *The wide road is long.*

is different to:

Yol, uzun geniş(tir.) *The road is long and wide.*

Normally-**dir** is not required or used in normal conversation.

Uzun yol, geniş(tir).

[Statement of fact with -**tir**]

Uzun yol, geniş.

[Conversational]

The long road is wide.

Uzun yol, geniş mi(dir)?

[Statement of fact with -**dir**]

Uzun yol, geniş mi?

[Conversational]

Is the long road wide?

Bu ev, mavi(dir).

[Statement of fact with **-dir**]

Bu ev, mavi.
Conversational]
This house is blue.

Adjectives Emphasized and Public Forms

The emphasis is stressed by the use of the verb *to be* suffix **-dir** (Vowel Harmony and Consonant Mutation are observed), which makes it a "Statement of Fact"

Yol geniştir.
The road is wide.

The verb *to be* **-dir is used** to on a public statement or notice.

Giriş Yaşaktır.
Entry Forbidden.

Adjectives: Position of the Article

bir a, an, one can interpose between the adjective and its noun.

This has the effect of putting the emphasis on the adjective and/or causes the noun it describes to become definite.

bir güzel kız güldü
a beautiful girl laughed.

In this example some girl or other laughed an indefinite girl, therefore the adjective follows **bir**.

Güzel bir kız gördüm.
I saw a beautiful girl.

A specific girl was seen and moreover she was definitely beautiful **güzel** followed by **bir** emphasizes all these points When the indefinite article is used with its noun, then Turkish will not separate them as we do in English : **Büyük**

beyaz bir ev(dir).

(Article is next to its noun in Turkish)

It is a big white house.

(Article is separated from its noun in English)

yaşlı bir adam

an old man

boş bir kutu

an empty box

Adjectives used as Nouns

Turkish adjectives can also be used as nouns:

hasta *ill, sick*

bir hasta *a patient*

Hastalar hastanede.

The patients are in hospital.

zengin *rich*

bir zengin *a rich person*

Otelde kalan bir zengin var.

There is a rich [person] who is staying at the hotel.

Intensified and Reducing Adjectives

Adjective forms which deepen, strengthen and intensify their basic meaning.

Repetition Intensification

Beyaz beyaz arabalar.

cars so white.

Sıcak sıcak çörekler.

Really fresh buns.

Uzun uzun yollar.
Really long roads.

Taze taze yumurtala.
Really fresh eggs

Question particle between repeated adjectives intensifies the meaning.

This is similar to saying in American English "*Is he rich or is he rich?*"

Beyaz mı beyaz arabalar?
Are the cars white or what?

Sıcak mı sıcak çörekler.
So fresh buns.

Uzun mu uzun yollar.
*The roads are so long,
Such long roads! .*

Taze mi taze yumurtalar
Really fresh eggs.

Prefixed Intensification of Adjectives

To intensify an adjective by a prefix addition:

1. Find the first vowel of the plain adjective.
2. Add one of the letters **(p,r,s,m)** to form a syllable.
3. Prefix the new syllable to the plain adjective for its Intensified Form.

Beyaz etek. becomes
Bembeyaz etek. [Be + m + beyaz]
Bright white skirt..

Kırmızı elma. becomes
Kıpkırmızı elma. [Kı + p + kırmızı]
Bright red apple.

Temiz bir ev. becomes
Tertemiz bir ev. [Te + r + temiz]
A squeaky clean house.

Doğru yol. becomes
Dosdoğru yol. [Do + s + doğru]
Dead straight road.

There are some exceptions **paramparça, çırılçıplak** etc.

In these cases more than one letter is used (**p,r,s,m**) as (**-ram-** or **-ril-**) in the examples above.

There is no rule for which letter to choose from among (**p,r,s,m**).

It a feeling for the one which sounds correct, so local variations can occur in utterances.

A comprehensive list of Intensified Turkish Adjectives and Adverbs is to be found in the Glossary at Ch. 56.

Reducing Adjectives:

Adjective forms which weaken their basic meaning.

Reducing adjectives are formed by adding the suffixes **-ce, -cik** to qualifying adjectives or **-(i)msi, -(i)mtırak** to colours.

Güzel araba
güzelce araba
a niceish car

Yeşil elma
yeşilimsi elma
a greenish apple

Mavi çanta
mavimsi çanta
a bluish bag

Kısa pantolon
kısacık pantolon
little short pants

Küçük masa
küçücük masa
a smallish table

Mavi çanta
mavimsi çanta
a bluish bag

Sarı elma
sarımsı elma
a yellowish apple

Recognizing Adjectives

Both in English and Turkish words can be recognized as adjectives by their endings.

For instance the ending *-ful* in the word *beautiful*
"They built a beautiful house in the hill."

The *-ful* adjective adds the concept of *beauty* to the house.

There are other adjectival endings in English where English speakers recognize instantly the attribute being added by its ending.

The following example also uses the "Ability Attribute" *-able*
"They have built a beautiful, desirable house on the hill."

Some other adjectival endings in English may be:

-ly as in *the lovely view*.

-ing as in *the shaking branch*.

-ive as in *the positive result*.

-en as in *the broken arrow*.

and some other forms; each ending giving us a differing degree or meaning in concept.

This is the way that Turkish follows and if one learns the Adjectival Endings it is easier to recognize the concept of meaning as we automatically do in our own tongue.

They are also words in their own right and they should not be considered as adjectives with an added suffix.

As with English the adjectival ending on the word often points to the type of attribute that the adjective supplies to its noun.

For instance in English there is a different type of attribute supplied by the adjectives *lovely, loving, loveable, lovelorn, loved* although the root word carries the same meaning.

The Adjectival Suffix **-ik -ık -uk -ük**

*This suffix usually forms adjectives where the described noun is in a state **from which it cannot return** that is it has assumed a permanent state.*

From **yanmak** to burn the adjective **yanık** is formed meaning *burnt* (as a permanent state) **bir düşük yaprak**
a fallen leaf
[from **düşmek** to fall]

bazı kırık tabaklar
some broken plates
[**kırmak** to break]

kesik parçalar
cut (up) parts
[**kesmek** to cut]

By recognizing the **-ik** suffix we can see a permanent adjectival state has been attained.

Care should be taken not to mistake nouns which end in **-ik** such as **balık** *fish* or **sözlük** *dictionary* as being adjectives.

The different Forms of Adjectives

Using the Present Participle **düşen** *which falls/which is falling* as an adjective then the meaning changes: **bir düşen yaprak**
a falling leaf

düşen yapraklar
falling leaves

Similarly using the past participle:

düşmüş olan
which has fallen

Düşmüş olan yapraklar nemlidir.
The leaves which have fallen are damp
The fallen leaves are damp.

Adjectives and their Opposites

Common Adjectives

bad **kötü**

beautiful **güzel**

better **daha iyi**

big **büyük**

cheap **ucuz**

cold **soğuk**

difficult **zor**

early **erken**

easy **kolay**

empty **boş**

expensive **pahalı**

far **uzak**

free **serbest**

full **dolu**
good **iyi**
heavy **ağır**
here **burada**
hot **sıcak**
last **son**
late **geç**
light **hafif**
near **yakın**
new **yeni**
next **gelecek**
occupied **meşgul**
old **eski**
old **ihtiyar**
open **açık**
quick **çabuk**
right **doğru**
shut **kapalı**
slow **yavaş**
small **küçük**
there **orada**
ugly **çirkin**
worse **daha kötü**
wrong **yanlış**
young **genç**

The Comparison of Adjectives

The Degree of Equality

The degree of equality is obtained by the use of **kadar** as [Lit: "its amount"]

Londra İstanbul kadar güzel.

London is as beautiful as Istanbul.

Mehmet Ali kadar zengin.

Mehmet is as rich as Ali.

Kar kadar beyaz.

As white as snow.

The Negative Equality

The negative comparison is marked by the use of **değil** is not placed after the comparison.

Londra İstanbul kadar güzel değil.

London is not as beautiful as Istanbul.

Ayşe Deren kadar boylu değil.

Ayşe is not as tall as Deren.

The Degree of Comparison:

This comparison is made by using **daha** more and suffixing the object being compared with **-dan** or **-den** from thus giving the sense "than" in the comparison.

Mehmet Ali'den daha zengin.

Mehmet is richer than Ali.

İstanbul Londra'dan daha güzel.

Istanbul is more beautiful than London.

Demir sudan daha ağır.

Iron is heavier than water.

The Negative of Comparison

The Negative First Degree Comparison uses **az** *less*.

Londra İstanbul'dan az meşgul.

London is less busy than İstanbul.

Bulmacalar Türkçe derslerden az ilginç.

Crosswords are less interesting than Turkish lessons.

The Positive Superlative

The Third Degree of Comparison is obtained by using **en** *the most*.

Mehmet en zengin adam.

Mehmet is the richest man.

Dünyanın en güzel şehri, İstanbul.

Istanbul is the world's most beautiful city.

The Negative Superlative

The Negative uses **en az** *the least*

[Lit: the most less]

Dünyanın en az zengin memleketleri Afrika'da.

The least richest countries of the world are in Africa.

Usage of **en az** for negative superlatives is not common.

The preferred way is to use the superlative form of opposite adjective.

Dünyanın en fakir memleketleri Afrika'da.

The world's poorest countries are in Africa.

The more common usage of **en az** is *at least*.

Ahmet en az Mehmet kadar zekidir.

Ahmet is at least as intelligent as Mehmet.

Sen de en az benim kadar yeteneklisin.

You are at least as talented as me.

kadar iyi as good as

Bu, o kadar iyi

This, is as good as that.

Bu onun kadar iyi

This is as good as that.

-dan daha iyi better than

Bu, ondan daha iyi

This, is better than that.

en iyisi the best

Bu, en iyisi(dir)

This, is the best of all.

[Lit: iyisi = the best, dir is a "Statement of Fact" intensifier.]

Further Shades of Degree Positive

çok too, very, many

Çok para istiyor.

He wants a lot of money.

Çok mutluyum .

I'm very happy.

Çok odalı bir otel.

A hotel containing many rooms.

en çok the most

En çok para budur

This is the most money.

Ali'nin en çok parası var.

Ali has got the most money.

Tepede en çok ev var.

Most of the houses are on the hill.

daha more

İki çay daha, lütfen.

Two more teas, please.

Daha beş bira, lütfen.

Five beers more, please.

fazla too much, excessive

Fazla yemek geldi.

Too much food has arrived.

Fazla para istediler.

They wanted too much money.

daha fazla much more

Daha fazla yemek geldi

Much more food has arrived.

Daha fazla para istediler.

They wanted much more money.

Further Shades of Degree Negative

az, biraz a little

Az sonra çarşıya gidiyorum.

I'm going to the shops a little later on.

Biraz tuz istiyorum.

I want a little salt.

daha az lesser [Lit: more less]

Yemeğe daha az tuz koyunuz
put less salt on the food.

Buralarda, daha az polis var.
there are less policemen around here.

pek az very little [Lit: a bit less(er)]

Pek az sigara kullanıyorum.
I smoke (cigarettes) just a little.

Pek az şeker istiyorum.
I only want a little sugar.

çok az extremely little [Lit: a lot little(er)]

Çok az benzin kalıyor.
just a small amount of petrol is left.

Çok az para istedi.
he only wanted a very small amount of money.

***The Demonstrative Adjectives** "this,these, that, those" are discussed in Ch. 36
Demonstratives.*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 9 : Personal Pronouns



Personal Pronouns

I, you, he/she/it, we, you, they

In Turkish basic pronouns are divided into two categories

(1) Stand-alone Pronouns

Ben gidiyorum.

I am going.

The stand-alone personal pronouns are not used widely as the person is evident from the personal verb ending.

They are used for emphasis only in their simple form as the verb form itself already points to the person.

This is similar to Spanish where a person will say "*comprendo*" *I understand* in place of "*Yo comprendo*" *I understand*.

Stand-alone Pronouns are used in their extended forms when suffixes are added for all those important little words *to, from, with, etc.*

(2) Pronouns in suffix form (extended words).

Gidiyorum.

[gidiyor-**um**]

I am going.

Simple Personal Pronouns

ben *I*

sen *you* [familiar/informal]
o *He, she, it*

biz *we*
siz *you* [plural/formal singular]
onlar *they*

Examples of Emphasis

Gidiyorum.
I'm going.
Ben gidiyorum.
I am going. [Emphasized]

Kaldık. *We stayed.*
Biz kaldık.
We stayed. [Emphasized]

Extended First Person Singular

ben *I*
bana *to me*
[irregular NOT "bene"]
benim *of me, my*
[irregular NOT "benin"]
beni *me (obj.)*
bende *on me*
benden *from me*
benimle
OR **benle** *with me*

First Person Plural

biz *we*
bize *to us*

bizim *our*
[irregular NOT "bizimiz"]

bizi *us (obj.)*

bizde *on us*

bizden *from us*

bizimle
OR **bizle** *with us*

Second Person Singular (familiar/informal)

sen *you*

sana *to you*
[irregular NOT "sene"]

senin *of you, your*

seni *you (obj.)*

sende *on you*

senden *from you*

seninle
OR **senle** *with you*

Second Person Plural (polite/formal/public)

siz *you*

size *to you*

sizin *your*

sizi *you (obj.)*

sizde *on you*

sizden *from you*

sizinle
OR **sizle** *with you*

Third Person Singular

The third person singular pronoun **O** *he, she, it* adds letter-**n**-

o *he, she, it*

ona *to him, her, it*

onun *of him, his, her, its*

onu *him, her, it (obj.)*

onda *on him, her, it*

ondan *from him, her, it*

onunla

OR **onla** *with him, her, it*

Third Person Plural

The third person plural is based on **onlar** *they* [Not "olar"]

onlar *they*

onlara *to them*

onların *their*

onları *them (obj.)*

onlarda *on them*

onlardan *from them*

onlarla *with them*

Extended Personal Pronoun Examples

Bana onu verin.

Give it to me.

Onlara bakınız.

Look at them.

[Lit: towards them.]

Bize inanıyorlar.

They believe us.

[Lit: believe to us.]

Bende para yok.

I've got no money.

[Lit: on me]

Sende para var mı?

Have you got any money?

[Lit: on you]

Bizde para var mı?

Have we got any money?

[Lit: on us]

Benden bir şemsiye alabilirsiniz.

You can have an umbrella off me.

[Lit: from me]

Senden bir sigara alır mıyım?

Can I have a cigarette off you?

[Lit: take from you]

Ondan korkuyorum.

I am frightened of him .

[Lit: frightened from him]

Benim şemsiyemi alabilirsiniz.

ou can take my umbrella.

[şemsiye-m-i "my umbrella" as a Direct Object.]

Senin araban yeni mi?

Is your car new?

Onların arabası eskidir.

Their car is old.

Mehmet, beni vurdu.

Mehmet shot me.

[ben-i me as a Direct Object]

Ali, arabamı onardı mı?

Did Ali repair your car?

[araba-n-ı your car as a Direct Object]

Mustafa, onu yaptı.

Mustapha did it..

[on-u it as a Direct Object]

"with, by" Suffix *-le/-la*

When adding the **-le/ -la** suffix **ben(im)le, sen(in)le, on(un)la, biz(im)le, siz(in)le** are alternatives. There are alternatives: the choices are:

benimle OR benle

seninle OR senle

onunla OR onla

bizimle OR bizle

sizinle OR sizle

onlarla [The third person plural **onlarla** is the only alternative]

It is incorrect to say "onlarınla".

The preferred method is "benim" etc.

Mehmet, benimle/benle geldi.

Mehmet came with me.

[Lit: Mehmet and I came.]

Mustafa, bizimle/bizle kalacak.

Mustapha will stay with us.

Ali, onlarla geldi mi?

Did Ali come with them?

The Reflexive Pronoun "kendi" *self/own*

As an adjective **kendi** means *own*

kendi bahçem
my own garden

kendi evin
your own house

The person agrees with the thing which is owned:

kendi evi
[kendi ev-i]
his own house

kendim arabalarım
[kendi araba-ları]
my own cars

Personalised Forms **kendi** *self*

kendim
myself

kendin
yourself (familiar)

kendi(si)
himself, herself, itself

The third person singular is almost always in the short form **kendi** as the **-si** suffix is dropped in use.

kendimiz
ourselves

kendiniz
yourselves
OR *yourself* (polite form)

kendileri
themselves

Kendi extended (suffixed) forms:

kendime *to myself*

kendinden
from yourself

kendinde
OR **kendisinde**
on himself.

The **-si** suffix IS USED when further suffixes are added to *kendi(si)*

kendimizle
with ourselves

kendinizin
of yourselves

kendilerinden
from themselves

Kendi is used in many different contexts, especially for emphasizing purposes.

(a) Meaning *myself, yourself, himself*

Kendime bir bilgisayar aldım.
I bought a computer for myself.

Bence kendini biraz küçümsüyorsun.
I think you underestimate yourself a bit.

(b) Meaning *own* (as an adjective)

kendi evim
OR **benim kendi evim** *my own house*

kendi düşüncesi
OR **onun kendi düşüncesi** *her own opinion*

(c) Meaning *on my own* or in order to emphasize the subject.

Bu resmi ben kendim yaptım.

I made this picture on my own (by myself).

Bunu biz kendimiz düşündük.

We thought that on our own (by ourselves).

(d) To give a formal impression, used for 3rd person singular and plural, always as **kendisi** or **kendileri**.

Size Mr. Jones'u takdim etmek istiyorum. Kendisi daha önce bir şirkette CEO olarak çalışıyordu.

I would like to present you Mr. Jones. He used to work [Lit: was working before] as a CEO in a company.

To use **O** he instead of **kendisi** sounds too informal.

Kendisi he himself suits the formal situation in a better way.

(e) Duplication of **kendi** has an adverbial meaning.

Bilgisayar bozuktu. Ama daha sonra kendi kendine çalıştı.

The computer had broken down. But then, it worked by itself.

Kendi kendime konuşuyorum.

I am talking to myself.

Türkçe'yi kendi kendime öğrendim.

I learned Turkish by myself.

This usage is similar to the Irish, where they may say "Is it yourself that is going to town now?" for "Are you going to town now?"

Reflexive Verbs and the usage of kendi should not be confused.

*I had a wash uses Reflexive Verb **yıkanmak** to wash oneself*

Yıkandım.

I washed myself.

I had a wash.

Active verb **yılamak** to wash something

yıkadım

I washed [something else]

Çamaşırı yıkadım.

[Çamaşır-ı (obj.)]

I did the washing.

[Lit: I washed the washing.]

The addition of the **-n** to the Active Verb **yıkamak** *to wash something* serves as a suffix with a reflexive meaning.

"Kendimi yıkadım." is incorrect.

Yıkandım is correct.

Similarly "kendimi ısladım." is incorrect.

İslandım is correct for *I got wet*.

Interrogative Pronoun *who?*, *whom?* kim?, kimler?

The pronoun **kim?** *who?* has a plural in Turkish **kimler?** *who?*

English makes do with one form *who* for both singular and plural.

Singular - Plural - Meaning

kim - kimler - *who?*

kime - kimlere - *to whom?*

kimin - kimlerin - *whose?*

kimi - kimleri - *whom?(obj.)*

kimde - kimlerde - *on whom?*

kimden - kimlerden - *from whom?*

kiminle/kimle - kimlerle - *with whom?*

Kimi gördünüz?

["kim-ı" Objective Singular]

Whom did you see?

Kimleri gördünüz?

["Kimler-i Objective Plural]
Whom (what people) did you see?

Arabayı kimlerden aldınız?
[kimler-den]
From whom (plural) did you buy the car?

Parayı kime verdiniz?
[kim-e]
To whom did you give the money?

Bu gözlük kimin?
[kim-in]
Whose are these glasses?

Kiminle geldi?
[Kim-in-le]
Whom did he come with?

kimse somebody, anybody/anybody?, nobody.

biri
somebody
[positive singular general]

birisi
somebody
[positive singular particular]

birileri
somebody
[positive plural]

kimse
nobody
[negative])

kimse
anybody
[negative]

kimse?

anybody?

[positive or negative question]

The word **kimse**, used for both singular and plural, is the same as "personne" in French.

It can mean *nobody* [negative] or *anybody?* [positive and negative questions] according to the sentence context.

Examples of Usage

biri var, birisi var, birileri var all mean:

There is somebody there.

In English a Positive statement uses "somebody"

The word somebody in Turkish can be a singular **biri, birisi** *sombody* or plural **birileri** *sombodies*.

Kimse var mı?, Kimseler var mı?

Is there anybody there?

[Positive question uses *anybody?* in English.]

Kimse yok.

There is nobody there.

[Negative statement uses *nobody* in English.]

Kimse yok mu?

Isn't there anybody there?

[Negative question uses *anybody?* in English.]

Şimdiden evde biri (birileri) olmalı .

There must be somebody at home by now.

[Positive Statement.]

Saat sekizde parkta kimse görünmedi.

At eight o'clock there was nobody to be seen in the park.

[Negative Statement.]

Saat sekizde parkta kimse var mıydı?

Was there anybody in the park at eight o'clock?

[Positive Question.]

Şu anda ofisinizde kimse yok mu?

Isn't there anybody in your office at the moment?

[Negative Question.]

The Diminutive Form *kimsecik, kimsecikler*

*The diminutive form **kimsecik, kimsecikler** is only used with the negative:
kimsecik yok the meaning becomes *nobody/anybody at all*.*

The words and **kimsecik, kimsecikler** are invariable, they cannot take any further suffixes.

Odanın içerisinde (or içinde) kimse var mı?

Is there anybody inside the room?

Odada kimsecik/kimsecikler yok.

There is anybody at all in the room.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 10 : Possessive Adjectives



The Possessive Adjective

Possessive Adjectives *my, your, her, our, their*

The Possessive Adjective my, your, his, her, our, their is a suffix which obeys vowel harmony rules.

It is called a Possessive Adjective because it shows possession and describes a noun.

Which cat? The answer my cat. The word my is a Possessive Adjective describing the noun cat.

In Turkish the suffix **-ım -im -um -üm** added to words ending in a consonant or just **-m** when added to words ending in a vowel means *my*.

The E-Dotted Vowels Singular

el *hand*

elim *my hand*

diş *tooth*

dişim *my tooth*

göz *eye*

gözüm *my eye*

göl *rose*
gölüm *my rose*

The E-Dotted Vowels Plural

eller *hands*
ellerim *my hands*

dişler *teeth*
dişlerim *my teeth*

gözler *eyes*
gözlerim *my eyes*

güller *roses*
güllerim *my roses*

The A-UnDotted Vowels Singular

ay *month, moon*
ayım *my month*

kız *girl, daughter*
kızım *my daughter*

tost *toast*
tostum *my toast*

sabun *soap*
sabunum *my soap*

The A-UnDotted Vowels Plural

aylar *months, moons*

aylarım *my months*

kızlar *girls, daughters*

kızlarım *my daughters*

tostlar *toasts (slices of)*

tostlarım *my toast(s)*

sabunlar *(bars of)soap(s)*

sabunlarım *my soap(s)*

The Plural is always the First Suffix Added.

The Possessive Suffix follows the Plural Suffix.

ellerim [el-ler-im] *my hands*

odalarımız [oda-lar-ımız] *our rooms*

When the word ends in a vowel then the Possessive Suffix drops its own initial vowel.

kedi *cat*

kedim [kedi-m] *my cat*

The Possessive Suffix does not lose a vowel when attached to the plural of a noun as it follows the final consonant of **-ler** **kediler** *cats*

kedilerim [kedi-ler-im] *my cats*

Possessive Adjective Reference Summary

The suffixes obey Vowel Harmony Rules.

Suffixed to Consonants: **-ım** **-im** **-um** **-üm** *my*

Suffixed to Vowels: **-m**

Suffixed to Consonants: **-ın** **-in** **-un** **-ün** *your*

Suffixed to Vowels: **-n**

Suffixed to Consonants: **-ı -i -u -ü** *his, her, its*

Suffixed to Vowels: **-sı -si -su- -sü**

Suffixed to Consonants: **-ımız -imiz -umuz -ümüz** *our*

Suffixed to Vowels: **-mız -miz -muz -müz**

Suffixed to Consonants: **-ınız -iniz -unuz -ünüz** *your*

Suffixed to Vowels: **-nız -niz -nuz -nüz**

Suffixed to Consonants: **-ları -leri** *their*

Suffixed to Vowels: **-ları -leri** (no change)

The single exception *su water*

The word **su** *water* is the single irregular noun in Turkish. It takes a buffer letter **-y-** with all its suffixes which begin with a vowel.

su *water*

suyum *my water*

suyun *your water*

suyu *his water*

suyumuz *our water*

suyunuz *your water*

suları *their water.*

Third Person Singular uses Buffer **-s**

The Third Person Singular Possessive Suffix **-i** becomes **-si** (Buffer Letter **-s-**) when added to a noun ending in a vowel.

oda *room*

odası [oda-s-ı] *his room*

This example shows the addition of the buffer letter **-s-** in order to keep two vowels apart.

palto *overcoat*

paltom *my overcoat*

paltolarım *my overcoats*

sokak *street*

sokağım *my street*

sokaklarım *my streets*

göz *eye*

gözün *your eye*

gözleriniz *your eyes*

armut *pear*

armudu *his pear*

The **armutları** *his pears/their pear(s)* can be construed three ways:

armutlar-ı *his pears*

armut-ları *their pear*

armut-ları *their pears*

"armutları" is wrong, the **-lar** suffix cannot be duplicated.

The context of conversation is usually enough for the correct interpretation to be understood. It seems that "their pears" should be "armutları", but suffixes ending in "**-lar**" are never doubled.

To make clear the singularity or plurality of the noun and to be explicit then the Ownership Condition pronoun **onun** *his* or **onların** *their* can be used accordingly:

onun armudu *his pear*
[he has singular pear]

onun armutları *his pears*
[he has plural pears]

onların armudu *their pear*
[they have a singular pear]

onların armutları *their pears*
[they have plural pears]

Examples showing difference of singular and plural nouns

araba *car*

arabamız *our car*

arabalarımız *our cars*

kapı *door*

kapım *my door*

kapılarım *my doors*

domuz *pig*

domuzu *his pig*

onun domuzları *his pigs*

onların domuzları *their pigs*

oda *room*

odası *his room*

onun odaları *his rooms*

onların odası *their rooms*

kulak *ear*

kulağınız *your ear*

kulaklarınız *your ears*

aile *family*

ailesi *his family*

onların aileleri *their families*

onların ailesi *their family*

şemsiye *umbrella*

şemsiyeniz *your umbrella*

şemsiyeleriniz *your umbrellas*

göz *eye*

onun gözleri *his eyes*

onların gözleri *their eyes*

otobüs *bus*

otobüsümüz *our bus*

otobüslerimiz *our buses*

The addition of further suffixes to the possessed noun:

A noun with the possessive suffix being a noun in its own right can be subject to further suffixes.

kedi *cat* Singular * **kedi** ends in a vowel so only suffix **-m** is added

kedim [kedi-m] *my cat*

kedimden [kedi-m-den] *from my cat*

kedime [kedi-m-e] *to my cat*

kediler *cats* Plural * **kediler** ends in a consonant so suffix **-im** is added

kedilerim [kedi-ler-im] *my cats*

kedilerimden [kedi-ler-im-den] *from my cats*

kedilerime [kedi-ler-im-e] *to my cats*

araba *car* * **araba** ends in a vowel so only suffix **-n** is added

araban [araba-n] *your car*

arabana [araba-n-a] *to your car*

arabanda [araba-n-da] *in your car*

arabalar *cars* * **arabalar** ends in a consonant so total suffix **-ım** is added

arabaların [araba-lar-ın] *your cars*

arabalarına [araba-lar-ın-a] *to your cars*

arabalarında [araba-lar-ın-da] *in your cars*

elma *apple* * **elma** ends in a vowel, so third person suffix using buffer letter **-sı** is added

onun elması [elma-s-ı] *his apple*

onun elmasında [elma-s-ı-n-da] *in his apple*

onun elmasından [elma-s-ı-n-dan] *from his apple*

A noun with the possessive suffix can be subject to further suffixes. Buffer letter **-n-** is used when:

(1) Adding second suffixes third person singular **arabasına** [araba-sı-n-a] *to his/her car*

(2) Adding third person plural **onların elmalarından** [elma-ları-n-dan] *from their apples*

elmalar *apples*

onun elmaları [elma-lar-ı] *his apples*

onun elmalarında [elma-lar-ı-n-da] *in his apples*

onların elmasında [elma-s-ı-n-da] *in their apple*

onların elmasından [elma-s-ı-n-da] *from their apple*

onların elmaları [elma-ları] *their apples*

onların elmalarında [elma-ları-n-da] *in their apples*

onların elmalarından [elma-ları-n-dan] *from their apples*

onların *their* is used to show that this/these apple(s) belongs to more than one person

köy *village*

köyümüz [köy-ümüz] *our village*

köyümüzde [köy-ümüz-de] *in our village*

köyümüzden [köy-ümüz-den] *from our village*

köyler *villages*

köylerimiz [köy-ler-imiz] *our villages*

köylerimizde [köy-ler-imiz-de] *in our villages*

köylerimizden [köy-ler-imiz-den] *from our villages*

köpek *dog*

köpeğiniz [köpeğ-iniz] *your dog*

köpekleriniz [köpek-ler-iniz] *your dogs*

köpeğinizde [köpeğ-iniz-de] *on your dog*

köpeğinize [köpeğ-iniz-e] *to your dog*

The Rule of Consonant Mutation where **-k** changes to **-ğ** is operating.

köpekler *dogs*

köpekleri [köpek-leri] *his dogs/their dog(s)*

onun köpeklerine [köpek-ler-i-n-e] *to his dogs*

onların köpeklerine [köpek-leri-n-e] *to their dogs*

onların köpeklerinden [köpek-leri-n-den] *from their dogs*

ev *house*

onların evi [ev-i]- *their house*

onların evine [ev-i-n-e] *to their house*

onların evinde [ev-i-n-de] *in their house*

onların evinden [ev-i-n-den] *from their house*

evler *houses*

onun evleri [ev-ler-i] *his houses*

onların evleri [ev-leri] *their houses*

onun evlerinde [ev-ler-i-n-de] *in his houses*

onların evlerinde [ev-leri-n-de] *in their houses*

onun evlerinden [ev-ler-i-n-den] *from his houses*

onların evlerinden [ev-leri-n-den] *from their houses*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 11 : The Possessive Relationship



The Possessive Relationship

All about Possession

There is a special construction in Turkish which means "*belonging to*".

In English generally only the Possessor is marked as in *Janet's house* where the 's tells us that the house belongs to Janet.

Possession can also be marked by both the Possessor and the Possessed in English as in "*The hair of the dog.*"

Both words "*hair*" and "*dog*" are marked :
"**THE hair** and **OF THE dog.**"

This then is the way that Turkish uses, both the Possessor and the Possessed are always marked: **Köpeğin tüyü**

[Köpeğ-in tüy-ü]

The hair of the dog.

[Lit: of-the-dog the-hair]

The Possessor

In Turkish the Possessor is suffixed with the Ownership Condition:

-(n)**in** -(n)**ın** -(n)**un** -(n)**ün** The **-in** Ownership [genitive] suffix means *of, belonging to*. It is subject to vowel harmony.

Formation of the "Possessor"

The Possessor takes the ownership suffix **-in -ın -un -ün**

adam

man

adamin [adam-ın]

of the man, the man's

göz

eye

gözün [göz-ün]

of the eye, the eye's

All plural forms end in a consonant **-ler/-lar**.

adamlar

the men

adamların [adam-lar-ın]

of the men, the men's

fareler

the mice

farelerin [fare-ler-in]

of the mice, the mice's

lastikler

the tyres

lastiklerin [lastik-ler-in]

of the tyres, the tyres'

Possessors ending in vowels use buffer letter -n-

banyo

bath

banyonun [banyo-n-un]

of the bath, the bath's

köprü

bridge

köprünün [köprü-n-ün]

of the bridge, the bridge's

Formation of "the Possessed"

The Possessed Item in Turkish is suffixed with the 3rd person Suffix to show it as a substantive item owned by its Possessor.

The Possessed item in Turkish is suffixed with **-i -ı -u -ü** *his, hers, its*.

If the word being suffixed already ends in a vowel then the buffer letter **-s-** is used after this final vowel, thus the forms **-s-i -s-ı -s-u -s-ü** are used.

The only exception is **su** *water* which uses the buffer letter **-y-** producing **suyu** ["susu" is wrong]

Formation of the Possessive Relationship

The Possessor is marked with the Ownership Suffix and the Possessed is marked with 3rd person suffix to make it substantive.

Both the Possessor and Possessed are suffixed in Turkish as follows:

The Possessor **adam** *man* with the Possessed **el** *hand* becomes **adamin eli** [adam-ın el-i] *the man's hand, the hand of the man*
[Lit: of-the-man the-hand.]

The Possessor **Mehmet** with the Possessed **palto** *overcoat* becomes **Mehmet 'in paltosu**. [Mehmet-'in palto-su] *Mehmet's overcoat*.
[Lit: of-Mehmet the-overcoat.]

The irregular noun **su** *water* becomes **adamin suyu** [adam-ın su-y-u] *the man's water*.
[Lit: of-the-man the-water].

Proper Names beginning with a capital letter are separated the suffix by apostrophe:

Londra'nın

London's, of London.

Ali'nin kalemi
Ali's pencil

Plural Possessive Relationships

*The plurals are formed by the addition of **-ler** or **-lar** to either the possessor or the possessed or to both according to context.*

Both Possessor and Possessed Singular

adamın arabası
[adam-ın araba-sı]
the man's car

evin damı
[ev-in dam-ı]
the roof of the house

The Possessor Plural and Possessed Singular

yıldızların ışığı
[yıldız-lar-ın ışığ-ı]
the light of the stars

adamların arabası
[adam-lar-ın araba-sı]
the men's car

The Possessor Singular and Possessed Plural

adamın arabaları
[adam-ın araba-lar-ı]
the man's cars

odanın duvarları
[oda-nı duvar-lar-ı]
the walls of the room

Both Possessor Plural and Possessed Plural

adamların arabaları

[adam-lar-ın araba-lar-ı]

the men's cars

çocukların oyunları

[çocuk-lar-ın oyun-lar-ı]

the children's games

The Possessive Relationship in Use

The Possessive Relationship is Compound Noun in its own right.

Further suffixes added to the Possessed item(s) modify the meaning according to context.

-(n)dan -(n)den *from*

-(n)da -(n)de *in, on, at*

-(n)a -(n)e *to, towards*

Buffer Letter **-n-** is used where necessary to keep suffixed vowels apart.

Adamın arkadaşına kitabı verdim.

[Adam-ın arkadaş-ı-na kitab-ı verdim]

I gave the book to the man's friend.

[Lit: "Man-of friend-his-to book-the gave-I"]

Adamın arkadaşından kitabı aldım.

[Adam-ın arkadaş-ı-ndan kitab-ı aldım]

I took the book from the man's friend.

[Lit: "Man-of friend-his-from book-the took-I"]

Possessive Relationship Models

Both the Possessor and the Possessed Singular

adamin arabasi

the man's car

adamin arabasinin

of the man's car, the man's car's

adamin arabasına

to the man's car

adamin arabasını

the man's car (object)

adamin arabasında

in the man's car

adamin arabasından

from the man's car

adamin arabasıyla

with the man's car

The Possessor Singular and the Possessed Plural

adamin arabaları

the man's cars

adamin arabalarının

of the man's cars, the man's car's

adamin arabalarına

to the man's cars

adamin arabalarını

the man's cars (object)

adamin arabalarında

in the man's cars

adamin arabalarından

from the man's cars

adamin arabalarıyla

with the man's cars

The Possessor Plural and the Possessed Singular

adamların arabası

the men's car

adamların arabasının

of the men's car, the men's car's

adamların arabasına

to the men's car

adamların arabasını

the men's car (object)

adamların arabasında

in the men's car

adamların arabasından

from the men's car

adamların arabasıyla

with the men's car

Both Possessor and Possessed Plural

adamların arabaları

the men's cars

adamların arabalarının

of the men's cars, the men's cars'

adamların arabalarına

to the men's cars

adamların arabalarını

the men's cars (object)

adamların arabalarında

in the men's cars

adamların arabalarından

from the men's cars

adamların arabalarıyla

with the men's cars

The Separation of Possessor and Possessed

The Possessive Relationship may be separated by other words such as an adjective or an adjectival phrase: **Adamın eski arkadaşından.**

From the man's old friend.

Adamın büyük ve pahalı arabasında.

In the man's large and expensive car.

Chaining Possessors

The chaining of Possessors is quite easy in Turkish:

evin kapısının penceresi.

the house's door's window.

With various plural forms:

evin kapısının pencereleri.

the house's door's windows.

evlerin kapısının penceresi.

the houses' door's window.

[Lit: the window of the door of the houses.]

Each "chained" Possessor takes the Possessor Suffix in **-in** AND the Possessed Suffix in **-i** hence:

ev-ler-in *of the houses*

[root possessor]

kapı-sı-nın *of the door*

[chained possessor]

The final Possessed item **pencere-si** *the window* takes the Possessed Suffix **-si**.

Ali'nin defterinin sayfaları yırtılmıştır.

Ali's notebook's pages have been torn.

Bahçenin duvarlarının tuğlaları kırılmıştır.

The garden's walls' bricks have been broken.

Mehmet'in bisikletinin lastikleri aşınmıştır.

Mehmet's bicycle's tyres have been worn down.

Arabamızın motorunun benzin deposunun doldurma kapağı eksiktir.

-tir makes this a defining statement.)

Our car's engine's petrol tank's filler cap is missing. [Lit: "is absent"]

English says something like:

Ali's notebook pages are torn.

The garden walls' bricks are broken.

Mehmet's bicycle tyres are worn down.

Our car engine petrol tank's filler cap is missing.

Summary of Turkish Possessive Relationship.

1. Turkish "Possessor" is suffixed with the Ownership **-(n)in** state.
2. Turkish "Possessed" nouns have to be made definite by the **-(s)i** suffix.
3. All these suffixes follow Vowel Harmony Rules.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 12 : Possessive Constructions



Possessive Constructions

Formation of Possessive Constructions

A simple basic Possessive Construction is two nouns where the first noun "owns" the second noun.

Ev house and **duvar** wall produces a Possessive Construction:

evin duvarı [ev-in duvar-ı]

the wall of the house

[literally in Turkish "the house-of wall-its".]

The Possessor "house" has the Suffix of Ownership (Genitive Suffix):

ev-in *of the house, the house's.*

The Possessed Object "wall" is made specific by adding the 3rd Person Suffix:

duvar-ı *its (the) wall.*

Extended Forms of Possessive Constructions

Buffer Letter -n- is used to keep additional suffixes apart.

Addition of the Motion Toward, Static or Motion Away produces:

evin duvarına [ev-in duvar-ı-n-a]

to the wall of the house

[to the house's wall]

evin duvarında [ev-in duvar-ı-n-da]

at/on/in the wall of the house

[in/on/at the house's wall]

evin duvarından [evin duvar-ı-n-dan]

from the wall of the house

[from the house's wall]

Odanın içinde yer bulup oturdu.

He found a place in the room and sat down.

["In the inside of the room."]

Mehmet'in kutuda ne var?

What is in Mehmet's box?

Bilmem, onun içine bakmadım.

I don't know, I have not looked (to the) inside (of) it.

Bankanın içinden bir ses geliyordu.

A sound was coming from (the) inside (of) the bank.

Bu odanın içindekiler birbiriyle sohbet ediyor.

The people in this room are chatting to each other.

[Lit: "The people that are in the inside of the room are chatting to each other."]

Definite Possession

Frequently the distinction is one of definiteness (or specificity).

If the first noun carries the Possessive Suffix, it is definite (specific) and refers to a particular specific object known to the speaker.

Bu hayvanlar mağaranın içinde yaşar.

These animals live in the cave.

[a definite cave "magara-**nın** iç-i-nde]

Eşyalarımı kutunun içine koydum.

I put my things into the box.

[a definite box "kutu-**nun** iç-i-ne"]

Indefinite Possession

Omission of the Possessive Suffix

In some cases the suffix of Possession may be omitted from the first noun with very little difference in meaning: **Fabrikanın içinde çok insan çalışıyor.**

Fabrika içinde çok insan çalışıyor.

Both the above mean *Many people are working in the factory.*

There is a distinction in definiteness and specific meaning when the Possession Suffix is omitted from the first noun.

If the Possessive Suffix is absent then the noun becomes indefinite and is often used in a general sense:

Bu hayvanlar mağara içinde yaşar.

These animals live in caves.

[caves generally "mağara iç-i-nde"]

Eşyalarımı kutu içine koydum.

I put my things into a box/boxes.

[indefinite box/boxes "kutu i-çi-ne"]

Idiomatic Forms of Possession

Sometimes the Possessive Compound corresponds to an idiomatic expression:

Ali'nin dairesi, şehrin içinde.

Ali's office is (right) in the town.

Ali'nin dairesi, şehir içinde.

Ali's office is in town. ("downtown" USA usage)

Metaphorical Sense

Also the Possessive (genitive) is normally omitted when it is used in a metaphorical instead of actual physical sense: **Bir hafta içinde kitabımı bitirecek.**

He will finish his book within a week.

İki gün içinde geri döneceğim.

I'll return in(side) two days.

Demonstratives are Definite

However, when the first noun is already definite as in the case of the Demonstrative Pronouns *this* and *that*, then it **MUST** have a Possessor Suffix:

Bu şehrin içinde çok insan var.

There are many people (living) in this (particular) city.

Bu bahçenin içinde çok çeşit çiçek bulunur.

Many type of flowers are to be found in this (particular) garden.

Yangın, o adamın ofisinin içinde başlamış.

Apparently the fire started in that (particular) man's office.

(chained possession "in the wall of the office of the man")

O hayvanlar şu mağaranın içinde yaşar.

Those animals live in that (particular) cave.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 13 : Possession Var and Yok



Possession "There is, There isn't"

Is there a room available, we wonder!



Both **var** and **yok** are used for either the Singular *there is, there isn't* or the Plural *there are, there aren't*

Present Tense Form

Basically **var** means *Is existent, It exists, There is, There are.*

Tepede bir lokanta var.

There is a cafe on the hill.

Bu ağaçta çok meyve var.

There is a lot of fruit on this tree.

yok means *Is non existent, It does not exist, There isn't, There aren't*

Bahçede kızlar yok.

There are no girls in the garden.

Garajda hiç araba yok.

There is/are not any car(s) in the garage at all.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yok.

There is/are no match(es) in the green box.

"People are" and "Things is" in Turkish. This is why the last two examples can be singular or plural in meaning.

Present Question Form

The Question Particle **Var mı?** *Is there?* **Yok mü?** *isn't there?* is written separately.

var mı?

Does it exist? Is there? Are there?

Tepede bir lokanta var mı?

Is there a cafe on the hill?

Ağaçta meyve var mı?

Is there any fruit on the tree?

yok mu?

Doesn't it exist?, Isn't there?, Aren't there?

Garajda hiç araba yok mu?

Isn't there a/any car(s) in the garage?

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yok mu?

Are there not any matches in the green box?

Definite Past Form

The Past of **var** adds the past tense suffix **-dı**

var *There is, There are becomes* **vardı** *There was, There were*

Tepede bir lokanta vardı.

There was a cafe on the hill.

Bu ağaçta çok meyve vardı.

There was a lot of fruit on this tree.

yok *There is not, There are not becomes* **yoktu** *There was not, There were not*

Garajda hiç araba yoktu.

There wasn't a (single) car in the garage.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yoktu.

There were no matches in the green box.

Past Tense Question

*This is formed by adding the Past Tense Question Particle **miydi?** according to Vowel Harmony Rules*

The Past Tense Question Particle is written separately:

var mıydı?

Did it exist? Was there? Were there?

Tepede bir lokanta var mıydı?

Was there is a cafe on the hill?

Ağaçta meyve var mıydı?

Was there is any fruit on the tree?

yok muydu?

Didn't it exist? Wasn't there? Weren't there?

Garajda hiç araba yok muydu?.

Wasn't there a car(s) in the garage?

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yok muydu?

Weren't there (any) matches in the green box?

A Farm-yard sign



This sign clearly shows that **Var** (and **Yok**) always come at the end of the sentence in Turkish.

You can see that the writer of the sign has literally translated into English *Care! Dog there is!* thus conserving the natural Turkish word order.

Extended Forms of "Var" and "Yok"

Besides the basic forms of *there is*, *there are* many other extended forms are in constant use in daily Turkish conversation.

"Var" and "Yok" The Formal Form

vardır *definitely, surely*

The formal form acts a "Statement of Fact" and is suffixed with the verb *to be*

-dir

Vardır means *Is (definitely) existent, It (definitely) exists, There (definitely) is, There (definitely) are.*

Here is an actual example from a Traffic Propaganda Advertisement :



Unutma! Her trafik kuralının bir nedeni vardır.

Don't forget, every traffic law has a reason!

Thus showing **vardır** as *definitely, surely.*

Tepede bir lokanta vardır. ["-dir" definitely]

There must be a cafe on the hill

Bir kiloda bin gram vardır. ["-dir" Statement of Fact]

There are 1000 grams in a Kilogram.

yoktur *definitely not, surely not.*

yoktur means *Is (definitely) non existent, It (definitely) does not exist, There (definitely) isn't, There (definitely) aren't.*

Garajda hiç araba yoktur. ["-tur" Statement of Fact]

There is (surely) not a (single) car in the garage.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yoktur. ["-tur" Definite Statement]

There is not a (single) match in the green box.

The Conditional Form

Present Tense Conditional

The Present Conditional *If there is, If there are* is formed by adding the Conditional Suffix **-sa/-se** if as the following examples show:

varsa *If there is, If there are.*

Tepede bir lokanta varsa, orada yiyelim.

If there is a cafe on the hill, let us eat there

.Ağaçta meyve varsa, onu koparırım.

If there is any fruit on the tree, I will pick it.

yoksa *If there is not, If there are not.*

Garajda hiç araba yoksa, o zaman bir taksi tutun.

["taxi tutmak" to take/catch a taxi]

If there isn't a car in the garage, then catch/take a taxi.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yoksa, çakmağını kullan.

[familiar imperative]

If there are no matches in the green box, use your lighter.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yoksa, çakmağınızı kullanın.

[polite imperative]

If there are no matches in the green box, use your lighter.

Past Conditional

The Conditional Past *If there was, If there were* the forms with **var** becoming **varsaydı** and **yok** becoming **yoksaydı** are not widely used.

The forms with the verb **olmak** *to be/to become* and **olmamak** *not to be/not to become* may be used instead.

olsaydı *If there was, If there were.*

Tepede bir lokanta olsaydı, orada yerdik.

If there had been a cafe on the hill, we would have eaten there.

Tepede bir lokanta olmuş olsaydı, orada yerdik.

If there had been a cafe on the hill, we would have eaten there.

Ağaçta meyve olsaydı, onu koparırdım.

If there had been any fruit on the tree, I would have picked it.

"olmasaydı" If there was not, If there were not.

Garajda hiç araba olmasaydı, taksi tutacaktım.

If there had not been a car in the garage, I would have taken a taxi.

Garajda hiç araba olmamış olsaydı, taksi tutacaktım.

If there had not been a car in the garage, I would have taken a taxi.

Yeşil kutuda hiç kibrit olmasaydı, çakmağımı kullanırdım.

If there weren't any matches in the green box, I would have used my lighter.

Yeşil kutuda hiç kibrit olmamış olsaydı, çakmağımı kullanırdım.

If there hadn't been any matches in the green box, I would have used my lighter

Kırmızıda geçmemiş olsaydım, kadın yaşayacaktı.

Kırmızıda geçmiş olmasaydım, kadın yaşayacaktı.

Kırmızıda geçmeseydim, kadın yaşayacaktı. are all different ways of saying

If I hadn't passed on the red light, the lady would have still lived.

The Inferential Form

The Inferential *It seems that there is/was* is used when the subject has no eyewitness knowledge.

It is used for reporting and inference.

The Inferential is formed by adding the suffix **-miş** as the following examples show.

The Inferential Suffix **-miş** is used for both the Present Tense and the Past tense:

"varmış" It seems there is "

Deniyor ki tepede bir lokanta varmış, [eğer] öyleyse orada yiyelim.

It is said there is a cafe on the hill, if so let us eat there.

Ağaçta çok meyve varmış.

It seems there is a lot fruit on the tree.

"yokmuş" It seems there is not"

Garajda araba yokmuş.

(I think that) there is not a car in the garage.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yokmuş, mavi olanına [olan-ı-n-a] bakın.

(I think that) there are no matches in the green box. have a look in the blue one.

At the beginning of fairy tales Turkish usually says **Bir varmış, bir yokmuş** where English says *Once upon a time.*

An explanation of olan the which one

olanı

One [the one that]

[Lit: that which is] as an item

olanları

Ones [the ones that]

[Lit: those which are] as items

Hangi tişörtü istiyorsunuz?

Which tee-shirt do you want?

Mavi olanı(nı) lütfen.

The blue one, please.

Hangi ayakkabıları istiyorsunuz?

Which shoes do you want?

Siyah olanları(nı) lütfen.

The black ones, please.

The verb **istemek** *to want* does not take an Object Condition in questions but in answers the direct object ending is grammatically correct and the verb **istemek** *to want* is understood.

As with all languages sometimes the easy way is used and the direct object suffix is discarded though constant daily conversational usage.

Forms with "iken" "while"

"varken" *While there is*

This formation is **var** + **iken** producing **varken** *while there is*

varken

While there is, As there is

Tepede bir lokanta varken, başkasını açmıyorlar.

While there is a cafe on the hill, they will not open another one.

Ağaçta çok meyve varken, onu koparalım.

While there is a lot fruit on the tree, let us pick it.

"yokken" *While there is not.*

Similarly **yok** + **iken** produces **yokken** *while there is not*

yokken

While there isn't, As there isn't

Siz evde yokken çiçeğiniz susuz kalmasın.

[Lit: While you are not at home do not let your flowers remain water-less.]

Hazır garajda araba yokken, oraya bisikletimizi bırakalım.

As there is not a car in the garage, let us put our bicycles in it.

Yeşil kutuda kibrit yokken, ateşi yakamam.

While there are no matches in the green box. I cannot light the fire.

Enumeration using Var and Yok

When enumerating lists of things **var** or **yok** are placed after each item.

In English the greengrocer may tell us that he has *apples, tomatoes, onions, cherries, etc.*

In Turkish he will say **elma var, domates var, soğan var, kiraz var, vs.**

If a question is asked that contains a **var mı?** or a **yok mu?** the the answer must always be **var** or **yok**, whereas in English we tend to use *Yes* or *No* as an answer.

Turkish does not use the words **hayır** or **evet** in answer to a question that contains a **var** or a **yok**.

Dolapta bir bardak yok mu?

Isn't there a tumbler in the cupboard?

Answer: **var**, **/evet var** or **yok, hayır yok** accordingly.

Kilitte anahtar var mı?

Is the key in the lock?.

Answer: **var** or **yok** accordingly.

The English answers can be *Yes [it is]* or *No [it isn't]*.

However the Turkish answers must simply be **Var there is** or **Yok there isn't**

Ownership "I have/haven't got"

There is no verb *to have* or *to have got* in Turkish for "to have something" as in *I have a new car.* or *Have you got a new car?* or *Do you have any anything cheaper?*

All these kinds of sentences use **var** or **vardır** for *to have (got)* and in the negative sense **yok** or **yoktur** for *not to have (got)*.

The addition of **-dır** or its vowel harmonic equivalents does not alter the meaning, its use is optional, but it does show that the Statement is a Fact.

It is seen as **vardır there (definitely) is** or **yoktur there (definitely) is not** in

Public Notices and Advice.

In general conversation the simple form is the commonly used.

To say *I have a cat* or *I have got a cat* the possessive adjective Suffix *my, your, his, our* is attached to the item which is possessed with **var** *to have* or **yok** *not to have*.

Positive Examples var have got

Kedim var. [kedi-m var]

I have a cat, I have got a cat.

Köpeğin var. [köpeğ-in var]

ou have a dog, You've got a dog.

Arabası var. [araba-s-ı var]

He/she has a car, He's got a cat.

Evimiz var. [ev-imiz var]

We have a house, We have got a house.

Bahçeniz var. [bahçe-niz var]

You have a garden, You have got a garden.

Şişeleri var. [şişe-leri var]

They have a bottle, They have got a bottle.

Negative Examples yok have not got

Kedim yok. [kedi-m yok]

I do not have a cat, I have not got a cat.

Köpeğin yok. [köpeğ-in yok]

You do not have a dog, You have not got a dog.

Arabası yok. [araba-s-ı yok]

He/she doesn't have a car, He has not got a cat.

Evimiz yok. [ev-imiz yok]

We do not have a house, We have not got a house.

Bahçeniz yok. [bahçe-niz yok]

You do not have a garden, You have not got a garden.

Şişeleri yok. [şişe-leri var]

They do not have a bottle, They have not got a bottle.

Explanation of Difference in Turkish English for *to have, to have got.*

Kedim var.

I have a cat, I have got a cat.

[Lit: There is a my cat.]

In the sentence above the first person singular Possessive Adjective suffix **-im** states "whose cat it is", and in this case it tells us that *I have a cat* by using **var**

Kedin(iz) yok.

You haven't got a cat.

[Lit: There isn't a your cat.]

The Second Person Possessive Adjective suffix **-in(iz)** states that *You haven't got a cat* by using **yok**.

It is the Possessive Suffix which tells us WHO OWNS the object.

Positive Questions

Using the Positive Question **var mı?** *Is there? Are there?*

Evin var mı?

Have you got a house?

[Lit: Is there a your house?]

The literal translation is *Is there a your house?*

English says "*Have you got a house?*".

Kedisi var mı?

Has he/she got a cat? [Lit: Is there a his/her cat?]

The Third Person Singular Possessive Adjective Suffix **-(s)i** tells us whose cat it is.

In this case it asks us if *Has he/she got a cat?*

Evleri var mı? [Ev-leri their house]

Have they got a house? [

Lit: Is there a their house?]

Negative Questions

Using the Negative Question **yok mu?** *Isn't there?, Aren't there?*

Evimiz yok mu?

Haven't we got a house?

[Lit: Isn't there an our house?]

The First Person Plural Possessive Adjective suffix **-imiz** asks us whose house it is, and in English it asks "*Haven't we got a house?*"

Eviniz yok mu?

Haven't you got a house?

[Lit: Isn't there a your house?]

The Second Person Possessive Adjective suffix **-iniz** asks us "*Haven't you got a house?*"

Evleri yok mu? [Ev-leri their house]

Haven't they got a house?

[Lit: Isn't there a their house?].

All the above sentences have been turned into question form by adding the question tag **-mi?** according to Vowel Harmony Rules.

Positive Examples var mı? is there?, are there?

Kedim var mı? [kedi-m var mı?]

Do I have a cat?, Have I got a cat?

Köpeğin var mı? [köpeğ-in var mı?]

Have you a dog?, Have you got a dog?, Do you have a dog?

Arabası var mı? [araba-s-ı var mı?]

Has he/she a car? Has he/she got a car?

Evimiz var mı? [ev-imiz var mı?]

Have we a house? Have we got a house?

Bahçeniz var mı? [bahçe-niz var mı?]

Have you a garden? Have you got a garden?

Şişeleri var mı? [şişe-leri var mı?]

Have they a bottle? Have they got a bottle?

Negative Examples yok mu? isn't there?

Kedim yok mu? [kedi-m yok mu?]

Have I not got a cat? Do I not have a cat?

Köpeğin yok mu? [köpeğ-in yok mu?]

Do you not have a dog? Have you not got a dog?

Arabası yok mu? [araba-s-ı yok mu?]

Doesn't he/she have a car? Has he/she not got a car?

Evimiz yok mu? [ev-imiz yok mu?]

Have we not a house? Have we not got a house?

Bahçeniz yok mu? [bahçe-niz yok mu?]

Do you not have a garden? Have you not got a garden?

Şişeleri yok mu? [şişe-leri yok mu?]

Do they not have a bottle? Have they not got a bottle?

Some Examples of Possession

The Conditional or Inferential of **var: varsa, varmış etc.** and of **yok: yoksa, yokmuş, etc.** can be used with the Possessive Forms.

Yeni bir arabanız var mı?

Have you got a new car?

Yeni bir arabamız olsaydı, beraber/birlikte kasabaya gidebilecektik?

If we had a new car, we could have gone to town together?

Orhan'ın yeni arabası varmış.

(It seems that) Orhan has/had a new car.

Şekeriniz var mı, lütfen?

Do you have any sugar, please?

Şekeriniz yoksa, sade içeyim.

If you do not have sugar, I'll drink it without.

Boş vaktimiz var mı?

Have we got time to spare?

Boş vakitleri/zamanları olsaydı, bize gelirdiler/gelirlerdi.

If they had had time, they would have come to us.

vakit "a point in time" is one of the nouns which loses final vowel when suffixed with another vowel. See Ch. 7 (apocopation)

Cevabı yok.

He/she hasn't got the answer.

Cevabı yoksa.

If he/she hasn't got the answer.

Elmaları yok.

They haven't got any apples.

Elmaları yokmuş.

(It seems that) they haven't got any apples.

Elmaları yok mu?

Haven't they got any apples?

Mehmet'in kedisi var.

Mehmet has got a cat.

Mehmet'in kedisi varken, köpeğimi onunla bırakamam.
While Mehmet has got a cat, I cannot leave my dog with him.

Sadece az param var.
I've only a little money.

Ali 'nin parası var mı?
Has Ali got any money?

Yeterli param varsa, yeni araba alırım.
If I have enough money, I'll buy a new car.

Ama o kadar yokmuş gibi geliyor.
But it seems that (like) I have not got that much (money)

"Var and Yok" Personalised

Var and **yok** can also take the personal endings of the verb **to be** "*I am, you are, etc*"

varım *I am there/I'll be there*
yokum *I am not there/I'll not be there*

varsın *You are there/You will be there*
yoksun *You are not there/You will not be there*

var *He/She/It is there He/She/It will be there*
yok *He/She/It is not there He/She/It will not be there*

varız *We are there/We will be there*
yokuz *We are not there/We will not be there*

varsınız *You are there/You will be there*
yoksunuz *You are not there/You will not be there*

varlar *They are there/They will not be there*
yoklar *They are not there/They will not be there*

When stating the future **olmak** to *become* can also be used **var olacağım** *I will be there.*

In practice the shorter way as in the table above is used in conversation.

The words here used like **varım, varsın, var, varız** can also have the meaning *I am in!*, when talking about interference into an issue.

Bugün "futbol oynama" var mısın?

Are you in for "playing football" today?

Can be answered *Evet, varım.* or *Hayır, ben yokum.*

"Open the Box!" TV Show

This was a TV show in Turkey. The contestant has a closed box. There are also 20 other closed boxes. Every box contains an amount of money. The boxes contain 1 million TL, 250.000, 100.000, 1.000, and the rest contain 1 TL.

The contestant does not know which boxes, including his own, contain which amount. In first round, 6 boxes are opened, next round 5, then 4, and then 3 and then 2. At the end of each round a proposal of money is made. The contestant can choose to go on for his own box, or accept these proposals.

*The moderator asked the contestant at the end of each round, "**Bu para için var mısın, yok musun?**". "Are you in or out for this money?" The answer*

*"**Yokum!**" "I'm out!", "**Varım!**" "I'm in!"*

*The TV show was called "**Var mısın?, yok musun?**".*

"Varsa" and "Yoksa" Present Conditional Personalised

Varsa and Yoksa "If I'm there/If I'm not there"

varsam *If I am there/I'll be there*

yoksam *I am not there/If I'll not be there*

varsan *If you are there/If you'll be there*

yoksan *If you are not there/If you will not be there*

varsa *If he is there am there/If he'll be be there*

yoksa *If he is not there/If he will not be there*

varsak *If we are there/If we'll be there*
yoksak *If we are not there/If we will not be there*

varsanız *If you are there/If you'll be there*
yoksanız *If you are not there/If you will not be there*

varsalar *If they are there/If they will be there*
yoksalar *If they are not there/If they will not be there*

Olsaydı and Olmasaydı Past Conditions Personalised

*In Past Conditions **var** and **yok** are replaced by the verb **olmak** to be/become*

olsaydım *If I'd been there*
olmasaydım *If I'd not been there*

olsaydın *If you had been there*
olmasaydın *If you not been there*

olsaydı *If he had been there*
olmasaydı *If he had not been there*

olsaydık *If we had been there*
olmasaydık *If we had not been there*

olsaydınız *If you had been there*
olmasaydınız *If you had not been there*

olsaydılar *If they had been there*
olmasaydılar *If they had not been there*

"Varmış" and "Yokmuş" the Indefinite "-miş" form Personalised.

Varmış and Yokmuş the Indefinite -miş form.

varmışım *possibly I am/was there/I'll be there*
yokmuşum *possibly I am/was not there/I'll not be there*

varmışsın possibly you are/were there/you'll be there
yokmuşsun possibly you are/were not there/you'll not be there

varmış possibly he is/was there/he'll be there
yokmuş possibly he is/was not there/he'll not be there

varmışsınız possibly we are/were there/we'll be there
yokmuşsuz possibly we are/were not there/we'll not be there

varmışsınız possibly you are/were not there/you'll not be there
yokmuşsunuz possibly you are/were not there/you'll not be there

varmışlar possibly they are/were there/they'll be there
yokmuşlar possibly they are/were not there/they'll not be there

This form, which is in constant use, actually means something like *I am there, I'll be there, I'll not be there..*

Yarın ofiste yokum.
I will not be at the office tomorrow.

Yarın ofiste yokmuşum.
I will probably not be at the office tomorrow.

Evde var mısın?
Are you at home?

Kimse var mı?
Is anybody there?

Kimse(cik) yokmuş.
It seems there is nobody (here).

Kimse(cik) yok.
There is nobody (here).

Yalnız mıyız?
Are we alone?

Hayır. Onlar da var.

No, there's them as well.

Gelecek toplantıda ben de varım.

I'll be at the next meeting as well.

Idiomatic Use

Neyimiz var neyimiz yok depremde kaybettik.

We lost everything what we had/have in the earthquake.

Could also be stated thus:

Varımızı yoğumuzu depremde kaybettik.

We lost everything what we had/have in the earthquake.

Used as a noun **yok** softens its final **-k** to **-ğ** when adding a suffix which begins with a vowel (Ch.3) [yoğ-umuz-u = *our nothings* (obj.)]

Vaktin varsa, sonra görüşelim.

Let us meet later on, if you have time.

Saat onda ofiste yokmuşsun.

It seems you were not at the office at 10 o'clock.

Varsa yoksa

Varsa yoksa annesi. meaning the person is very keen on his mother (a little exaggeration and derision also exists).

Varsa yoksa bilgisayar. is used when talking about someone who spends a lot of time in front of the computer.

Finally, the "Yok Yok" Shop



What's in a name? This shop really does belie its name "*the shop with no stock*", but you would be wrong in that assumption:

The notion "yok" is "yok" means "yok" doesn't exist. Hence, that means, everything exists!

Bugün pazara gittim, pazarda yok yoktu.

This expresses that there were plenty of things available in the bazaar.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 14 : Verbs The Infinitive



The Infinitive A description.

The infinitive is the noun form of a verb that has no inflection to indicate person, number, mood or tense.

The Infinitive can take suffixes and personal pronouns as required.

The Standard Infinitive ending in **-mek** or **-mak** which is often abraded to **-me** or **-ma** by dropping the final **-k**.

Forming the Infinitive of Turkish Verbs

*The Positive Infinitive is formed by adding **-mek** or **-mak** to the verb stem **gelmek** [gel-mek] to come, **almak** [al-mak] to take. The choice of adding **-mek** or **-mak** is bound by the Rules of Vowel Harmony.*

There is a separate Infinitive form for the negative verb

The negative is characterized with the negative particle **-me-** or **-ma** (according to vowel harmony rules) added to the positive verb stem. Thus the negative verb root becomes **gelme-** not come or **alma-** not take.

By adding the infinitive suffix **-mek** or **-mak** we arrive at the negative verbs **gelmemek** [gelme-mek] to not come and **almamak** [alma-mak] to not take.

This method of forming the negative is true for all verbs in Turkish.

Infinitive: E-Dotted Verbs

*For verbs of the E-Dotted Group with **e i ö ü** in verb stem the suffix **-mek***

signifies the positive verb and -memek signifies the negative of the verb.

vermek [ver-mek] *to give*

vermemek [verme-mek] *not to give*

bilmek [bil-mek] *to know*

bilmemek [bilme-mek] *not to know*

görmek [gör-mek] *to see*

görmemek [görme-mek] *not to see*

gülmek [gül-mek] *to laugh*

gülmemek [gülme-mek] *not to laugh*

Indinitive: A-UnDotted Verbs

*For verbs of the A-UnDotted Group with **a i o u** in verb stem the suffix **-mak** signifies the positive verb and **-mamak** signifies the negative of the verb.*

yapmak [yap-mak] *to do, make, perform*

yapmamak [yapma-mak] *not to do*

ağrımak [ağrı-mak] *to ache*

ağrımamak [ağırma-mak] *not to ache*

kopmak [kop-mak] *to snap*

kopmamak [kopma-mak] *not to snap*

kurumak [kuru-mak] *to dry*

kurumamak [kuruma-mak] *not to dry*

The Infinitive as an Object of a Verb

The Infinitive being a noun can take all the suffixes that any other noun takes.

The Object case (suffix **-(y)ı** **-(y)i** **-(y)u** **-(y)ü** as an object of the main verb **unutmak** *to forget*.

Often the main verb has two objects with the **-i** suffix.

The last example below "The window" together with "its opening" are both in the Objective case of being "forgotten" as the main verb.

Geçen hafta ödevimi yapmayı unuttum.

I forgot to do my homework last week.

Garajdan arabamı almayı unuttum.

I forgot to pick up (take) my car from the garage

Ali, sana söylemeyi unuttu.

Ali forgot to tell you.

Affedersin, seni aramayı unuttuk.

We're sorry, we forgot to call you.

[a secondary meaning of **aramak** is *to call on the telephone.*]

Filmi izlemeyi unuttum.

I forgot to watch the film.

Kediyi beslemeyi unuttum.

I forgot to feed the cat.

Mehmet'i sormayı unuttunuz

You forgot to ask Mehmet.

Kapıyı kapamayı unuttum.

I forgot to close the door.

Pencereyi açmayı unuttular.

They forgot to open the window.

About Verbal Objects

*Some main verbs take Movement Towards suffix **-(y)e/-(y)a** as their objects when the verb itself signifies movement towards.*

In English saying *she is starting to write* then the infinitive **yazmak** *to write* is the object of the verb *she is starting*, and consequently must be suffixed to show its relationship to the verb.

As the verb **başlamak** *to start, begin* signifies movement of some sort it governs the Movement Towards Condition in Turkish **-a** or **-e**.

To effect the addition of the Movement Towards suffix to **yazmak** the final **-k** of **-mek** or **-mak** is dropped and the resulting verbal noun **yazma** is treated as a normal object by the addition of the Movement Towards Condition suffix **-(y)a** so **yazmak** *to write* becomes **yazmaya başladı** *she started to (to) write/she started writing*.

While translating in English we use The Present Continuous Participle in **-ing** [a verbal noun] so the above is often rendered in the following manner:

yazmak *to write* becomes
Bir mektup yazmaya başladı.
She started writing a letter.
She started to write a letter.

Yüzmek *to swim* becomes.
Tam saat sekizde yüzmeye başlayacağız.
We will start to swim right on eight o'clock.

Special Case **istemek** *to want*

*The verb **istemek** to want is a special case as it causes no modification of the verb it governs:*

Yazmak istiyorum
I want to write.

İçmek istiyorlar.
They want to drink.

Kalmak istemedin.
you didn't want to stay.

Çalışmak istemeyecekler.
[iste-me-yecek-ler]
They will not want to work.

This also applies in English, we also cannot say *I want writing* or *they want drinking*.

The object pointer is not required by **istemek** to want as the concept of "wanting." does not affect the verb being governed in any way.

However if **istemek** governs anything other than a verb then the objective case must be used.

In the examples below that **istemek** is not governing the verb **kalmak** directly, but it governs **a person**.

Hence the direct object pointer is required:

Kalmamanızı istiyoruz.

[Kalmama-nız-ı]

We want you not to stay.

Kalmanızı istemiyoruz.

[Kalma-nız-ı]

We do not want you to stay.

Kalmasını istemiyorlar.

[Kalma-sı-n-ı]

They don't want him to stay.

Kalmamalarını istemiyorum.

[Kalmama-ları-n-ı]

I don't want them not to stay.

Formation of the Short Infinitive Verbal Noun

To effect the addition of the suffixes to the infinitive the final -k of -mek or -mak is dropped and the resulting verbal noun then ends in -ma or -me.

The short Infinitive of the verb **içmek** to drink becomes **içme**.

Buffer letter -y- is used to keep suffixes apart.

The Positive Verb **içmek** to drink, to smoke a cigarette drops its final -k and is used to form **içme** drinking, smoking as a noun.

With the addition of the accusative case it becomes **içmeyi** [içme-ye] *the drinking, the smoking* as the object of a verb.

Similarly the Movement Toward Object is becomes **içmeye**. [içme-ye] as the dative object of a verb

The Negative Verb forms its Verbal Noun by dropping its terminal **-k** in a similar fashion **içmemek** *not to drink* forms **içmeme** *not drinking, not smoking* as a noun.

The Negative Accusative then becomes

Direct Object: **içmemeyi** [içme-me-y-i] *the not drinking, the not smoking*

Dative Object: **içmemeye** [içmeme-y-e] *to the not drinking, to the not smoking*.

The infinitive **yazmak** *to write* forms Verbal Noun **yazma** *the writing* thence forms the Movement Toward Condition Object **yazmaya** [yazma-y-a] *to the writing*.

Examples of Verbal Nouns in English

As natural English speakers, do not realize when we are using Verbal Nouns in English.

In order to understand Turkish both written and spoken then we must learn to recognize them.

The writing is on the wall.

The drinking of this water is prohibited.

Smoking is not allowed in the foyer.

Leave your suitcase in the waiting room.

He is working in the drying shed.

About Conversational Stress

The Short Infinitive ending in **-me/-ma** could mistaken for the negation suffix **-me** but the difference is shown by conversational stress.

As a Positive Verbal Noun then the stress is on itself as in **içMEyi**.

When it is a Negative Verbal Noun, then the stress is on the preceding syllable **İÇmemeyi**.

The negative suffix **-me/-ma** itself is never stressed in conversation but always throws the stress on to the previous syllable.

Examples of Suffixed Infinitives

Vowel Harmony and Consonant Mutation rules are followed when adding the standard suffixes, also the buffer letter **-y-** is used to keep vowel suffixes apart.

Gelmeye çalıştı.

He tried [to] to come.

[the verb **çalışmak** takes a Movement Toward Suffix *to try to*]

Yüzmeyi severim.

I like to swim.

[Lit: I like the swimming]

Onu yapmaktayım.

I am just doing it.

[Lit: in/at doing it]

Sigara içmeyi bıraktım.

[Direct Object suffix içme-y-i]

I have given up [the] smoking.

Adding Suffixes to the Standard Infinitive in -mek

The infinitive is a noun and be suffixed with any of the noun condition suffixes.

Positive Infinitive **gelmek** *to come* and the Negative Infinitive **gelmemek** *not to come*.

The Extended Infinitive Forms

Positive Verb

gelmek *to come*

gelmeye *to come* (dative obj.)

gelmeyi *to come* (obj.)

gelmekte *in coming*

gelmekten *from coming*

gelmekle *by/with coming*

Negative Verb

gelmemek *not to come*

gelmemeye *to not to come* (dative obj.)

gelmemeyi *not to come* (obj.)

gelmemekte *in not coming*

gelmemekten *from not coming*

gelmemekle *by/with not coming*

Kesmekten bıraktı.

He stopped [from the] cutting.

Sürmeyi öğreniyorum.

I am learning [the driving] to drive.

Gülmemeye çalışıyorlar.

They are trying not to [to] laugh.

The Personalised Infinitive

When the standard infinitive takes the personal pronoun endings it drops its final **-k** of **-mek** or **-mak** in all persons.

Positive Verb

gitmek *to go*

gitmem *my going*

gitmen *your going*

gitmemiz *our going*

gitmeniz *your going*

gitmeleri *their going*

Negative Verb

gitmemek *not to go*

gitmemem *my not going*

gitmemen *your not going*

gitmememiz *our not going*

gitmemeniz *your not going*

gitmemeleri *their not going*

The Abilitative Infinitive Form "can, can't"

Positive Verb of Ability

gidebilmek *to be able to go*

gidebilmem *my being able to go*

gidebilmen *your being able to go*

gidebilmesi *his being able to go*

gidebilmemiz *our being able to go*

gidebilmeniz *my being able to go*

gidebilmeleri *your being able to go*

Gitmesini bekledim.

[gitme-si-ni Objective Condition]

I expected him to go.

Gidebilmesini bekledim.

[gidebil-me-si-ni Objective Condition]

I expected him to be able to go.

Negative Verb of ability

gidememek *to not be able to go*

gidememem *my not being able to go*

gidememen *your not being able to go*

gidememesi *his not being able to go*

gidemememiz *our not being able to go*

gidememeniz *your not being able to go*

gidememeleri *their not being able to go*

Mehmet'in gelememesini bildim.

[Mehmet'-in gel-e-me-me-si-ni bil-dim.]

I knew that Mehmet could not come.

Onların gelememelerini bilmiyordum.

[Onlar-ın gel-e-me-me-leri-ni bil-m-iyor-dum.]

I did not know that they could not come.

These personal forms can further be extended by the addition of noun condition suffixes:

Kalmanızı istiyorum.

I want you to stay.

Kalabilmenizi istiyorum.

I want you to be able to stay.

Kalmamanızı istiyoruz

We want you not to stay.

Kalmanızı istemiyoruz.

We do not want you to stay.

Kalmamanızı istemiyoruz.

[Kalma-ma-nız-ı iste-mi-yoruz]

We do not want you not to stay.

Kalmasını istemiyorlar.

They don't want him to stay.

Kalmamalarını istemiyorum.

I don't want them not to stay.

The Heavy Infinitive -meklik/maklık :

This is formed by affixing **-lık** or **-lik** to the standard Infinitive for the positive verb.

The final **-k** of **-mek** is often dropped when adding the **-lik** suffix.

The negative is slightly different in that the **-mek** or **-mak** changes to **-mez** or **-maz**.

gelmek becomes **gelmezlik**

bakmamak becomes **bakmazlık**

The meaning of the heavy infinitive is the same as the standard infinitive and is only used when there may be ambiguity in the context.

The heavy infinitive is little used. The heavy infinitive can also have personal pronouns and or case endings added to it.

It does not however drop its final **-k** of **-lik** as does the common infinitive when suffixes are added although this final **-k** will mutate to a final **-ğ** when necessary before an added vowel.

gelme(k)lik *to come*

gelmezlik *not to come*

gelme(k)liğim *my coming*

gelmezliğimiz *our not coming*

gelme(k)liğin *your coming*

gelmezliğiniz *your not coming*

gelme(k)likleri *their coming*

gelmezliği *his not coming*

How to say "To pretend (not) to"

The heavy infinitive is little used except for the following "special case":

The use of the Negative of the Heavy Infinitive in the ablative case followed by the verb **gelmek** means *to pretend not to*.

This "pretend not to" form is a reduplicated negative:

bakmazlık becomes **bakMAmazlık** meaning *to not NOT to see*

It is mentioned here because in this form it is daily use.

Bana görmemezlikten geldi.

He pretended (not) see me.

Onu görmemezlikten geliyorsunuz.

You are pretending (not) to see it.

Ayşe hanımı sevmemezlikten gelir misiniz?

Are you pretending (not) to like Miss Ayşe?

This construction is a special locution and only used with **gelmek** as an auxiliary verb.

It is used widely to mean *"To pretend not to"*

görmemezlikten gelmek

ignore

görmemezlikten gelmek

turn a blind eye

görmemezlikten gelmek

overlook

görmemezlikten gelmek

look through

görmemezlikten gelmek
give someone the go by

görmemezlikten gelmek
close ones eyes to

görmemezlikten gelmek
pretend not to see

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 15 : The Verb "To be"



The Verb "to be" Positive

The verb "to be" is a defective verb "ilmek" whose stem was "i-" which is found in four forms of vowel harmony "i ı u ü". It also mutates to "-y" in the past and other forms when being suffixed to a word.

This is no longer important in learning Turkish, but it does give the reason for many of the suffixes in modern use for the verb "to be".

The verb "to be" is used to describe a State of Being.

The house is blue.

Mehmet was ill.

It will be a quick journey.

If it is a big house.

If it had not been out of sight.

The Verb "to be" takes the form of a suffix in Turkish. It is subject to Vowel Harmony, and Consonant Mutation when added to words ending in a hard consonant.

Present Tense "to be" -dir

The Present Tense verb "to be" takes the form of a suffix as follows:

"to be" Present Singular

-im -ım -üm -um *I am*

-yim -yım -yüm -yum *I am*

[Buffer -y- after vowels]

-sin -sın -sün -sun *you are*

-dir -dır -dür -dur *he/she/it is*

-tir -tır -tür -tur

[After **ç f h k p s ş t**]

"to be" Present Plural

-iz -ız -üz -uz *We are*

-yiz -yız -yüz -yuz *We are*

[Buffer **-y-** after vowels]

-siniz -sınız -sünüz -sunuz *you are*

-dirler -dırlar -dürler -durlar *they are*

-tirler -tırlar -türler -turlar

[After **ç f h k p s ş t**]

The First Persons use Buffer **-Y-** when added to a vowel.

The Third Person **-dir/-dirler** suffixes change to **-tir/-tirler** when added to unvoiced consonants **ç f h k p s ş t** due to Consonant Mutation.

The **-dir** Third Person suffix is often omitted in conversation.

It is only used for emphasis or official advice and public notices.

This omission not does not apply to the past tense **-di** as shown below.

Past Tense "to be" -di

The past tense endings are used in all persons although sometime the **-ler/-lar** of the plural form is omitted in conversation.

As every person suffix in the past tense begins with a **-d** then it follows that every person can be subject to consonant mutation to **-t** when added to a word ending in a hard consonant.

"To be" Definite Past Singular Suffixes -di-

The **-di** Definite Past tense endings are used for Statements of Fact and events witnessed by the speaker: **Mehmet, bahçededı.**

[bahçe-de-dı]

Mehmet was in the garden.

[Meaning: I (actually) saw him in the garden.]

The Buffer Letter **-y-** is used to keep vowels apart by mutating the first vowel of the Past Tense endings **-idim etc.** to **-ydim etc.**

-(y)dim -(y)dım -(y)düm -(y)dum *I was*

-tim -tım -tüm -tum [After (ç f h k p s ş t)]

-(y)din -(y)dın -(y)dün -(y)dun *you were*

-tin -tın -tün -tun

-(y)di -(y)dı -(y)dü -(y)du *he/she/it was*

-ti -tı -tü -tu

-(y)dik -(y)dık -(y)dük -(y)duk *we were*

-tik -tık -tük -tuk

-(y)diniz -(y)dınız -(y)dünüz -(y)dunuz *you were*

-tiniz -tınız -tünüz -tunuz

-(y)diler -(y)dılar -(y)düler -(y)dular *they were*

-tirler -tırlar -türler -turlar

"To be" Indefinite Past Singular Suffixes -imiş-

The Indefinite Past suffixes are used for hearsay, supposition and un-witnessed events:

"Mehmet is/was probably in his garden." supposition is understood "Because he is nearly always there".

-(y)mişim -(y)mışım -(y)müşüm -(y)muşum *(it seems) I was*

-(y)mişsin -(y)mışsın -(y)müşsün -(y)muşsun *you were*

-(y)miş -(y)mış -(y)müş -(y)muş *he/she/it was*

-(y)mişiz -(y)mışınız -(y)müşünüz -(y)muşunuz *we were*

-(y)mişsiniz -(y)mışsınız -(y)müşsünüz -(y)muşsunuz *you were*

-(y)mişler -(y)mışlar -(y)müşler -(y)muşlar *they were*

The **-miş** Indefinite Past tense endings are used for Hearsay and events unwitnessed by the speaker:

Mehmet, bahçedemiş.

[bahçe-de-miş]

Mehmet was in the garden.

[Meaning: I suppose Mehmet is in the garden.]

Past Tense "to be" Stand-alone Form

The Past Tense Positive also has an stand-alone form which is not subject to vowel harmony.

It takes its form from the defunct verb "imek".

It is written separately after the word it affects.

Using this form is a matter personal taste.

it is often found in newspapers and books.

The Present Tense does not have an independent form, it is always as suffix.

"to be" Past Singular Stand alone

Past Definite Stand-alone

idim *I was*

idin *you were*

idi *he/she/it was*

idik *we were*

idiniz *you were*

idiler *they were*

Fenerbahçe, bizim futbol takımımızdan daha kötü idiler.

The Fenerbahçe were worse than our football team.

Past Indefinite Stand-alone

imişım *(it seems) I was*

imişsin *you were*

imiş *he/she/it was*

imişsiz *we were*

imişsiniz *you were*

imişler *they were*

Tembel hiç değil imişsiniz.

It seems that you are not lazy after all.

Vowel Harmony of the Verb "to be"

Both the present and past obey the rules of vowel harmony, which are summed up as follows:

The A-UnDotted Group

Final vowel **-a** or **-ı** is followed by **-ı** in suffix.

yaşlıyız [yaşlı-yız]
we are old.

yaşlıydık [yaşlı-ydık]
we were old.

Independent form **yaşlı idik**

yaşlıymışız [yaşlı-ymışız]
probably we were old.

Independent form **yaşlı imişiz**

hastayım [hasta-yım]
I am ill.

hastaydım [hasta-ydım]
I was ill.

Independent form **hasta idim**

hastaymışım [hasta-ymışım]

probably I was ill.

Independent form **hasta imişim**

Final vowel **-o** or **-u** is followed by **u** in suffix.

bir vazodur [vazo-dur]

it is a vase.

bir vazoydu [vazo-ydu]

probably it was a vase.

Independent form **bir vazo idi**

bir vazoymuş [vazo-ymuş]

it was a vase.

Independent form **bir vazo imiş**

yorgunsun [yorgun-sun]

you are tired.

yorgundun(uz) [yorgun-dun(uz)]

you were tired.

Independent form **yorgun idin(iz)**

yorgunmuşsin(iz) [yorgun-mışsin(iz)]

probably you were tired.

Independent form **yorgun imişsin(iz)**

The E- Dotted Group

Final vowel **-e** or **-i** is followed by **i** in suffix.

bir deredir [dere-dir]

it is a stream.

bir dereydi [dere-ydi]

it was stream.

Independent form **bir dere idi**

bir dereymiş [dere-ymiş]

it was stream.

Independent form **bir dere imiş**

zenginsin [zengin-sin]

you are rich.

zengindin(iz) [zengin-din(iz)]

you were rich.

Independent form **zengin idin(iz)**

zenginmişsin(iz) [zengin-mişsin(iz)]

you were rich.

Independent form **zengin imişsin(iz)**

Final vowel -ö or -ü is followed by ü in suffix.

bir gözdür [göz-dür]

it is an eye.

bir gözdü [göz-dü]

it was an eye.

Independent form **bir göz idi**

bir gözmüş [göz-müş]

it was an eye.

Independent form **bir göz imiş**

Türk' türler [Türk'-türler]

they are Turkish.

Türk' tüler [Türk'-tüler]

they were Turkish.

Independent form **Türk idiler**

Türk' müşler [Türk'-müşler]

they were Turkish.

Independent form **Türk imişler**

Consonant Mutation

The present and past tense suffixes which begin in **-d-** undergo consonant mutation **-dir** becomes **-tir** and all the past tense suffixes beginning in **-di** become **-ti** after a final hard consonant the letters **ç f h k p ş s t**.

Consonant Mutation Present Tense and Past Tense "to be"

The suffixes in brackets are omitted in familiar conversation.

büyük(tür) *it is large*

büyük(tü) *it was large* [definite past]

büyük(müş) *it was large* [indefinite past]

genç(tirler) *they are young*

genç(tik) *we were young*

genç(mişiz) *we were young*

yavaş(ınız) *you were slow*

çabuk(tun/uz) *you were quick*

çabuk(muşsun/uz) *you were quick*

sabah(tır) *it is morning*

sabahtı *it was morning*

sabah(mış) *it was morning*

bir mektup(tur) *it is a letter*

bir mektup(tu) *it was a letter*

bir mektup(muş) *it was a letter*

Mehmet('tir) *It is Mehmet*

Mehmet' ti *It was Mehmet*

Mehmet' miş *It was Mehmet*

bir sepet(tir) *it is a basket*

bir sepet(tı) *it was a basket*

bir sepet(miş) *it was a basket*

bir virüs(tür) *it is a virus*

bir virüs(tü) *it was a virus*

bir virüsmüş *it was a virus*

felaket(tir) *it is a disaster*

felaketti *it was a disaster*

felaketmiş *it was a disaster*

polis(tirler) *they are policemen*

polistiler *they were policemen*

polismişler *they were policemen*

Proper names with the verb "to be"

Suffixes are not fixed directly to Proper Names, an apostrophe is used.

Mehmet' tir *It is Mehmet*

İstanbul' da *In Istanbul*

Hükümet' ten *From the Government*

zengin *rich*

zenginim *I am rich*

zengindim *I was rich*

yorgun *tired*

yorgunum *I am tired*

yorgundun *you were tired*

pahalı *dear, expensive*

pahalı(dır) *it is dear*

pahalıydı *it was dear*

küçük *small*

küçük(tür) *it is small*

küçüktü *it was small*

hasta *ill*

hastayız *we are ill*

hastaydık *we were ill*

yaşlı *aged/old*

yaşlısın *you are old*
yaşlıydı *he was old*

yoksul *poor*
yoksul(durlar) *they are poor*
yoksuldular *they were poor*

genç *young*
genç(tirler) *they are young*
gençti *he was young*

Interrogative Forms "to be"

*Asking questions, the interrogative particle **-mi?** is used to form questions.*

It is placed after the word it affects, personal endings added according to Vowel Harmony Rules:

"to be" Questions Present Positive Singular

miyim? miyim? muyum? müyüm? *am I?*

mısın? misin? musun? müsün? *are you?*

mı? mi? mu? mü? *is he/she/it?*

mıdır? midir? mudur? müdür? *is he/she/it? (formal, public)*

miyiz? miyiz? muyuz? müyüz? *are we?*

mısınız? misiniz? musunuz? müsünüz? *are you?*

-lar mı? -ler mi? *are they?*

mıdırlar? midirler? mudurlar? müdürler? *are they? (formal/public)*

Except for the 3rd person form **-lar mı?** the positive form of the interrogative is written separately from the word it affects, but obeys the rules of Vowel Harmony.

The longer forms which end in **-dir** are more formal and are used in instructions and public notices. They are not usually used in general conversation.

Interrogative Present Tense Positive examples "to be"

zengin miyim? *am I rich?*

yorgun musun? *are you tired?*

pahalı mı? *is it dear?*

büyük mü? *is it big?*

hasta mıyız? *are we ill?*

yaşlı mısınız? *are you old?*

gençler mi? *are they young?*

yoksullar mı? *are they poor?*

The question part is written separately from the verb, but still obeys vowel harmony rules.

Interrogative Past Tense Positive examples "to be"

The Past tense personal endings are added to the question particle **-mi** and obeys Vowel harmony but is written separately.

"to be" Questions Past Positive Singular

miydım? midiyim? muydum? müydüm? *am I?*

miydın? miydin? muydun? müydün? *are you?*

miydi? miydi? muydu? müydü? *is he/she/it?*

miydık? miydik? muyduk? müydük? *are we?*

mıdınız? midiniz? mudunuz? müdünüz? *are you?*

miydılar? miydiler? muydular? müydüler? *are they?*

The Buffer Letter **-y-** is used in the formation of the Past Tense Questions. This is to keep the final vowel of the question tag **-mi** by mutating the first vowel of the Past Tense endings **-idim** etc to **-ydim** etc.

Interrogative Past Tense Positive examples "to be"

acı mıydı? *was it bitter?*

sıcak mıydı? *was it hot?*

hava soğuk muydu? *was the weather cold?*

mutlu muyduk? *were we happy?*

yorgun muydular? *were they tired?*

hasta mıydınız? *were you ill? or have you been ill?*

güzel miydi? *was she beautiful?*

ev büyük müydü? *was it a large house?*

The question part is written separately from the verb, but still obeys vowel harmony rules.

The Future will be

The Future Tense is discussed in Ch. 19.

The Future of the verb "to be" is lacking in Turkish.

Its place is taken by the Future Tense of the Verb **olmak** *to be, to become*.

Yarın hazır olacağım.

I will be ready tomorrow.

Er geç zengin olacaksın.

You will become rich sooner or later.

[er geç (ergeç) sooner or later]

Bu gece parti çok güzel olacak.

It will be a great party tonight.

All these are "state of being" sentences but Turkish uses the verb **olmak** *to become* to convey the future of the verb "to be"

The Verb not to be Negative

The Negative *not to be* is formed by using the negative particle **değil** *not*

This word is invariable and not subject to vowel harmony rules.

To form the negative the personal present tense endings are affixed to **değil** *not*.

The resulting verb *not to be* is written separately from the verb root, whereas the positive forms *to be, am, is, are, etc.* being added to the root word, are subject to both Vowel Harmony and Consonant Mutation.

Present Tense Negative "not to be"

Singular Forms

ben değilim *I am not*
zengin değilim *I am not rich*

sen değilsin *you are not*
yorgun değilsin *you are not tired*

değildir *he/she/it is not*
pahalı değildir [Public, Official] *it is not dear*

değil *he is not*
şişman değil [Familiar, Usual] *she is not fat*

Plural Forms

biz değiliz *we are not*
hasta değiliz *we are not ill*

siz değilsiniz *you are not*
yaşlı değilsiniz *you are not old*

değildirler *they are not*
genç değildirler [Public, Official] *they are not young*
değiller *they are not*
çirkin değiller [Familiar, Usual] *they are not ugly*

Generally the third person forms using **-dir** are not used in day to day conversation.

The use of the **-dir** form is apparent in Public Signs and Warnings and newspaper reports.

For these reasons this longer form is included here.

The shortened form should always be used in general conversation.

Emphasis with Personal Pronouns

The Personal Pronouns are only used for emphasis, as the person of the verb is already apparent from the verb ending.

Ben zengin değilim. *I am not rich.* {Emphasized}

Zengin değilim. *I'm not rich.*

O hasta değil. *HE is not ill*

Hasta değil. *he's not ill.*

Interrogative Present Tense Negative "not to be"

To form Negative Questions the positive verb added after **değil** *not*, but written separately.

zengin değil miyim? *am I not rich? aren't I rich?*

pahalı değil mi? *isn't it dear?*

hasta değil miyiz? *aren't we ill?*

genç değiller mi? *aren't they young?*

yorgun değil misin? *aren't you tired?*

büyük değil mi? *isn't it big?*

yaşlı değil misiniz? *aren't you old?*

yoksul değiller mi? *aren't they poor?*

Past Tense Negative "not to be"

To form the Past Tense of "not to be" the Personal Past Tense endings are added to **değil** not.

değildim *I was not*
zengin değildim *I was not rich*

değildin *you were not*
hasta değildin *you were not ill*

değildi *he was not*
yorgun değildi *he/she was not tired*

değildik *we were not*
mutlu değildik *we were not happy*

değildiniz *you were not*
aç değildiniz *you were not hungry*

değildiler *they were not*
yoksul değildiler *they were not poor*

Interrogative Past Tense Negative "not to be"

Examples of Negative Questions regarding Past Time formed with **değil** not followed by the question forms written separately.

açık değil miydi?
wasn't it open?

mutlu değil miydik?
weren't we happy?

hava soğuk değil miydi?
wasn't the weather cold?

zengin değil miydiler?
weren't they rich?

emin değil miydim?

wasn't I sure?

Mehmet meşgul değil miydi?

wasn't Mehmet busy?

yorgun değil miydiniz?

weren't you tired?

çocuklar mutlu değil miydiler?

weren't the children happy?

Question Tags

The question tags that we use in English: *Isn't it?*, *Aren't you?*, *Aren't they?*, *Can't we?*, *Weren't they?*, *Didn't they?* etc are all translated by the single tag **değil mi?** for all Persons and all Tenses.

Hava soğuk, değil mi?

The weather is cold, isn't it?

Hava soğuktu, değil mi?

The weather was cold, wasn't it?

Mutlusunuz, değil mi?

You are happy, aren't you?

Mutlu olacaksın, değil mi?

You will be happy, won't you?

Hastadırlar, değil mi?

They are ill, aren't they?

Mehmet kazanabilir, değil mi?

Mehmet can win, can't he?

"to be" Examples

The word **pek** *very*, *hard*, *firm*, *quite* is often used as an intensifier especially in negative sentences.

The word **çok** very can also be used as an intensifier in positive sentences although it is a little more direct as **pek** is a more gentle word.

Mutluyum. *I am happy.*

İyisiniz. *You are good.*

Bozuk(tur). *It is spoiled, broken, no good.*

Kolay(dır). *It is easy.*

Neşeliyiz. *We are merry.*

İngilizsiniz. *You are English.*

Zeki(dirler). *They are clever.*

Pek/Çok şişmansınız. *You are very fat.*

Çok/Pek nazıksınız. *You are very nice.*

Mehmet pek hasta(dır). *Mehmet is quite ill.*

Genç değilim. *I am not young.*

Hasta değilsiniz. *You are not ill.*

Pek aç değilim. *I am not very hungry.*

Yüksek değil(dir). *It is not high.*

Deli değiliz. *We are not crazy.*

Pek/Çok çabuk değil(dir). *It is not very quick/fast.*

Pek nazik değilsiniz. *You are not very nice.*

Pek zeki değil(dirler). *They are not very clever.*

Zengin miyim? *Am I rich?*

Zengin değil miyim? *Am I not rich?*

Hasta mısınız? *Are you ill?*

Ali bey genç mi(dir)? *Is Ali bey young?*

Kolay mı(dır)? *Is it easy?*

Zeki miyiz? *Are we clever?*

Zeki değil miyiz? *Aren't we clever?*

Deli misin? *Are you crazy?*

Arkadaşınız yaşlı mı(dır)? *Is your friend old?*

Arkadaşım yaşlı değil(dir). *My friend is not old.*

Evet,arkadaşım genç(tir). *Yes, my friend is young.*

Mehmet mutlu mudur? *Is Mehmet happy.*

Evet, mutlu(dur). *Yes, he is happy.*

Hayır,mutlu değil(dir). *No, he is not happy.*

Hazır mısın? *Are you ready?*

Hazır değil misin bile? *Aren't you ready yet?*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 16 : Present Continuous Tense



Present Continuous Tense

This tense takes the form of "be doing, be not doing, be saying, be not saying, be going".

I am going, Are you thinking?, We are not staying, Are they not trying?

The Tense sign of the Present Continuous Tense is **-iyor-** **-iyor-** **-üyor-** **-uyor-** which is added to the verb root. The tense endings are completed by adding the personal suffixes.

When the verb root itself ends in a vowel, as in **bekle-mek** to wait, expect becoming **bekl-iyor**, then this vowel is also dropped as the head vowel of the **-iyor** tense sign replaces it.

The first letter **-i-** of **-iyor-** is subject to vowel harmony with the verb stem's final vowel. The Tense Sign **-iyor-** can be likened to the English Tense sign *"-ing"*.

Spelling Exceptions Basic Verb Stems

Only four verbs change their root spelling from **-t** to **-d** when adding a vowel.

gitmek to go becomes

gidiyorum I am going

ditmek to shred (verb used in recipes) becomes

didiyor he/it shreds

tatmak to taste (of) becomes

tadıyor it tastes (of)

etmek *to do/perform* becomes
ediyorum *I am doing*

The verb **etmek** includes all verbs containing **etmek**

kaybetmek *to lose*
affetmek *to pardon, to excuse* and many others.

All other verbs retain their original spelling, examples:

bitmek *to end*
bitiyor *it is finishing*
[NOT "bidiyor"]

batmak *to sink*
batıyor *it is sinking*
[NOT "badiyor"]

Formation of the Present Continuous Tense

The Personal Endings -Present Continuous

geliyorum [gel-iyor-um] *I am coming*
bakıyorsun [bak-ıyor-sun] *you are looking*
giriyor [gir-iyor] *he, she, it is entering*
çıkıyoruz [çık-ıyor-uz] *we are going out*
buluyorsunuz [bul-uyor-sunuz] *you are finding*
gülüyorlar [gül-üyor-lar] *they are laughing*

Present Continuous Conjugation Examples

Positive Verb

gelmek [gel-mek] *to come*
geliyorum *I am coming*

geliyorsun *you are coming*

geliyor *he is coming*

geliyoruz *we are coming*

geliyorsunuz *you are coming*

geliyorlar *they are coming*

Negative Verb

gelmemek [gelme-mek] *not to come*

gelmiyorum *I am not coming*

gelmiyorsun *you are not coming*

gelmiyor *he is not coming*

gelmiyoruz *we are not coming*

gelmiyorsunuz *you are not coming*

gelmiyorlar *they are not coming*

The vowel of **gelmek** (E-Dotted group) is **-e-** therefore the tense sign begins with a Dotted-i **-iyor-**. The infinitive verb ending **-mek** is dropped from the verb stem and **-iyor-** is added together with the personal endings to form the tense.

All Negative Verb roots that end in a vowel as in: **gelmemek** [gelme -mek] *not to come* also drop this final vowel from the vowel stem so that when the tense sign **-iyor-** is added two vowels do not occur together. [gelmeiyorum is incorrect].

The Rule is that Negative Verbs drop the final vowel of the root along with **-mek** or **-mak**.

Examples of the E-Dotted vowel group of Verbs

Positive Verbs

vermek *to give*

veriyor *giving*

bilmek *to know*

biliyor *knowing*

görmek *to see*

görüyor *seeing*

gülmek *to laugh*

gülüyor *laughing*

Negative Verbs

vermemek *not to give*

vermiyor *not giving*

bilmemek *not to know*

bilmiyor *not knowing*

görmemek *not to see*

görmüyor *not seeing*

gülmemek *not to laugh*

gülmüyor *not laughing*

All negative verb stems lose their final stem vowel as they end in the negative particle **-me** or **-ma**.

Examples of the A-UnDotted vowel group of Verbs

Positive Verbs

yapmak *to do, make, perform*

yapıyor *doing*

ağrımak *to ache*

ağrıyor *aching*

kopmak *to snap*

kopuyor *snapping*

kurumak *to dry*

kuruyor *drying*

Negative Verbs

yapmamak *not to do*

yapmıyor *not doing*

ağrımamak *not to ache*

ağrımıyor *not aching*

kopmamak *not to snap*

kopmuyor *not snapping*

kurumamak *not to dry*

kurumuyor *not drying*

The final vowel of any verb is dropped when adding **-iyor** in order to keep two vowels apart.

This applies to all positive Verbs in both A-UnDotted and E-Dotted Groups, **kuru-mak** becomes **kur-uyor** *to dry* and **bekle-mek** *to wait* becomes **becl-iyor**.

Examples of Verb Root ending in a Vowel

Positive Verb

beklemek *to wait, expect*

bekliyorum *I am waiting*

bekliyorsun *you are waiting*

bekliyor *he/she/it is waiting*

bekliyoruz *we are waiting*

bekliyorsunuz *you are waiting*

bekliyorlar *they are waiting*

The root of this verb is **bekle-** but its final vowel **-e** is dropped before adding the tense sign **-iyor-** to prevent vowels occurring together. ["bekleiyorum" would be incorrect.]

The Rule is that the final vowel of verb stem is dropped along with **-mek** or **-mak**

Negative Verb

beklememek *to not wait, expect*

beklemiyorum *I am not waiting*

beklemiyorsun *you are not waiting*

beklemiyor *he/she/it is not waiting*

beklemiyoruz *we are not waiting*

beklemiyorsunuz *you are not waiting*

beklemiyorlar *they are not waiting*

A-UnDotted verbs ending in a consonant

For verbs of the A-UnDotted Group with **a i o u** in verb stem the suffix **-mak** signifies the positive verb and **-mamak** is used for the negative verb.

The positive verb is **bakmak** *to look*

The negative verb is **bakmamak** *not to look*

Positive Verb

bakmak *to look, to look at*

bakıyorum *I am looking*

bakıyorsun *you are looking*

bakıyor *he is looking*

bakıyoruz *we are looking*

bakıyorsunuz *you are looking*

bakıyorlar *they are looking*

Bakmak *to look* is a verb of the A-UnDotted Group therefore the tense sign also begins with an UnDotted-ı **-ıyor-**. The tense sign **-ıyor-** is then added under vowel harmony rules.

Negative Verb

bakmamak *not to look, not to look at*

bakmıyorum *I am not looking*

bakmıyorsun *you are not looking*

bakmıyor *he is not looking*

bakmıyoruz *we are not looking*

bakıyorsunuz *you are not looking*

bakıyorlar *they are not looking*

E-Dotted verbs ending in a vowel

For verbs of the E-Dotted Group with **e ı ö ü** in verb stem the suffix **-mek** signifies the positive verb and **-memek** is used for the negative verb.

The positive verb is **yürümek** *to walk*.

The negative verb is **yürümemek** *not to walk*

Positive Verb

yürümek *to walk*

yürüyorum *I am walking*

yürüyorsun *you are walking*

yürüyor *he is walking*

yürüyoruz *we are walking*

yürüyorsunuz *you are walking*

yürüyorlar *they are walking*

Yürümek *to walk* is a verb of the E-Dotted Group therefore the tense sign also begins with a Dotted-ü **-üyor-**

This verb also has a final vowel in the verb stem which is dropped along with the infinitive sign **-mek**.

The tense sign **-üyor-** is then added under vowel harmony rules.

Negative Verb

yürümek *not to walk*

yürümüyorum *I am not walking*

yürümüyorsunuz *you are not walking*

yürümüyor *he is not walking*

yürümüyoruz *we are not walking*

yürümüyorsunuz *you are not walking*

yürümüyorlar *they are not walking*

Interrogative Present Continuous

To form questions the question particle **mi? mı? mu? mü?** is used after **-iyor**. It is written separately and the personal ending is added making a question tag.

The Third Person Plural is slightly different in that the question particle **mi?** is always placed last for reasons of ease of pronunciation.

The question particle **mi?** is subject to vowel harmony so can have four forms **mi? mı? mu? mü?** It retains its vowel harmonization even when not attached as a suffix.

Question Particle Positioning

*The Question Particle **mı? mi? mu? mü?** is placed after the item that you are*

questioning: It is NOT always the VERB that is in question. This is the same for English

Mehmet, şimdi eve gidiyor mu?

Is Mehmet going home now?

"Mehmet, is he going home now?"

Question on the verb "gitmek" "to go".

Mehmet, eve mi gidiyor?

Is it home that Mehmet is going to?

Question on the object "ev" "home."

Mehmet mi, eve gidiyor?

Is it Mehmet who is going home?

[Question on The subject "Mehmet".]

Bisiklet, ters mi duruyor?

Is the bicycle upside down?

"The bicycle, is it upside down?"

[The position of the bicycle is in question.]

Mehmet, kemen mi çalıyor?

Is Mehmet playing the violin?

"Is it the violin? That he is playing".

[The "keman" "violin" is in question.]

The verb **çalmak** has two meanings:

(1) To play a musical instrument.

(2) To steal something.

O, kemen mi çalıyor? could mean

Is it a violin that he is stealing?

OR *Is it a violin that he is playing?*

Bir hirsiz arabamı çaldı.

A thief stole/has stolen my car.

Bir kız piyanoyu güzelce çaldı.

A girl played the piano well.

Question Tags in Turkish

The Positive Interrogative Forming Negative Questions

Positive Verb

gelmek *to come*

geliyor muyum? *am I coming?*

geliyor musun? *are you coming?*

geliyor mu? *is he coming?*

geliyor muyuz? *are we coming?*

geliyor musunuz? *are you coming?*

geliyorlar mı? *are they coming?*

The question tags **muyum?**, **musun?** etc. are always written separately from the verb itself.

The tags follow vowel harmony rules even that they are not directly suffixed to the verb stem itself.

Negative Verb

gelmemek *to not come*

gelmiyor muyum? *aren't I coming?*

gelmiyor musun? *aren't you coming?*

gelmiyor mu? *isn't he coming?*

gelmiyor musunuz? *aren't you coming?*

gelmiyor muyuz? *aren't we coming?*

gelmiyorlar mı? *aren't they coming?*

The negative questions are formed in the same manner using the negative verb stem.

The vowel harmonized question tag is still written separated from the verb stem

Yarın şehre gidiyorum.

Tomorrow I am going to town.

Yarın şehre gitmiyorum.

Tomorrow I am not going to town.

Benimle gelmiyor musunuz?

Aren't you coming with me?

Küçük odada uyumuyorlar mı?

Aren't they sleeping in the small room?

Evi boyuyor.

He is painting the house.

[*"ev-i"* Lit: the house direct object.]

Mehmet kendi evini boyamıyor.

Mehmet is not painting his own house.

[*ev-i-n-i* Lit: "the house of he" possessed direct object.]

Turkish uses the Present Continuous Tense as a Future Tense of Intention, as in English:

We are going to Turkey next month

[*"We will go to Turkey"* Future of Intention]

The Present Progressive Tense

The Present Progressive is coming into use more and more each day.

It is especially used in newspapers, but is also being used in conversation.

Its base is formed by adding the locative suffix to the infinitive to which the personal endings of the verb "to be" are then added.

It means *"I am presently doing something and I am still doing it at the moment"*.

It is best translated into English as *"I have been doing (and am still doing)"*

An example **beklemek** to wait/expect

beklemekteyim [beklemek-te-yim]

I have been waiting (and am still waiting)

beklemektesin [beklemek-te-sin]
you have been waiting (and are still waiting)

beklemektedir [beklemek-te-dir]
he has been waiting (and is still waiting)

beklemekteyiz [beklemek-te-yiz]
we have been waiting (and are still waiting)

beklemektesiniz [beklemek-te-siniz]
you have been waiting (and are still waiting)

beklemekteler [beklemek-te-ler];
they have been waiting (and are still waiting)

Saat beşten beri bankada seni beklemekteyim.
I have been waiting for you in the bank since five o'clock (and I am still waiting)

This tense is often used in newspaper print:
Şimdilik futbol takımınız İtalya'da oynamaktadır.
Our football team are presently playing in Italy (and are still there).

The past tense endings are used to change the tense:

Evde Mehmet'i belemektedirim.
I had been waiting for Mehmet at home.

Mehmet evde beni belemektedir.
Mehmet had been waiting for me at home.

Sabırsızlıkla bu filmi beklemektelerdi.
They had been waiting for this film with impatience.

An example in the Passive Mood and Past Indefinite Tense.
Bu akşam üzeri ülke genelinde sağnak yağış beklenmekteymiş.
[bekle-n-mek-te-y-miş]
In the evening scattered showers may be expected over the countryside.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 17 : Simple Tense Positive



The Simple Present Tense Positive

*The Simple Present Tense is also known as the Aorist (Boundless) Tense.
It does not specify a time of the present, past or future.*

This tense is known as the *Wide Tense* in Turkish grammatical terms as it signifies an unbounded time situation.

In Turkish it is called "Geniş Zaman" "The Wide Tense".

It is considered as a gentle tense and is used as a polite imperative or polite request.

The three uses of the Simple Present are as follows:

Simple Tense: (1) Habitual Action

*This tense is used where verbs are required to signify a timeless situation in
meaning: **Her gün denizde yüzerim.**
I swim in the sea every day.*

Ayşe hanım dondurmayı çok sever.
Miss Ayshe likes ice cream a lot.

Her gece eve dönerim.
I come back home every night.

Her gün düzenli olarak traş olur.
He shaves regularly each day.

Genelikle et yeriz.

[ye-r-iz]
Generally we eat meat.

Her hafta sonunda futbol oynarlar.
They play football every weekend.

In the sentences above there is no indication of future, past or present time. The tense then is used to denote action that is habitual or ongoing.

Simple Tense: (2) Consent or Willingness

The Simple Tense shows consent or willingness.

Kapıyı açar mısınız?
Would you open the door please?
[a polite request.]

Buna bakar mısınız?
Would you look at this please.
[a polite command.]

Evet, onu yaparım.
Yes, I will do the job
[a willing consent.]

İki gecelik bir oda tutarız.
We'll take a room for two nights.
[polite request]

In Turkish *would you?* and *please* are not translated as it is inherent within the tense itself. This tense is a polite tense.

Simple Tense: The Polite Command

Bakar mısınız?
Would you look, please?

Bana yardım edebilir misiniz?
Could you help me, (please)?

This is the polite way to get attention of a waiter or any person. It is similar to the Welsh *Look you?* in that it is not rude.

Simple Tense: The Polite Request

Bir çay rica ederim.

A tea, please .

[Lit: I request a tea.]

Pencereyi kapatır mısınız?

Would you close the window, please?

This is the polite way of asking questions or giving minor orders to strangers.

Simple Tense: The Polite Consent

Ben onu yaparım *I'll do it.*

This is a nice way of accepting the responsibility of something.

Simple Tense: (3) Unbounded Future

The Simple Present is also used for future events which are not timed.

Saatin altında seni beklerim.

I'll be waiting under the clock for you.

Parkın yanındaki bankayı tabii ki bulursunuz.

You'll find the bank all right, next to the Park.

Yarın ofiste buluşuruz.

We'll see each other in the office tomorrow.

Simple Present Positive Formation

The tense sign is -r which is added directly to the verb stem as follows:

Single Syllable Verb Root ending in a consonant

For A-UnDotted Group verbs **-ar** is added after dropping infinitive sign **-mak**

yapmak *to do, to make*

yaparım *I do*

yaparsın *you do*

yapar *he does*

yaparız *we do*

yaparsınız *you do*

yaparlar *they do*

For E-Dotted Group verbs **-er** is added after dropping infinitive sign **-mek**

kesmek *to cut*

keserim *I cut*

kesersin *you cut*

keser *he cuts*

keseriz *we cut*

kesersiniz *you cut*

keserler *they cut*

Exceptions to Single Syllable Verbs

For verbs of one syllable which end in a consonant the regular positive tense sign is **-ar** or **-er**.

This tense is the only one which shows some irregularity in its formation.

There are 13 exceptions which form their Simple Tense with **-ir** or **-ır** or **-ur** or **-ür**,

almak - alır *to take*

alırım *I take*

bilmek - **alır** to know
bilir he knows

bulmak - **bulur** to find
bulur he finds

durmak - **durur** to stop, halt
dururuz we stop

gelmek - **gelir** to come
gelirsiniz you come

görmek - **görür** to see
görürler they see

kalmak - **kalır** to stay
kalırım I stay

olmak - **olur** to become
olursun you become

ölmek - **ölür** to die
ölür it dies

sanmak - **sanır** to suppose
sanırsınız we suppose

vermek - **verir** to give
verirsiniz you give

varmak - **varır** to arrive
varırlar they arrive

vurmak - **vurur** to hit
vururum I hit

Aide Memoir: All these verb stems end in **-r** or **-l** except one, **sanmak** to suppose.

Verb Stems which end in a Vowel

For all verbs ending in a vowel the tense sign **-r-** is added after drooping the infinitive sign **-mak** or **-mek**.

The Personal suffixes are added to the tense sign to complete the verb in

number.

A-UnDotted Verbs

anlamak *to understand*

anlarım *I understand*

anlarsın *you understand*

anlar *he understands*

anlarız *we understand*

anlarsınız *you understand*

anlarlar *they understand*

E-Dotted Verbs

demek *to say, mean*

derim *I say*

dersin *you say*

der *he says*

deriz *we say*

dersiniz *you say*

derler *they say*

demek der *to say*

Dünya yuvarlaktır derler.

They say the world is round.

yemek yer *to eat*

Her gün ekmek yeriz.

We eat bread every day.

beklemek bekler *to wait*

Her gün köşede beklersiniz, değil mi?

Every day you wait at the corner, don't you?

söylemek söyler *to speak*
Her zaman "hayır'ı" derler.
They say "No" every time.
[the word "hayır'ı" is a Direct Object]

Multi-syllable Vowels Which end in a Consonant

For verbs consisting of more than one syllable the tense sign is **-ir -ır -ür -ur** according to Vowel harmony.

A-UnDotted Verbs

kazanmak *to win*
kazanırım *I win*
kazanırsın *you win*
kazanır *he wins*
kazanırız *we win*
kazanırsınız *you win*
kazanırlar *they win*

E-Dotted Verbs

göndermek *to send*
gönderirim *I send*
gönderirsin *you send*
gönderir *he sends*
göndeririz *we send*
gönderirsiniz *you send*
gönderirler *they send*

Examples the tense sign is **-ir -ır -ür -ur**

kazanabilmek kazanabilir *to be able to win*

Her hafta Milli Piyango'yu kazanabilirsin.

You can win the lottery every week.

-a tırmanmak to climb (to, up to)

Her yıl Nemrut Dağı'na tırmanırız.

We climb (to) Mount Nemrut every year.

The verb **tırmanmak** to climb (to, up to) takes a Motion Towards Object in **-a** or **-e**.

götürmek götürür to bring

Mehmet, yemeğini her gün evden götürür.

Mehmet, brings his lunch from home every day.

beğenmek beğenir to like, approve

Türk kahvesini beğenirler,

They like Turkish coffee.

Translation of "used to"

If the past tense endings are added to the Wide Tense Positive **-r** verb stem then the meaning is habitual in the past. This translated by *used to* in English.

In Turkish the Simple Present Tense is used with the past tense personal endings habitual in the past.

Sık sık buraya gelirdim.

I used to come here very often.

Gençken çok gülerdin.

You used to laugh a lot when [Lit: while..] you were young.

Kuşadası'nda kalırken her zaman denizde yüzerdi.

He always used to swim in the sea when staying at Kuşshadasi.

1950 yılından önce (1950'den önce) Türkiye'de kola içilirdi.

Coca-cola used to be drunk in Turkey before 1950.

Dersler bittikten sonra uzun zaman/süre beni beklerdin.

You always used to wait for me a long time after school finished.

Tatilde kamp yaparken hep/daima iyi uyurlardı.

They always used to sleep very well while on holiday while camping.

Although **iken** translates as *while* in English, it is very often better to translate it as "*when*", although this is not literally correct.

Proverbs "*Atasözler*"

Turkish Proverbs are usually written in the Simple Tense.

These translations are not literal showing the difficulty of such interpretation from Turkish to English.

Acele işe, şeytan karışır.

If you hurry, the devil intervenes.

Çabuk parlayan çabuk söner.

A flash is quickly extinguished.

Damlaya damlaya göl olur.

Lakes form drop by drop.

Emek ver, kulak ver, bilgi ver, ama hiçbir zaman boş verme.

Give labour, ear and knowledge, but never give notice.

Fakirlik ayıp değil tembellik ayıp.

Poverty is no shame but idleness is.

Güzel gören güzel düşünür. Güzel düşünen hayattan lezzet alır.

An observer of beauty thinks of beauty. Those who think beauty taste life.

İyilik eden iyilik bulur.

Those who do good find goodness themselves.

Ne ekersen onu biçersin.

You reap what you sow.

Önce düşün sonra söyle.

Think first, speak later.

Sağlam kafa sağlam vücutta bulunur.
A healthy mind is found in a healthy body.

Tok iken yemek yiyen, mezarını kendi kazar.
Those who eat when they are full dig their own grave.

The Five Verbs which Show Consonant Mutation

Reiteration: The five verbs that soften their final **-t** to **-d** when a vowel is added in the suffix: **gitmek** *to go*
gidiyorum *I am going*

etmek *to do*
ederim *I do*

tatmak *to taste of*
tadarlar *they taste of*

ditmek *to shred [used in recipes]*
didersin *you shred*

gütmek *to nourish/feed animals*
güderim *I nourish*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 18 : Simple Tense Negative



Wide Tense Negative Tense

The Negative Simple Tense tense sign is -maz/-mez.

Habitual Situations

The negative of the Simple Present tense translates as:

I don't go to work on Saturdays.

He doesn't like ice cream.

We don't keep a pet.

They never take a holiday.

We'll not see each other for some time.

The simple present tense is used in situations in both the present and the future that are untimed.

Simple Negative Tense E-Dotted Verb Formation.

The Wide Tense Negative Infinitive is not based on the normal negative infinitive "gelmemek" "not to come". **gelmek** becomes **gelmez** to not go The First Persons Singular and Plural are abraded to **-me-**

gitmem *I don't go*
[NOT "gitmezim"]

gitmezsın *you don't go*

gitmez *he doesn't go*

gitmeyiz *we don't go*
[NOT "gitmeziz"]

gitmezsınız *you don't go*

gitmezler *they don't go*

Simple Negative Tense A-UnDotted Verb Formation.

The Wide Tense Negative Infinitive of **bakmak** is **bakmaz** *to not go* The First Persons Singular and Plural are abraded to **-ma-**

bakmam *I don't look*
[NOT "bakmazım"]

bakmazsın *you don't look*

bakmaz *he doesn't look*

bakmayız *we don't look*
[NOT "bakmazız"]

bakmazsınız *you don't look*

bakmazlar *they don't look*

The first persons **gitmem** *I do not go* and **gitmeyiz** *We do not go* drop the **-z** when adding the personal endings to the negative verb stem, all other persons preserve the **-z** **tanımamak** *not to know somebody*

Beni tanımazsınız.
You don't know me

Beni tanımaz mısınız?
Don't you know me?

içmez *does not to drink*

O bira içmez .
He doesn't drink beer. [generally]

Mehmet, bira içmez mi?

Doesn't Mehmet drink beer? [usually?]

O bira içmez.

He doesn't drink beer. [generally]

If the Direct Object Condition **birayı** is used in the example above, the object becomes a definite object, but here we are talking about generally the drinking of beer.

Mehmet birayı içmez mi?

Doesn't Mehmet drink the (or that) beer?
[particular beer]

konuşmamak *not to talk*

Onun hakkında konuşmayız.

We don't talk about it.

giymemek *not to wear*

Genellikle bir şapka giymez misiniz?

Don't you generally wear a hat?

seyretmemek *not to watch*

Televizyonu seyretmezler.

They don't watch the television.
[in particular]

Televizyon seyretmezler.

They don't watch television.
[generally]

The Interrogative Form

The interrogative is formed by adding the personalized question particles after the verb stem ending in **-z**.

They are written separately, but follow vowel harmony rules.

bakmamak *not to look*
bakmaz mıyım?
OR **bakmam mı?** *don't I look?*

kalmamak *not to stay*
kalmaz mısınız? *don't you stay?*

bitirmemek *not to finish*
bitirmez mi? *doesn't he finish?*

yazmamak *not to write*
yazmaz mıyız? *don't we write?*

koşmamak *not to run*
Koşmaz mısınız? *don't you run?*

yürümek *not to walk*
Yürümezler mi? *don't they walk?*

Her gün saat beşte seni görmez miyim?
Don't I see you every day at five o'clock?

Londra'da oturmaz mısınız?
Don't you live in London?

Ali bey bir bankada çalışmaz mı?
Doesn't Ali Bey work in a bank?

Hepimiz bir parti sevmez miyiz?
Don't we all love a party?

Saying "didn't used to"

When the past tense endings are added to the Wide Tense negative **-mez/-maz** verb stem then the meaning is habitual in the past. This translated by *didn't used to* in English.

In Turkish the Simple Present Tense is used with the past tense personal endings habitual in the past: **Sık sık buraya gelmezdim.**

I didn't used to come here very often.

Genç iken o kadar gülmezdin.

You didn't used to laugh very much when you were young.

Kuşadada kalırken denizde yüzmezdi.

He never used to swim in the sea when staying at Kuşadası.

1950 yıldan önce Türkiye'de kola içilmezdi.

Coca-cola did not used to be drunk in Turkey before 1950.

Derslerimiz bittikten sonra yeterli zaman için beni beklemezsiniz.

You didn't used to wait long enough for me after school finished.

Tatilde kamp yaparken o kadar iyi uyumazdılar.

They didn't used to sleep very well while on holiday while camping.

Question "didn't you used to?"

Her gün çarşıya gitmez miydim?

Didn't I used to go to the shops everyday?

Hatice'yi sevmez miydin?

Didn't you used to love Hatice?

Ummaz mıydı?

Didn't he used to hope?

Açmaz mıydık?

Didn't we used to open?

Kazmaz mıydınız?

Didn't you used to dig?

Soğan satmaz mıydılar?

Didn't they used to sell onions?

Soğan is not in the direct object case nor is it plural in Turkish, but it is a

non-specific object of the family of "onion". In Turkish "things is" and "people are".

Çıkmaz mıydılar?

Didn't they used to go out?

Her gün seni görmez miydin?

Didn't I used to see you every day?

Bıkmaz mıydık?

Didn't we used to get fed up?

Londra'da oturmaz mıydın?

Didn't you used to live in London?

oturmak means to sit (down) or to live (at a place).

Ali İstanbul'da oturur

Ali lives in Istanbul.

Ben, mavi sandalyede oturuyorum

I am sitting in the blue chair.

Atlara binmez miydiniz?

Didn't you used to ride horses?

binmek to get on, to ride, to board takes the Motion Toward -e or -a as "movement towards" is implied in the verb **binmek**.

Conversational Turkish: "used to" and "didn't used to"

In daily speech the Past Imperfect Tense will often be used:

Yıllar önce Manisa'da çalışıyordum.

Many years ago I was working in Manisa

Proverbs "Atasözler"

Turkish Proverbs are usually written in the Wide Tense.

These translations are not literal showing the difficulty of such interpretation from Turkish to English.

Boş çuval ayakta durmaz.
An empty sack does stand up.

Mum dibine ışık vermez.
The bottom of a candle sheds no light.

Havlayan köpek ısırmaz.
A barking dog does not bite.

Küçük suda büyük balık olmaz.
There are no big fish in small pools.

Yuvarlanan taş yosun tutmaz.
A rolling stone gathers no moss.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 19 : Future Tense



The future tense sign is -ecek- or -acak- to which the personal suffixes are attached.

Consonant Mutation:

When a personal ending which begins in a vowel is suffixed then the final **-k-** of this tense sign is softened to a **-ğ-** thus producing the forms to **-eceğ-** or **-acağ-**.

Uses of the Future Tense

Decisions:

İlerde doktor olacağım.

I'm going to be a doctor.

Offers and Promises:

Sana bisiklet alacağım.

I will buy you a bicycle.

Predictions:

Hava yarın çok güzel olacak.

The weather will be fine tomorrow.

Commands:

İlk önce bunu bitireceksin.

First of all you will finish this.

Obligations:

Yarına ödeviniz bitecek.

By tomorrow our duty must finish.

Conjugation of the Future Tense

Positive Verb *gelmek to come* (Future: *gel-ecek*)

geleceğim *I shall come*
[gel-eceğ-im]

geleceksin *you will come*

O gelecek *he will come*

geleceğiz *we shall come*

geleceksiniz *you will come*

gelecekler *they will come*

Negative Verb *gelmemek not to come* (future: *gelme-y-ecek*)

The buffer letter -y- is used if the verb stem ends in a vowel in order to keep the vowels apart when the -acak/-ecek future suffix is added the verb.

Negative Future uses buffer letter -y-

gelmeyeceğim *I shall not come*

gelmeyeceksin *you will not come*

O gelmeyecek *he will not come*

gelmeyeceğiz *we shall not come*

gelmeyeceksiniz *you will not come*

gelmeyecekler *they will not come*

In pronunciation the Future Negative is often pronounced **gelmiyeceğim**.

The Negative Particle -me- or -ma- abrades to -mi- or -mı-

Future Tense: Verb Stem ends in a Vowel

Positive Verb aramak
to seek, look for (future: *ara-y-acak*)

arayacağım *I shall look for*
[ara-y-acağım]

arayacaksın *you will look for*

O arayacak *he will look for*

arayacağız *we shall look for*

arayacaksınız *you will look for*

arayacaklar *they will look for*

Negative Verb aramamak *to not look for (future: ara-ma-y-acak)*

aramayacağım *I shall not look for*
[arama-y-acağım]

aramayacaksın *you will not look for*

O aramayacak *he will not look for*

aramayacağız *we shall not look for*

aramayacaksınız *you will not look for*

aramayacaklar *they will not look for*

Future Tense: Sound Changes In Conversation

If a verb stem ends in **-a** or **-e** as does **ara-mak** above, then the final **-a** or **-e** is sometimes pronounced as **-ı** and **-i** the positive future tense as in **arıyacağım**.

As the stem of the positive verb ends in a vowel then a buffer letter **-y-** is inserted to separate two vowels **ara-y-acağım** [ara- as written] or **arı-y-acağım** [arı- as spoken.]

söyleyecek [as written]
he will speak becomes
söyliyecek [as spoken]

oksayacaklar [as written]
they will caress/stroke becomes

oksıyacaklar [as spoken.]

Verb stems which end with a final vowel

-ı -i -o -ö -u -ü

do not mutate and retain their original vowel.

For instance **yürümek** *to walk* retains its final **-ü** in the future tense **yürüyecek**
uyumak *to sleep* becomes **uyuyacak**.

In fast, local talk (also in television programmes the **-ecek/-acak** future suffix often gets abraded in conversation thus:

Gideceğim

gidicem I will go [As Spoken]

Gideceğiz

gidicez we will go

Yazacağım

yazıcam I will write

Yazacağız

azıcaz We will write

Güleceğim

gülecem I will laugh

Güleceğiz

gülecez We will laugh

Uyuyakaldım, koşa koşa ofise gidicem şimdi.

I overslept, now I'll go to the office a-running..

The Interrogative of the Future Tense

The interrogative personal pronouns are written separately after the verb but observe vowel harmony rules.

The Positive Interrogative Future Tense

yürümek *to walk* becomes **yürüyecek** [yürü-y-ecek] *will walk*

yürüyecek miyim?

Shall I walk?

Am I going to walk?

yürüyecek misin?

Will you walk?

Are you going to walk?

O yürüyecek mi?

Will he walk?

Is he going to walk?

yürüyecek miyiz?

Shall we walk?

Are we going to walk?

yürüyecek misiniz?

Will you walk?

Are you going to walk?

yürüyecekler mi?

Will they walk?

Are they going to walk?

The Negative Interrogative Future Tense

yazmamak to not write becomes **yazmayacak** [yazma-y-acak] will not write

yazmayacak mıyım?

Shall I not write?

Am I not going to write?

yazmayacak mısın?

Will you not write?

O yazmayacak mı?

Will he not write?

yazmayacak mıyız?

Shall we not write?

yazmayacak mısınız?

Will you not write?

yazmayacaklar mı?
Will they not write?

The Future of the verb "to be"

The verb "to be" suffix is added to the word it modifies.

Present Tense: **hazırım**
I am ready

Past Tense: **hazırdım**
I was ready

There is no future tense of the verb "to be" in suffix form. It does not exist.

One of the most important auxiliary functions of the verb **olmak** *to be/to become* is its use as the Future Tense of the Verb "to be" **olacak** *will be*

The future of the verb **olmak** *to become* is employed to form the future tense of the verb "to be":

hazır olacağım
I shall be ready.

The verb **olmak** *to become* is a word in its own right. It is written separately. It is NOT suffixed to the word it modifies.

Present Tense: **hazırım**
I am ready

Future Tense: **hazır olacağım**
I shall be ready

zenginsin
you are rich

zengin olacaksın
you will be rich

yorgundur
he is tired

yorgun olacak
he will be (get) tired

yoksuldurlar
they are poor

yoksul olacaklar
they will be poor

Şimdilik İstanbul'dayım.
Just now I am in Istanbul.

Yarın İstanbul' da olacağım.
Tomorrow I shall be in Istanbul.

Negative Future Tense of the Verb "to be"

One of its most important auxiliary functions of the Negative Verb **olmamak** *not to be/not to become* is its use as the Negative Future Tense of the Verb "to be" **olmayacak** *will not be*.

olmamak being a verb is not a suffix, is written separately.

Present Negative: **hazır değilim**
I am not ready

Future Negative: **hazır olmayacağım**
I shall not be ready

zengin değilsin
you are not rich

zengin olmayacaksın
you will not be rich

tembel değildi
he was not lazy

tembel olmayacak
he will not be lazy

yoksul değiller
they are not poor

yoksul olmayacaklar
they will not be poor

Yarın İstanbul' da olmayacağım.
I shall not be in Istanbul tomorrow.

Şimdi İstanbul'da değilim.
I am not in Istanbul now.

Future Active and Passive Mood

Active **kesmek** to cut

O, yarın onu kesecek
He will cut it tomorrow.

Passive **kesilmek**
[kes-il-mek]
to be cut

O, yarın kesilecek.
It will be cut tomorrow.

Active Potential Future **kesebilmek**
[kes-ebil-mek]
to be able to cut

O, yarın onu kesebilecek.
He, will be able to cut it tomorrow.

Passive Potential Future **kesilebilmek**
[kes-il-ebil-mek]
To be able to be to be cut

O, yarın kesilebilecek.
It will be able to be cut tomorrow.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 20 : Past Tense



The Past Tenses

The Definite Past Tenses Was it seen?

There are two Past Tenses in Turkish. The Definite Past Tenses "Seen Tenses" are used when you have personal knowledge and witness of the action. These Definite Past tenses are like the English: Past Perfect Tense *I have made it*
Past Simple Tense *I made it*
Past Continuous {Gram:Imperfect} *I was making it*
Past in the Past (Gram: Pluperfect) *I had made it.*

The Indefinite Past Tenses Was it heard?

The Indefinite Past Tenses "Heard Tenses" are used by inference to transfer information that you have not actually seen and witnessed yourself.

There is no inferential tense in English, not many languages have one, consequently the idea of inference is communicated by other ways. English speakers do this automatically:

I think that I went out. [doubt]

Presumably you have left. [possibility]

He has left as far as I know. [reportative]

I think that we left at. [uncertainty]

They say that you went out. [hearsay]

Its pretty sure that they have left. [probability]

All the examples above show that this tense is used whenever the speaker has not been an eyewitness to the past events.

The Inferential Tense is used for reporting un-witnessed events, or implying possibility, doubt or uncertainty. It is often used in telling jokes as the content of the joke is just a story.

Definite Past Tense Formation

The Tense Sign is the suffix **-dı- -di- -du- -dü-** or **-tı- -ti- -tu- -tü-** when added to verb root ending in **p ç k t ş** plus the personal pronoun are added to the verb stem.

Vowel Harmony and Consonant Mutation rules are applied.

There is no buffer "-y-" used with the verbal past tense suffixes as there is with the past tense of the verb "to be", the defunct "imek". See Ch. 15.

Continuous Past:

Geliyordum [Geliyor-dum]

I was coming

Past Tense suffixes are added to Continuous Tense base.

Simple Past:

Gelirdim [Gelir-dim]

I used to come

Past Tense suffixes are added to Simple Tense base.

Future Past (Future in the Past):

Gelecektim [Gelecek-tim]

I was going to come, I would have come

Past Tense suffixes are added to Future Tense base.

Pluperfect (Past in the Past):

Gelmiştim [Gelmiş-tim]

I had come

Past Tense suffixes are added to Past Participle Tense base.

The **-miş** suffix here does not convey any inferential meaning in the Pluperfect Tense.

Necessitative Past

(Obligation in the Past):

Gelmeliydim [Gelmeli-ydim] *I had to come*

Past Tense suffixes are added to Necessitative Mood base.

Conditional Past:

Gelseydim [Gelse-ydim]

If only I had come

Past Tense suffixes are added to Conditional Mood base.

Definite Past: A-UnDotted Vowel Group

Vowel Stem "-a-" anlamak *to understand*

anladım [anla-dı-m] *I understood*

anladın [anla-dı-n] *you understood*

(o) anladı [anla-dı] *he understood*

anladık [anla-dı-k] *we understood*

anladınız [anla-dı-nız] *you understood*

anladılar [anla-dı-lar] *they understood*

Stem "-ı-" çıkmak *to go out/exit*

çıktım [çık-tı-m] *I went out*

çıktın *you went out*

(o) çıktı *he went out*

çıktık *we went out*

çıktınız *you went out*

çıktılar *they went out*

Stem "-o-" koşmak *to run*

koştum [koş-tu-m] *I ran*

koştun *you ran*

(o) koştu *he ran*

koştuk *we ran*

koştunuz *you ran*

koştular *they ran*

Stem "-u-" bulmak *to find*

buldum [bul-du-m] *I found*

buldun *you found*

(o) buldu *he found*

bulduk *we found*

buldunuz *you found*

buldular *they found*

Definite Past: E-Dotted Vowel Group

Vowel Stem "-e-" gelmek to come

geldim [gel-di-m] *I came*

geldin [gel-di-n] *you came*

(o) geldi [gel-di] *he/she/it came*

geldik [gel-di-k] *we came*

geldiniz [gel-di-niz] *you came*

geldiler [gel-di-ler] *they came*

Stem "-i-" içmek to drink/smoke

içtim [iç-ti-m] *I drank/smoked*

içtin *you drank/smoked*

(o) içti *he drank/smoked*

içtik *we drank/smoked*

içtiniz *you drank/smoked*

içtiler *they drank/smoked*

Stem "-ö-" görmek to see

gördüm [gör-dü-m] *I saw*

gördün *you saw*

(o) gördü *he/she/it saw*

gördük *we saw*

gördünüz *you saw*

gördüler *they saw*

Stem "-ü-" gülmek *to laugh*

güldüm [gül-dü-m] *I laughed*

güldün *you laughed*

(o) güldü *he/she/it laughed*

güldük *we laughed*

güldünüz *you laughed*

güldüler *they laughed*

Indefinite Past (Inferential) Formation

Inference:: *Based on interpretation; not directly expressed.*

The Sign of the Indefinite (Inferential) Past is the addition of the suffix **-miş-** **-müş-** **-muş-** to which the Past Tense Personal suffixes are added.

Past Inferential

Gelmişim [Gel-miş-im]

It seems (they say) I came

Inferential Tense suffixes are added to the Root Verb base.

Continuous Inferential

Geliyormuşum [Gel-iyor-muş-um]

It seems (they say) I am coming

Inferential Tense suffixes are added to the Continuous Tense base.

Future Inferential

Gelecekmişim [Gel-ecek-miş-im]

It seems I would have come

Inferential Tense suffixes are added to the Future Tense base.

Simple Inferential:

Gelirmişim [Gel-ir-miş-im]

It seems I come

Inferential Tense suffixes are added to the Simple Tense base.

Necessitative Inferential

Gelmeliymişim [Gel-meli-ymiş-im]

They say I must come

Inferential Tense suffixes are added to the Necessitative Mood base.

Conditional Inferential

Gelseymişim [Gel-se-ymiş-im]

If only I had come

Inferential Tense suffixes are added to the Conditional Mood base.

The form "must have" has been used to give the sense of inference in these examples by showing that there is a doubt in what we are saying.

There are many ways of modifying our speech in English to show these various nuances of doubt, uncertainty or hearsay.

All these modifications and nuances are inherent in the Turkish Inferential **-miş-** Tense itself so extra words of explanation are not required for inference as in English.

Indefinite Past Tense Examples (-miş)

Indefinite Past: A-UnDotted Vowel Group

The Tense Sign suffix **-miş-** **-mış-** **-müş-** **-muş-** showing English inference as "apparently" and the personal ending are added to the verb stem. Vowel Harmony and Consonant Mutation rules are applied.

Verb Stem "-a-" anlamak *to understand*

anlamışım [anla-mış-ım]
I (apparently) have understood

anlamışsın [anla-mış-sın]
you (apparently) have understood

(o) anlamış [anla-mış]
he must (apparently) understood

anlamışız [anla-mış-ız]
we must (apparently) understood

anlamışsınız [anla-mış-sınız]
you (apparently) have understood

anlamışlar [anla-mış-lar]
they must (apparently) understood

Verb Stem "-ı-" çıkmak *to go out/exit*

çıkışım [çık-mış-ım]
I (apparently) have gone out

çıkışsın
you (apparently) have gone out

(o) çıkmış
he (apparently) have gone out

çıkışız
we (apparently) have gone out

çıkışsınız
you (apparently) have gone out

çıkışlar
they (apparently) have gone out

Verb Stem "-o-" koşmak *to run*

koşmuşum [koş-muş-um]
I (apparently) have run

koşmuşsun
you (apparently) have run

(o) koşmuş
he (apparently) have run

koşmuşuz
we (apparently) have run

koşmuşsunuz
you (apparently) have run

koşmuşlar
they (apparently) have run

Verb Stem "-u-" bulmak to find

bulmuşum [bul-muş-um]
I (apparently) have found

bulmuşsun
you (apparently) have found

(o) bulmuş
he (apparently) have found

bulmuşuz
we (apparently) have found

bulmuşsunuz
you (apparently) have found

bulmuşlar
they (apparently) have found

Indefinite Past: E-Dotted Vowel Group

Showing English Inference as "must have" = "apparently"

Verb Stem "-e-" gelmek to come

gelmişim [gel-miş-im]

I (must) have come

gelmişsin [gel-miş-sin]

you (must) have come

(o) gelmiş [gel-miş]

he/she/it (must) have come

gelmişiz [gel-miş-iz]

we (must) have come

gelmişsiniz [gel-miş-siniz]

you (must) have come

gelmişler [gel-miş-ler]

they (must) have come

Verb Stem "-i-" içmek to drink/smoke

içmişim [iç-miş-im]

I (must) have drunk/smoked

içmişsin

you (must) have drunk/smoked

(o) içmiş

he (must) have drunk/smoked

içmişiz

we (must) have drunk/smoked

içmişsiniz

you (must) have drunk/smoked

içmişler

they (must) have drunk/smoked

Verb Stem "-ö-" görmek to see

görmüşüm [gör-müş-üm]

I (must) have seen

görmüşsün

you (must) have seen

(o) görmüş

he/she/it (must) have seen

görmüşüz

we (must) have seen

görmüşsünüz

you (must) have seen

görmüşler

they (must) have seen

Verb Stem "-ü-" gülmek to laugh

gülmüşüm [gül-müş-üm]

I (must) have laughed

gülmüşsün

you (must) have laughed

(o) gülmüş

he/she/it must have laughed

gülmüşüz

we (must) have laughed

gülmüşsünüz

you (must) have laughed

gülmüşler

they (must) have laughed

Negative Forms of Past Tense

For the **Perfect Past Tense Definite Witnessed** the suffix **-dı- -di- -du- -dü-** is added to the negative verb form.

This suffix mutates to **-tı- -ti- -tu- -tü-** when added to verb roots which terminate in an unvoiced consonant.

For the **Perfect Past Tense Indefinite (Un-witnessed)** the suffix **-mış- -miş- -muş- -müş-** is added to the negative verb form.

Personal pronouns are then added to complete the personalized verb.

Negative Past Definite Witnessed

anlamadım

I didn't understand

I have not understood

anlamadın

you didn't understand

you have not understood

(o) anlamadı

he, she, it didn't understand

he has not understood

anlamadık

we didn't understand

we have not understood

anlamadınız

you didn't understand

you have not understood

anlamadılar

they don't understand

they have not understood

gitmedim

I didn't go

I have not gone

gitmedin

you didn't go

you have not gone

(o) gitmedi

he, she, it didn't go

he has not gone

gitmedik

we didn't go

we have not gone

gitmediniz

you didn't go

you have not gone

gitmediler

they don't go

they have not gone

Negative Past Inferential Un-witnessed

anlamamışım

I have not understood it seems

anlamamışın

you have not understood it seems

(o) anlamamış

he has not understood it seems

anlamamışsınız

we have not understood it seems

anlamamışsınız

you have not understood it seems

anlamamışlar

they have not understood it seems

gitmemişim

I probably did not go

gitmemişsin

you probably did not go

(o) gitmemiş

he probably did not go

gitmemişsiz

we probably did not go

gitmemişsiniz

you probably did not go

gitmemişler

they probably did not go

The inferential suffix in **-miş** is understood in context in Turkish. I can mean "*it seems, it is not known, may be, might be, could be*" and any meaning that cannot be stated as definite.

Definite Past Continuous Tense

This is formed in a similar way to English. The Turkish Forms are suffixed.
Positive Verb stem + Present Tense suffix "**-iyor-**" + Past Tense suffix "**-di-**" + Personal ending.

Definite Past Continuous Positive: *gelmek to come*

geliyordum (gel-iyor-du-m)
I was coming

geliyordun
you were coming

(o) geliyordu
he/she/it was coming

geliyorduk
we were coming

geliyordunuz
you were coming

geliyorlardı
geliyordular
OR *they were coming*

Definite Past Continuous Negative: *gitmemek to not go*

gitmiyordum (gitm-iyor-du-m)
I wasn't going

gitmiyordun
you weren't going

(o) gitmiyordu
he/she/it wasn't going

gitmiyorduk
we weren't going

gitmiyordunuz
you weren't going

gitmiyorlardı
OR gitmiyordular
they weren't going

All the meanings above must be construed as witnessed (definite). It is true.

Questions in the Definite Past Tenses

*The **mi?** question particle follows the full verb in the Past Tense.*

Okula gittin mi?
Did you go to school?

Okula gitmeli miydin?
[-**meli** the Necessitative Mood]
Did you have to go to school?

Henüz Ayşe hanım ders çalıştı mı?
Has Miss Ayshe done her lesson yet?

Henüz Ayşe hanım ders çalışmadı mı?
Hasn't Miss Ayshe done her lesson yet?

Mehmet televizyon seyrediyor muydu?
[television generally, without object pointer]
Was Mehmet watching television?

Mehmet televizyonu seyrediyor muydu?
[a particular television with object pointer]
Was Mehmet watching THE television?

Kemal gazete okudu mu?
["gazete" non-specific object.]
Did Kemal read a newspaper?

Kemal gazeteyi okudu mu?
["gazete-yi" specified object.]

*Did Kemal read **THE** newspaper?*

Kemal bu gazeteyi okudu mu?

[*"bu gazeteyi" demonstrated specific object.*]

*Did Kemal read **THIS** newspaper?*

Serhan içki içti mi?

[*"içki" "alcoholic drink"*]

Did Serhan drink alcohol?

Serhan içki içiyor muydu?

Was Serhan drinking alcohol?

Faruk Ankara'ya gitti mi?

Has Faruk gone Ankara?

Faruk Ankara'ya gidebildi mi?

Was Faruk able to go Ankara?

Definite Past Perfect (Past in the Past).

This tense signifies the Past in The Past.

English says:

"I had done it" Past Perfect Definite.

"I thought I had done it" Past Perfect Indefinite.

The Past Perfect Definite is formed by adding the definite past tense suffix to the Indefinite Past Tense **-miş** form of the verb.

There is no hearsay or doubt in the meaning of this tense as it is made definite and specific by the addition of the Past definite suffix in **-di**.

gelmiştim [gelmiş-tim]

I had come

unutmuştun [unutmuş-tun]
you had forgotten

yürümüştü [yürümüş-tü]
he had walked

bilmiştik [bilmiş-tik]
we had known

çıkıştınız [çıkış-tınız]
you had gone out

anlamıştılar [anlamış-tılar]
they had understood

Indefinite Past Perfect. (Past in the Past)

The Past Perfect Indefinite is formed by adding the indefinite past tense suffix **-miş** to the Indefinite Past Tense "-miş" form of the verb.

There is hearsay or doubt in the meaning of this tense as it is made indefinite and unspecific by the addition of the Past Indefinite suffix in **-miş**.

In English this tense can be translated as:

I believe that he had gone.

We think that he had arrived.

Presumably the train had been on time.

All showing some uncertainty or lack of prior knowledge.

This tense is widely used on a daily basis in spoken and written Turkish.

We can show some of the (English) shades of meaning by example:

çıkışmışım

I think that I had gone out
[doubt]

çıkılmışmışsın

Presumably you had left

[possibility]

çıkılmışmış *He had left as far as I know*

[reportative]

çıkılmışmışsınız

I think that we had left

[uncertainty]

çıkılmışmışsınız

They say that you had gone out

[hearsay]

çıkılmışmışlar

It was pretty sure that they had left

[probability]

These show that this tense is used whenever the speaker has not been an eyewitness to the past events.

Mehmet çıktı mı?

Has Mehmet gone out?

We could answer in the Past Definite Tense:

O çıktı. *He has gone out.*

meaning "Yes he has gone out for sure, I saw him go."

Or we may answer in the Past Inferential Tense:

O çıkmış. *He has gone out.*

meaning "As far as I know he has left, but I did not actually see him go myself."

All this meaning is within the **-miş** Inferential Past Tense itself.

Negative Indefinite Past Perfect

yapmamak [yapma-mak] *to not do*

The words "I think that" and the other bracketed words are not required in Turkish. The Inferential **-miş** is used instead.

Ben yapmamışım ki.

(I think that) I did not do it.

Sen yapmamışsın ki.

(They say that) You did not do it.

O yapmamış ki.

(It seems that) He did not do it.

Biz yapmamışız ki.

(They say that) We did not do it.

Siz yapmamışsınız ki.

(It is reported that) You did not do it.

Onlar yapmamışlar ki.

(Apparently) They did not do it.

(but they might have done it.)

Here "ki" is an object "it, that" which completes the sentence by providing an object for a transitive verb.

Indefinite Past Questions

Positive Interrogative Inferential

The English inference shown does not need to be said in Turkish as it is understood in the **-miş** suffix.

The Personalized Interrogative Particle **-mi -mı -mü -mu** is written separately and follows the verb.

Onu yapmış mıyım?

Have I done it? [I wonder]

Did I do it? [I'm not sure]

Onu yapmış mısın?

Have you done it? [at all]

Did you do it? [anyrate]

Onu yapmış mı?

Has he done it? [then]

Did he do it? [yet]

Onu yapmış mıyız?

Have we done it? [I wonder]

Did we do it? [I'm not sure]

Onu yapmış mısınız?

Have you done it? [at all]

Did you do it? [any rate]

Onu yapmışlar mı?

Have they done it? [surely]

Did they do it? [yet]

Negative Interrogative Inferential

There are many ways of showing inference in English, even the tone of the voice can be enough.

The examples above and below to show doubt, uncertainly and lack of prior knowledge, to which the Turkish Inferential Tense already inherently contains within itself.

Onu yapmamış mıyım?

Haven't I done it? [I wonder]

Didn't I do it? [I'm not sure]

Onu yapmamış mısın?

Haven't you done it? [at all]

Didn't you do it? [any rate]

Onu yapmamış mı?

Hasn't he done it? [then]

Didn't he do it? [yet]

Onu yapmamış mıyız?

Haven't we done it? [I wonder]

Didn't we do it? [perhaps not]

Onu yapmamış mısınız?

Haven't you done it? [at all]

Didn't you do it? [any rate]

Onu yapmamışlar mı?

Haven't they done it? [surely]

Didn't they do it? [yet]

Çıkılmış mı?

Has he (seemingly) left?

[would you know? possibility.]

Gülmüşler mi ? Did they laugh? (at all?)

[a question asking for a report.]

Onu yapmamış mısınız?

Haven't you done it?

[at all? uncertainty.]

Onu yapmamış mısınız?

You haven't (gone and) done it have you?

[doubt and incredulity]

Indefinite Past Continuous

This Tense is used regularly in Turkish whereas in English its use is occasional.

Formed with the Negative Verb Stem + Present Tense suffix **-iyor-** + Inferential Tense suffix **-miş-** + Personal ending.

Positive Inferential *bilmek to come*

biliyormuşum [bil-iyor-muş-um]
(it seems that) I was knowing

biliyormuşsun
you were knowing

(o) biliyormuş
he/she/it was knowing

biliyormuşuz
we were knowing

biliyormuşsunuz
you were knowing

biliyorlarmış
OR **biliyormuşlar**
they were knowing

Negative Inferential *okumamak to not read*

okumuyormuşum [okum-uyor-muşum]
(it seems that) I wasn't reading

okumuyormuşsun
you weren't reading

(o) okumuyormuş
he/she/it wasn't reading

okumuyormuşuz
we weren't reading

okumuyormuşsunuz
you weren't reading

okumuyorlarmış
OR okumuyormuşlar
they weren't reading

The meaning is indefinite and un-witnessed "It may or may not be true".

anlamamak to not understand

anlamıyormuşum
it seem that I was not understanding

anlamıyormuşsun
it seem that you were not understanding

anlamıyormuş
it seem that he was not understanding

anlamıyormuşuz
it seem that we were not understanding

anlamıyormuşsunuz
it seem that you were not understanding

anlamıyorlarmış
OR anlamıyormuşlar
it seem that they were not understanding

gitmemek not to go

gitmiyormuşum

I do not think that I was going

gitmiyormuşsun

I do not think that you were going

gitmiyormuş

I am pretty sure that he is not going

gitmiyormuşuz

I think that we are not going

gitmiyormuşsunuz

I believe that you are not going

gitmiyorlarmış

OR **gitmiyormişlar** *apparently they are not going*

almak *to take*

Definite Positive: **aldı** *he took*

Indefinite Positive: **almış** *probably he took* **almamak** *to not take*

Definite Negative: **almadı** *he did not take*

Indefinite Negative: **almamış** *he probably did not take*

aramak *to look for*

aradı **aramadı**

aramış **aramamış**

bitmek *to end*

bitti **bitmedi**

bitmiş **bitmemiş**

içmek *to drink/smoke*

içti **içmedi**

içmiş **içmemiş**

başlamak *to start*

başladı **başlamadı**

başlamış **başlamamış**

çalışmak *to work*
çalıştı çalışmadı
çalışmış çalışmamış

gelmek *to come*
geldi gelmedi
gelmiş gelmemiş

görmek *to see*
gördü görmedi
görmüş görmemiş

gülmek *to laugh*
güldü gülmedi
gülmüş gülmemiş

kızmak *to get angry*
kızdı kızmadı
kızmış kızmamış

okumak *to read*
okudu okumadı
okumuş okumamış

vermek *to give*
verdi vermedi
vermiş vermemiş

yapmak *to do/make*
yaptı yapmadı
yapmış yapmamış

A Joke in the Inferential Tense.

This is not a true event and the use of the inferential shows this.

Temel İngiltere'ye gitmişti.

It seems Temel had gone to England.

Arkadařları Temel'e İngilizce bilmezdin İngiltere'de çok sıkıntı çektin mi? demiřler.

Temel's friends said "You didn't know English. In England did you have a lot of trouble?"

Temel Hayır, sıkıntıyı asıl İngilizler çekti, demiř.

Temel said "No. It was the English who had the trouble."

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 21 : The Conditional Mood



The Conditional Tenses

In English the Conditional Tenses are formed with that very important little word "if"

Conditional "if" sentences are often introduced with the word **eğer** *if*, and less commonly **şayet** *lest, unless*.

In Turkish **eğer** and **şayet** are conditional pointers.

They alert the listener that a Condition and Result are following.

They do not have any direct meaning, they are "alerters".

Condition and Result Real and Unreal

We recognize and use Conditional Sentences with ease in our Mother Tongue, English.

Conditional Sentences are not so easy to recognize in Turkish as they appear as a Mood of the verb itself.

If we leave at noon, we will arrive on time.

If you pass the exam, I shall give you a present.

If you had passed the exam, I would have given you a present.

Unless you pass the exam, you can not apply for a university place.

Unless you work hard, you will not be successful.

Take whichever one that you want.

If you want that one then take it.

There are many ways of introducing the Conditional in English "*if, if ever, whenever, whatever, whichever, however*" and the simple forms "*when, what, which, how*".

In the negative "*if not*" can be replaced with "*unless*" and the older "*lest*."

All the mood forms of the verb can be used "*can, must, would, might, may, should*".

The same is true for Turkish.

The Real Conditional

This is used to express condition and result based on fact in both the Present and the Future.

Eğer erken kalkarsan, kahvaltıyı yapabilirsen.

If you get up early, you can make the breakfast.

Eğer erken kalkarsan, bizi beklersin.

If you get up early, wait for us.

Eğer sana yardım edebilirsem, memnun olacağım.

If I can help you, I will be happy.

The Unreal Conditional

Is used to express unreal results or wishes and desires in the Present and Future.

Şayet çok antrenör edemezsen, asla koşu kazanmayacaksın.

If you do not train a lot, you will never win the race.

Şayet sigaradan vazgeçersen, daha sıhhatli kendi kendine hissedersin.

If you give cigarettes up you will feel healthier.

The Past Conditional

Is used to state Conditions in the Past that did not happen. Often use to express criticism or regret.

(Eğer) Erken kalksaydın, bizi bekleyecektin.

If you had got up early, you would have waited for us.

(Şayet) Kötü hava olmasaydı, çarşıya gidecektik.

If the weather had not been bad, we would have gone to the shops.

Bu lokantaya gelmeseydim, senle görüşemedim.

If I had not come to this cafe, I would not have met you.

O lokantaya gitseydim, senle görüşürdüm.

If I had gone to that cafe, I would have met you.

The "alerters" **Eğer** [positive] and **Şayet** [negative] are often omitted in conversation.

The changes of tense and mood of the verbs show the meaning in English.

The same is true for Turkish, the correct tenses and moods of condition and result must be used to adequately communicate the correct meaning of the statement.

English uses its normal tenses and the condition is produced by insertion of that little word "if".

Turkish however, together with many other languages, has a special Conditional Tense Form.

The Conditional Suffix.

The Turkish Conditional is characterized by the suffix -se- or -sa- according to Vowel Harmony rule.

The positive is **var**

there is, there are which becomes **varsa**

if there is, if there are with the addition of the **-sa** Conditional Suffix.

The negative is based on **yok**
there isn't, there aren't which becomes **yoksa**
if there isn't, if there aren't

Paranız varsa bana verin.

If you have (any) money (then) give it to me.

Bir taksi yoksa burada kalalım.

If there isn't a taxi (then) let's stay here.

The Conditional Tenses of verbs are formed by adding the Conditional Personal endings to the **-se-** or **-sa-** suffix to the verb in any suitable tense or mood.

The mark of the Conditional Suffix follows Vowel Harmony Rules, therefore there are two forms **-se** or **-sa** to choose from.

Person E-Dotted A-UnDotted

If I -sem -sam

If you -sen -san

If he -se -sa

If we -sek -sak

If you -seniz -sanız

If they -seler -salar

The Conditional suffix is added to tenses and moods.

yaparsam

[yap-ar-sam]

if I do

giriyorsan

[gir-iyor-san]

if you are entering

kesilecekse

[kes-il-ecek-se]

if it will be cut, if it is to be cut

anlaşmasaydık

[anlaşma-sa-ydık]

if we have not agreed

mutlu olmayacaksınız

[olma-y-acak-sa-nız]

if you will not be happy

gelebilecekler

[gel-ebil-ecek-se-ler]

if they will be able to come

gelemezsem

If I cannot come

yazabilirsen

If you can write

gülse

If he laughs

içsek

If we drink

görebilerseniz

If you can see

yapmalısalar

If must they do

Conditional Tense: Simple Actual

gelsem

if I were to come

gelsen

if you were to come

gelse

if he were to comes

gelsek

if we were to come

gelseniz

if you were to come

gelseler

if they were to come

Conditional Tense: Present Continuous

geliyorsam

if I am coming

geliyorsan

if you are coming

geliyorsa

if he is coming

geliyorsak

if we coming

geliyorsanız

if you are coming

geliyorsalar

if they are coming

Conditional Tense: Simple Habitual

gelirsem

if I (usually) come

gelirsen

if you (usually) come

gelirse

if he (usually) comes

gelirsek

if we (usually) come

gelirseniz

if you (usually) come

gelirseler

if they (usually) come

Conditional Tense: Future Intention

geleceksem

if I (will) come

geleceksen

if you (will) come

gelecekse

if he (will) come

geleceksek

if we (will) come

gelecekseniz

if you (will) come

gelecekseler

if they (will) come

Conditional Tense: Real Past

geldiysem

if I came

geldiysen

if you came

geldiyse

if he came

geldiysek

if we came

geldiyseniz

if you came

geldiyseler

if they came

Conditional Tense: Unreal Past

gelseydim

If only I had come

gelseydin

If only had come

gelseydi

If only had come

gelseydik

If only we had come

gelseydiniz

If only you had come

gelseydiler

If only they had come

Conditional Negative Tenses

Conditional Tense: Negative Simple Actual

gelmesem

if I were not to come

gelmesen

if you were not to come

gelmese

if he were to not comes

gelmesek

if we were not not come

gelmeseniz

if you were not to come

gelmeseler

if they were not to come

Conditional Tense: Negative Present Continuous

gelmiyorsam

if I am not coming

gelmiyorsan

if you are not coming

gelmiyorsa

if he is not coming

gelmiyorsak

if we are not coming

gelmiyorsanız

if you are not coming

gelmiyorsalar

if they are not coming

Conditional Tense: Negative Simple Habitual

gelmezsem

if I (usually) do not come

gelmezsen

if you (usually) do not come

gelmezse

if he (usually) do not comes

gelmezsek

if we (usually) do not come

gelmezseniz

if you (usually) do not come

gelmezseler

if they (usually) do not come

Conditional Tense: Negative Future

gelmeyeceksem

if I (will) not come

gelmeyeceksen

if you (will) not come

gelmeyecekse

if he (will) not come

gelmeyeceksek

if we (will) not come

gelmeyecekseniz

if you (will) not come

gelmeyecekseler

if they (will) not come

Conditional Tense: Negative Past Real

gelmediysem

if I had not come

gelmediysen

if you had not come

gelmediyse

if he had not come

gelmediysek

if we had not come

gelmediyseniz

if you had not come

gelmediyseler

if they had not come

Conditional Tense: Negative Past Unreal

gelmeseydim

If only I had not come

gelmeseydin

If only you had not come

gelmeseydi

If only he had not come

gelmeseydik

If only we had not come

gelmeseydiniz

If only you not had come

gelmeseydiler

If only they had not come

Conditional Examples in other Tenses

There are other tense form (such as the Inferential Tense) which are used in conditional sentences.

The **-se-** or **-sa-** form of the verbal suffix is used for conditional "if"

Erken varırsanız, beklemelisiniz.

If you arrive early, you will have to wait.

Erken varırsanız, beklersiniz.

If you arrive early, you would have to wait.

Erken varsaydınız, bekleyecektiniz.

If you had arrived early, you would have had to wait.

Sana yardım edebilirlerse, yardım edecekler.

They will help you if they can.

Sana yardım etseler, yardım ederler.

They would help you if they could.

Sana yardım edebilseydiler, (yardım) ederlerdi.

They would have helped you if they could have.

Fazla içersen sarhoş olursun.

If you drink too much you get drunk.

Çok çalışmazsan, sınavı geçemeyeceksin

Unless you work hard you will not be able to pass your test.

Sigara içmeyi bırakırsan, daha uzun yaşarsın.

If you stop smoking you will live longer.

Yağmur yağmasaydı dışarı çıkacaktık.

We would have gone out if it had stopped raining.

Eğer buradan gitseydim sana yazardım.

If I had gone away, I would have written to you.

Verbs of Condition

There are some verbs in the Turkish vocabulary that already have a "conditional feeling" within themselves.

They can be recognized as they contain **-sa-/-se-** conditional sign within the verb stem itself.

The meaning of these verbs is best translated as *"to regard as + verb"*.

An example of this effect is the verb **gülümsemek** *to smile* which becomes **gülümsiyorum**; *I am smiling*.

The "conditional sign" **-se-** is part of the verb stem, so the verb itself can have the meaning *"to regard as laughing"*.

This method can be applied to form other conditional-type verb stems.

küçümsemek

to belittle

[to consider as small]

kötümsemek

to disparage

[to consider as bad]

benimsemek

to appropriate

[to consider as personal]

çekimsemek

to refrain from

[to consider as absent]

gereksemek

to consider as necessary

hafifsemek

to take s.o lightly

[to consider as light]

yakınsamak

to converge

[to consider as nearing]

umursamak

to care

[to have consideration]

çıkarsamak

to infer, to deduce

[to consider as resulting in]

Although this is not really part of the conditional tense itself, it is mentioned here as an aid for understanding when reading Turkish.

These verbs can also appear in their true Conditional Mood:

Gülümsüyorsam.

If I am smiling.

Onu gereksemiyorsak.

If we do not consider it necessary.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 22 : Auxiliary Verbs



Auxiliary (Helping) Verbs

There are two main auxiliary verbs in Turkish:

(1) **etmek** *to do, to make, to perform*. This auxiliary is used to make Active Tenses.

Babamı mutlu ettim.

I made my father happy.

(2) **olmak** *to be, to become, to happen, to occur*. This auxiliary is used to make Passive Tenses.

Seni görünce mutlu oldum.

I became happy on seeing you.

Auxiliary verb: etmek *to do/to perform*

etmek makes active verbs from nouns.

telefon etmek *to telephone*

dans etmek *to dance*

şikâyet etmek *to complain*

tereddüť etmek *to hesitate*

zannetmek [also: *zan etmek*] *to suppose*

sabretmek [also: *sabir etmek*] *to be patient*

affetmek [also: *af etmek*] *to pardon*

seyretmek [also: seyir etmek] *to watch*

kaybetmek [also: kayıp etmek] *to lose*

hissetmek [also: his etmek] *to feel*

The auxiliary **-etmek** is directly joined to single syllable word stems otherwise **etmek** is written separately.

The verbs **dans etmek** and **park etmek** are irregularities, being added to a foreign imported word and are written separately.

etmek is also used with many Arabic and Persian words to form verbs where none exist in modern Turkish:

teşekkür (arabic) *a thanking*

teşekkür etmek *to thank somebody*

teşekkür ederim (I) *thank you*

Many Arabic words do not follow the rules of vowel harmony within themselves but any Turkish suffixes added will always be governed by the final vowel in the word, although there are a few exceptions to this.

One we have already met **saat** *hour* becomes **saatler** *hours*.

Sometimes in Turkish there are two words in general use for the same meaning, one Arabic using **etmek** to form its verb, whilst the Turkish rooted word will follow normal rules of conjugation: **tamir etmek** [arab] *to repair* or **onarmak** [turk] *to repair* **kara** [turk] *black* or **siyah** [arab] *black*

yıl [turk] *year* or **sene** [arab] *year*

Auxiliary Uses of etmek

1. "to do, make, perform" **servis etmek** *to serve*

2. "to do well or badly" **iyi etmek** *To do well*

iyi ettin!

you did well!

iyi etmedin!

you did not do well!

3. "to equal (in numbers)"

Beş üç daha sekiz eder.

5 plus three makes 8

4. "to be worth"

Bu masa yüz elli bin eder.

This table is worth 150,000.

5. "to amount to"

Toplam yüz elli lira ediyor.

The total amounts to 150 lira.

Single Syllable Verb Roots with "etmek"

If verbs are formed with a single syllable root then **etmek** is affixed directly to that root, which if it ends in a consonant will generally double that consonant.

af *pardon* [Arabic]

affetmek *to beg pardon*

affedersiniz! *Pardon!*

ret *a refusal* [Arabic]

This Arabic root takes a doubled "-dd" when adding a verb form

reddetmek *to refuse*

reddederim! *I refuse!*

etmek as a Verb of Completion.

Its basic meaning when it is used alone, is *to do, perform, commit an action* as in **intihar etmek** *to commit suicide*.

kastetmek *to intend, to mean*

bahsetmek *to mention*

terketmek (terk etmek) *to leave, to quit*

yardım etmek *to help, to aid*

kabul etmek *to accept*

farketmek (fark etmek) *to notice, to realize*

Etmek is also used to make Turkish verbs from imported foreign words.

izole etmek *to isolate, to insulate*

Şu fişi izole ettim.

I have isolated that plug.

download etmek *to download*

Bunu da download edelim.

Let's download this as well.

farketmek [fark etmek] *to notice, to realize*

O köşeyi farketmedim [fark etmedim] *I did not notice that corner.*

Park etmek *to park a car*

Arabayı tam buraya park etmiştim.

I had just parked my car right here.

park yapmak is also found. Turkish has not yet settled on which auxiliary verb to use in this case.

Although **etmek** is an auxiliary verb, it is not used like the auxiliary verbs in English.

English: *Are you coming to the party tonight? Yes I am.*

The English short answer includes only *I am* without the verb "coming".

Turkish: **Bu akşamki partiye geliyor musun? Evet geliyorum.**

Turkish has to include the **geliyorum** verb since it does not include an auxiliary

like the "to be" verb of English.

English: *Did you accept this after all? Yes I did.*

The short answer in English is *I did* without the verb "accept".

Turkish: **Herşeye rağmen kabul ettin mi onu? Evet ettim.**

The short answer in Turkish is **ettim** without the noun "kabul". In this case **etmek** can be used alone as a short answer.

Etmek and Vowel Harmony

etmek being a verb in its own right does not change its own vowels when suffixed to Turkish or foreign roots.

When it is used as an auxiliary to nouns of more than one syllable then it is written separately and conjugated in the normal manner: **Etmek forms transitive verbs**

Transitive verbs have an Object

ayıp *a shaming*

ayıp etmek *to cause/make a shame*

Onun için Mehmet bana ayıp etti.

Because of it/that Mehmet shamed me.

["ayıp etmek" takes a Motion Toward (Dative Object). In this case "bana to me"]

teslim *a delivering* [Arabic]

teslim etmek *to deliver*

Mektubu teslim ettim.

I delivered the letter.

Koliyi teslim ettirdiniz.

["et-tir-mek" Causative Verb form]

You had the the parcel delivered.

tamir *a repairing* [Arabic]

tamir etmek *to repair*

Onu tamir etsek.

If we repair it/that.

Onu tamir edemem.

I can't repair it/that.

kontrol *a checking* [Eng. Fr.]

kontrol etmek *to check*

Onu kontrol ettiler.

They checked it/that.

Onu kontrol edebilir misiniz?

Would you check it/that?

ret *a refusing* [Arabic]

reddetmek *to refuse*

Onu reddedeceğiz.

We shall refuse it/that

Onu reddedelim.

Let's refuse it/that

takdir *an appreciation* [Arabic]

takdir etmek *to appreciate*

Ahmet, onu takdir etti.

Ahmet appreciated it/that.

Ali, onu takdir edememiş.

(Probably) Ali couldn't have appreciated it/that.

Active and Passive Auxiliaries

etmek to do, to perform, to make forms verbs which are transitive (ie verbs which have a direct object), whereas the use of **olmak** to be, to become causes the same verb to be intransitive (ie. a verb which does not have an object).

Examples with the passive auxiliary verb **edilmek**.

Using the passive form causes the sense to become intransitive.

teslim a delivering,
teslim etmek to deliver.[Active]

Ali, mektubu teslim etti.
Ali delivered the letter.
[Active with **mektubu** in the objective case.]

teslim edilmek to be delivered [Passive]

Dün teslim edildi.
It was delivered yesterday.

Mektup teslim edildi.
The letter has been delivered
[Passive with **edilmek** and **mektup** as the subject]

tamir edilmek to repair [passive]

O tamir edilecek
It (as subject.) will be repaired

O tamir edilemedi.
[ed-il-e-me-di]
It (as subject) could not have been repaired.

kontrol edilmek to be checked
O kontrol edildi.
It has been checked.

Onu kontrol edilebilecek mi?

[ed-il-ebil-ecek mi?]
Can it be repaired?

ret *a refusing*
reddedilmek *to be refused*

Ben, reddedildim.
I was refused

O, reddedilince.
On it being refused

takdir *an appreciation*
takdir edilmek *to be appreciated*

Ahmet, takdir edildi.
Ahmet was appreciated

Ali, takdir edilecek .
Ali will be appreciated.

olmak to be/become

*The Passive can be formed with the Passive of **etmek, edilmek** but is often replaced by the verb **olmak** to become or its Passive Form **olunmak** to become without any change in meaning.*

This verb meaning *to be/to become* is also used as an auxiliary with foreign loan words. It is also attached directly to single syllable roots or written separately when used with roots of more than one syllable.

It does not change its own vowels as it is a verb in its own right.
One of its most important auxiliary functions is its use as the Future Tense and Potential Mood of the verb *to be* **hazır** *ready*

hazırım.
I am ready.
hazır olacağım.[Future]
I shall be ready.

zengin *rich*

zenginsiniz

you are rich

zengin olsaydınız [Conditional]

If you had been rich.

yoksul *poor*

O yoksul

he is poor

O yoksul olabilir. [Potential]

He may be poor.

The Passive use of olmak

When used with loan word to form verbs it gives the sense of *being in a state of*
pişman *a regretting*

Pişman oldum .

I regret/I was sorry.

fena *bad/ill*

Fena oluyorum .

I feel ill.

memnun *pleased/happy*

Memnun oldum.

I'm pleased/happy

[Lit: I was pleased/happy]

Other Auxiliaries

yapmak *to do as an action*

Hatalar yaptım!

I made some mistakes!

gelmek *to come*

Geri geldim.

I came back!

kalmak *to remain/stay*

[Continuative Auxiliary - see below]

Uyuyakaldım!

I kept on sleeping!

bulunmak *to be found/to be*

[Passive of **bulmak**]

Kitap çekmecedeki bulunurmuş.

The book will probably be found in the drawer!

eylemek *to carry out* [equates with **etmek** but not common.]

It can be used as a substitute for **etmek** and serves the same purpose.

It is usually restricted to the written word and is seldom used in conversation.

demek *to say*

Pes demek *to give in*

Bir dur demek *to draw the line at*

Ne demek? *what does it mean?*

dilemek *to wish*

Özür dilemek *to apologize*

Başarı dilemek *to wish success to s.o.*

Dilek dilemek *to make a wish*

Başsağlığı dilemek *to sympathize*

söylemek *to speak*

Şarkı söylemek *to sing*

Yalan söylemek. *to tell a lie,*
Şaka söylemek *to make a joke*

durmak *to stop/to keep on doing*
Bakadurmak *to keep on looking,*
Çalışadurmak *to keep on trying*

vermek *to give* is used as an Accelerative Auxiliary thus speeding the action of the verb.

Yapıverdim onu! *I did it quickly!*

yazmak *to write* [but means "almost to" when used as an auxiliary verb]
Düşeyazdım. *I almost fell down.*

Continuative Verbs

-akalmak "continue, keep on doing"
-adurmak "continue, keep on doing"
-ayazmak "almost to"
-ivermek "to act hurriedly, urgently"

Only the first vowel follows the vowel harmony rules. Hence "-ekalmak, -edurmak, -eyazmak, -ivermek, -uvermek, -üvermek etc".

As these are verbs in their own right they retain their spelling. This is similar to the Potential Verb Suffix "-abilmek/-ebilmek"

kalmak and **durmak** are used to form a continuing action of the main verb giving the sense *to keep on doing* or *to remain in a condition of*.

To form the Continuative Verb the Infinitive of **kalmak** or **durmak** is added directly to the Wish and Desire (subjunctive) Root of the main verb (See Ch. 29).

The "Wish and Desire" Root is formed by suffixing **-e** or **-a** to the basic Verb Stem **yüzmek** *to swim* becomes **yüze-**
Similarly **bakmak** *to look* becomes **baka-**

The Continuative Mood is then formed with the direct addition of **kalmak** *to remain*

yüzekalmak
[yüz-e-kalmak]
to keep on swimming

Yüzekaldı
[yüz-e-kal-dı]
He kept on swimming

alakalmak
to keep on taking

Alakalacağım.
I will keep on taking.

durakalmak
to keep on stopping

Durakalıyorsun
You keep on stopping

beklemedurmak
to keep on waiting

Beklemedurabilecek misiniz?
Will you be able to keep on waiting?

uyuyakalmak
to oversleep

Uyuyakaldım
I overlept.

kalakalmak

to stand aghast, to be astounded

Kalakaldım.

I was astounded.

donakalmak

to petrify

Donakaldım.

I was petrified, I was scared stiff

düşeyazmak

to almost fall down/stumble

Düşeyazdım.

I almost fell down.

The Accelerative Verb

The Wish and Desire Mood. See Ch. 29

The Wish and Desire Mood Sign is **-a** or **-e** which is added to the basic verb stem according to Vowel Harmony Rules.

If the bare verb stem ends in a vowel then the Mood Sign becomes **-ya** or **-ye** (Uses buffer letter **-y-**) The verb **vermek** *to give* can also be added to the **-a** OR **-e** verb stem and in this case it gives a sense of urgency and speed of action to the main verb. In this case **vermek** loses its meaning "*to give.*"

When adding the auxiliary **vermek** the **-a/-e** ending often abrades according to vowel harmony rules.

As an example: **koşa-** [the "Wish Desire" root of **koşmak** *to run*] follows vowel harmony and abrades to **koşuvermek** [koş-u-vermek]

The Accelerative Mood is then formed with the direct addition of the verb **vermek** which implies "*to get a move on*"

koşmak *to run* becomes **koşuvermek** *to hurry up and run*

yazmak *to write* becomes **yazıvermek** *to scribble/scrawl*

Koşuverin! [Imperative]
Hurry up and run!

İçkisini içiverdi.
He gulped his drink down,

Gelivereceğim.
I'll dash along and come,

When adding the Accelerative **vermek** to a verb then the vowel ending **-e** narrows to **-i** or **-ü**

güle becomes **gülüverin** *Laugh!*

kese becomes **kesiverin** *Cut (it)!*

The ending **-a** narrows to **-ı** or **-u** thus:

baka becomes **bakıverin** *Look!*

tuta becomes **tutuverin** *Get hold!*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 23 : The Imperative Mood



The Imperative

The Imperative Mood is used in issuing commands. It is formed by using the verb in its simplest root form: "Listen!, Sit!, Eat!"

The Imperative Mood in English occurs only in the second person but "you" is usually not stated.

Whenever the speaker gives a command regarding someone else, it is still directed at the second person as though it were a request for permission, although it may be a rhetorical statement.

This Imperative is used for giving direct orders, requests, suggestions and in some cases warnings, or even a mixture of all these to a second person.

(You) Look at that.
[order]

Don't (you) leave your valuables in the car.
[suggestion]

(You) Bring me another fork please.
[request]

(You) Take us to Taksim Square.
[order]

(You) Be careful in the traffic.
[warning]

(You) Get Mehmet to clean the room.
[order via 3rd person]

The Imperative does not seem so abrupt in Turkish as it is in English, and it would be difficult to upset anyone when using the Imperative.

First Person "pseudo" Imperative

*The First Person "pseudo" forms are not true imperatives as this is the mood of "wish and desire" (Ch.29)
These forms are heavily used in daily speech.*

Imperative First Person *let me, let us* -(y)ayım/-(y)eyim

The "pseudo" Imperative in the first person singular adds the suffix **-(y)ayım/-(y)eyim**

almak becomes **alayım** [al-ayım]
let me buy/take

beklemek becomes **bekleyeyim** [bekle-y-eyim]
let me wait.

bakmak becomes **bakayım** [bak-ayım]
let me look.

The first person plural adds **-(y)alım/-(y)elim**

alalım [al-alım]
let us buy/take

bekleyelim [bekle-y-elim]
let us wait.

görelim [gör-elim]
let's see.

This form is in daily constant use. It is often used when shopping **onu alayım!**
I'll take it!

Second Person Imperative

The Second Person *let you*

The Direct (true) Imperative, the second person singular familiar and immediate

for addressing friends or showing urgency.

It is formed using the basic verb stem after dropping the Infinitive Sign **-mek/-mak**.

Positive Verb Familiar

Bak *Look!*

Gel *Come!*

Negative Verb Familiar

Bakma *Don't look!*

Gelme *Don't come!*

Polite and Public Imperative

The Imperative suffix is subject to Vowel Harmony rules.

There are two forms of the second person:

(1) The Formal Imperative is used for addressing strangers or being polite.

It is formed by adding **-(y)in** to the root verb stem. The buffer letter **-y-** is used for verb roots which end in a vowel.

Bakın *Look!*

[positive]

Bakmayın *Don't look!*

[negative]

Gelin *Come!*

[positive]

Gelmeyin *Don't come!*

[negative]

This form is used for addressing one person or a number of people in a group.

In all the above forms the Negative Particle **-me** or **-ma** always remains in its absolute form, it does not close to *-mi* or *-mı* etc. The Verb Stem is always accented in speech.

Public Imperative

The Public Imperative is used in Public Notices, Signs, newspapers and television.

(2) The Public Imperative also is used for being very polite.

It is formed by adding **-(y)iniz** to the root verb stem. The buffer letter **-y-** is used for verb roots which end in a vowel.

Bakınız *Look!*

[positive]

Bakmayınız *Don't look!*

[negative]

Geliniz *Come!*

[positive]

Gelmeyiniz *Don't come!*

[negative]

The Public Form is the most polite of all, and can be used in direct conversation if you wish to be extra polite.

In all the above forms the Negative Particle **-me** or **-ma** always remains in its absolute form.

It does not close to *-mi* or *-mı*

Imperative: Conversational Stress

In conversation there is always heavy vocal stress on the last syllable of the verb stem as shown below in capital letters.

Written: **Yapmayın onu!**

Don't do that!

Spoken: **YAP**mayın onu!
Don't DO that!

Written **Çiçeklere dokun**mayınız!
Don't touch the flowers!

Spoken: **Çiçeklere doKUN**mayınız!
Don't touch the flowers!
(The verb **dokunmak** takes a Dative Object "Çiçekler-e")

Third Person Imperative

The Third Person *let him, her*

(You) Let him do the talking.

(You) Let them build the bridge.

(You) Give him an allowance.

(You) Let sleeping dogs lie.

Turkish uses the second person endings **-sin -sın -sün -sun** and its plural forms **-sinler -sınlar -sünler -sunlar** as a request for the third person imperative by attaching this suffix directly to the Verb stem [Tense signs like **-iyor-** or **-ar** etc. are NOT used]

baksın *(You) let him look*

bakmasın *(You) let him not look*

girsin *(You) let him enter*

girmesinler *(You) let them not enter*

The third person form of verbs widely used especially in "formula speak".

To re-iterate, **-sin** (singular) or **-sinler** (plural) are added directly to the basic verb stem; there is no tense sign intervening.

Although this form of the verb appears to be of the second person in **-sin** it

actually is not. It cannot be construed as so because the **-sin/-sinler** suffix is added directly to the verb stem and not to a verb tense base.

olmak *to become, to happen*

olsun *let it be*

olmasın *let it not be*

Singular Forms **koşmak** *to run*

koşsun *let him run*

koşmasın *let him not run*

Plural Forms **koşmak** *to run*

koşsunlar *let them run*

koşmasınlar *let them not run*

While in the "Hamam" "Turkish Bath" one might say:

Keseci gelsin.

I am ready for the masseur.

[Lit: Let the masseur come]

It can also be in question form:

Keseci gelsin mi?. S

hould the masseur come (now)?

The Third Person Imperative ending is added directly to the verb stem

Yazsın *Let him write*

If it is added to a tense sign as in **yazıyorsun** then it is the Second Person tense sign *You are writing.*

It is easy to get these forms mixed.

Positive Imperative Summary

1st. Singular: **geleyim** *Let me come!*

Kasabaya seninle geleyim.

Let me come with you to the shops.

1st. Plural: **gelelim** *Let us come!*

Bu akşam televizyonu seyredelim.

Let's watch TV this evening

2nd. Familiar: **gel** *Come (you)!*

Buraya gel!

(You) Come (to) here!

2nd. Polite and Plural: **gelin** *(Please) come (you)!*

Girin!

(You, Please) come in!

2nd. Public and Formal: **Durunuz** *(You) Stop, Halt ! (on a "Stop" sign)*

Onu yapınız

(You) Do that!

3rd. Singular: **Partiye gelsin** *(You) Let him come to the party!*

Mehmet, pikniğe arabayı sürsün.

(You) Let Mehmet drive the car to the picnic.

3rd. Plural: **gelsinler** *let them come!*

Kızlar dans etsinler.

Let the girls dance.

Negative Imperative Summary

1st. Singular: **Gitmeyeyim!** *Let me not go!*

Saçımı kestireyim mi kestirmeyeyim mi?

Should I get my hair cut or not? [Let me, Let me not]

1st. Plural: **Gitmeyelim!** *Let us not go!*

Bugün yüzmeyelim. *Let's not go swimming today.*

2nd. Familiar: **Gitme!** *Don't go (you)!*

Sakın ha, onu yapma!

(You) Careful, don't do that!

2nd. Polite: **Girmeyin!** *(Please) Don't come in (you)!*

Sakın ha, onu yapmayın!

(You, please be) Careful, don't do that!

2nd. Public, Formal: **Gitmeyiniz!** *(You) Don't Go!*

Sigara İçmeyiniz

(You) No Smoking! [on a public sign]

3rd. Singular: **Gitmesin!** *let him not go!*

Mehmet, Ayşe'yi öpmesin!

Don't let Mehmet kiss Ayshe!

3rd. Plural: **Gitmesinler!** *Let them not go!*

Çocuklar mesajımı görmesinler!

Don't let the children see my message!

Vowel Harmony operates on the Imperative Suffixes

görsün *let him see!*

alın *Take (you)!*

bulsunlar *let them find!*

bulmasınlar *let them not find!>*

onu yapmayın *Don't do it (you)!*

gülünüz *Laugh (you)!*

Imperative Examples in Daily Conversation

(1) Sağ ol (Sağol), Sağ olun, Sağ olunuz *Thanks very much* [Lit: Be healthy.]

This form is used to thank anyone for extra service over accepted levels.

It is stronger than **Teşekkür ederim** *Thank you.*

If you ask a stranger for the time of day you could answer **Sağol** *Stay healthy!* as a thank you for his trouble.

(2) Eksik olmayın(ız) [Lit: Don't go missing!]

This is used for telling someone you like their company and they should "stick around".

(3) Sakın!, Sakınınız!, *Be careful! Watch out! Protect yourself!*

The Imperative of the reflexive verb **sakınmak** *to avoid, to beware* is used as an interjection to warn or advise.

Sakın ha!

Just mind out!, Just watch it!

Onu yapmaktan sakınınız!

Be careful of doing that!

Sakın bunu bir daha yapma!

Don't you ever do that (this) again!

[This is said to warn somebody of a disaster waiting to happen!]

Sakın! *Mind! Beware!* (UnDotted İ)

sakin (Dotted İ) *calm, quiet, as in Sakin olun! Calm down!, Quieten down!*

(4) Geçmiş olsun! *May it pass (from you)!*

A formula used to people who are ill. *Get better soon!* or to people who have had an accident or encountered a problem in life, *Bad luck!*

(5) Kolay gelsin! *May it come easy!, Take it easy!*

This is usually said to people who are carrying out a duty or their work.

(6) Neden olmasın? *Why let it not be?*

This is the same as *Why not?* in English.

New learners often say "Neden yok" for "Why not?" but this actually means "There is not a reason!"

There are many other Formula Speak with this aspect of the verb in daily use in Turkey and a good dictionary or phrase book will always contain them.

The barber might say to you when he has finished cutting your hair **Sihhatler olsun!** *Good health to you!* said to one after having a bath, a haircut or a shave.

This expression is used wrongly by many people. It should be **Sihhatler olsun.** **Sihhat** is the Arabic for **Sağlık.**

When people say this expression quickly, it sounds like "Saatler olsun" which is incorrect.

The Accelerative Imperative

Another form of the imperative involves the use of an auxiliary verb **vermek** to give (See Ch. 22).

Postaneye koşuverin!

Run to the Post Office!

koşuvermek to run hurriedly

["koşmak to run" + "vermek to give"]

Onu yapiver!

Do it quickly!, Just get it done right now!

[from "yapmak + vermek"]

Imperative Showing Impatience: -sene/-sana

There is another form of the imperative which can be a little petulant or sound impatient.

It may be used if you have been waiting too long or in cases where notice has not been taken.

This form should be used with care by the learner.

It is at first best translated as: *Why do you?* or *Why don't you?*

Formation of the Extended Imperative (Showing Impatience)

The suffix **-sana** or **-sene** is added to the Positive Verb stems, this becomes **-sanıza** or **-senize** when addressing a group of people.

Positive Verb (Impatient Form)

Baksana!

Now look here!

Gelsene!

Come on then! or Come along!

Otursanıza!

Oh DO sit down! or Why don't (you all) sit down!!

Although there is only a Positive Form in Turkish we can sometimes translate it as negative in English to arrive at the meaning.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 24 : The Co-operative Mood



Co-operative and Reflexive Verbs

The Co-operative form of the verb is where the sense given is that the action is performed with another person or persons.

The co-operation may be contrary in meaning.;

"They fought **EACH OTHER**".

In this case Turkish the co-operative form of the verb **vurmak** *to hit* becomes **vuruşmak** meaning *to fight "EACH OTHER"*.

Many verbs in daily are of the co-operative form.

In English it is not always apparent when a verb is co-operative, for instance the verb *to collide*.

You can collide "with a wall" (an active occurrence) or "with another car" (an "in concert" co-operative occurrence).

Turkish does make this distinction:

Active Verb:

çarpmak *to bump, collide*

Bir duvara çarptım.

I bumped a wall.

Co-operative Verb:

çarpmak to bump, collide with.

Bir arabayla çarpıştım.

I collided with a car.

Co-operative Verb Formation

The Co-operative verb sign is **-iş --ış --uş --üş** and **-ş** when added to verb stems ending in a vowel.

Turkish verbs with the **-iş** suffix signifies an action, either with or against, that is done in concert.

Nouns termination with the **-iş** suffix show "a doing together":

giriş an entrance

[an entering in concert"]

çıkış an exit

[a leaving in concert]

öpüş a kiss

Active Verb **vurmak** to hit

ona vurdum. I shot him.

Co-operative Verb **vuruşmak** to hit

Birbirleriyle vuruştular. They fought each other.

When **vurmak** takes Motion Toward suffix **-a/-e** it means to strike, to hit

Mehmet bana vurdu. Mehmet hit me.

Used with the Direct Object suffix **-i -ı -ü -u** it means to shoot dead, to kill

Mehmet kuşu vurdu. Mehmet shot the bird [dead].

Active Verb ;**görmek** to see

Memet'i gördüm. I saw Mehmet.

Co-operative Verb **görüşmek** to see each other/to meet

Mehmet ile görüşeceğim. I'm going to meet Mehmet.

Active Verb **anlamak** *to understand*
Ali'yi anlıyoruz. *We understand Ali.*

Co-operative Verb **anlaşmak** *to understand each other/to agree*
Anlaşıyoruz, değil mi? *We agree, don't we?*
Ali ile anlaşıyoruz. *We agree with Ali.*

"**Birbirleriyle**" "*with each other*" **ile** *with* is often used with co-operative verbs, since the action is performed mutually.

Some verbs with regular use are in their Co-operative form:

anlaşmak *to agree*
[to understand together]

sevişmek *to make love*
[with each other]

öpüşmek *to kiss*
[with each other]

Many Co-operative verb forms are in regular use. **konuşmak** *to speak* and **çalışmak** *to work* show "a doing together".

Reflexive Verb Form

The reflexive form of the verb is used when the action of the verb refers back to the subject as opposed to the object.

This reflexive form of the verb takes suffix **-in -ın -ün -un** or **-n** after verb stems ending in a vowel.

English uses the reflexive pronouns *myself, yourself, ourselves etc.*

In Turkish the feeling of "self" is understood by using the reflexive form of the verb.

Mehmet yıkandı.
[yika -n-di]
Mehmet washed himself.

Other Examples of Reflexive Forms in English

I shaved myself

He washed himself

You have cut yourself

We helped ourselves

The reflexive sign **-n** is the same as the passive form for those verbs whose stems end in a vowel but the context of the sentence is usually enough to make the meaning passive or reflexive quite evident.

Rarely, the **-il** suffix is used for the reflexive meaning. The verb **üzme** is *to make someone sad* and its reflexive/passive **üzülmek** is *to get sad (oneself)*.

Katmak is *to add/join* and its reflexive/passive **katılmak** is *to get added, hence to join, to attend*.

The true passive as an exception is **katılınmak** [kat-ıl-ın-mak] *to be added*
This is a "grey area" between passive and/or reflexive.

Examples of Use for the Reflexive Verb

The verb **yıkamak** *to wash*

Çamaşırı yıkadım.

I washed the shirt.

However if we say *I washed myself, I had a wash* the reflexive form must be used: **yıkandım.**

I had a wash, I washed myself

Similarly the verb **soymak** *to undress*

soymak [Active]

to undress somebody

soyunmak[Reflexive]

to undress oneself

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 25 : The Passive Mood



The Passive Mood

The Passive Mood: signifies that the verb acts upon the **subject** of the sentence:
"The man (subj.) was bitten by the dog."

The Active Mood: signifies that the verb acts on the **object** of the sentence:
*"The dog bit **the man** (obj.)"*

Order of Verbal Mood Suffixes

The order that the suffixes are added to the verb as follows:

1. Reflexive
2. Co-operative
3. Causative
4. Passive

acımak[active]
to feel pain

acınmak [reflexive]
to feel pain in oneself, to grieve

acındırmak (reflexive causative)
to cause to grieve

acındırılmak [reflexive causative passive]
to be made to grieve

tanımak [active]
to know

tanışmak [co-operative]
to know one another

tanıştırmak [co-operative causative]
to introduce

tanıştırılmak [co-operative causative passive]
to be introduced

Negation **-me-** plus ability **-ebil-** and inability **-eme-** can also be added The suffixes: **-iyor-** **-ir-** **-ecek-** **-di-** **-miş-** show the verb tense.

The verb is completed by adding the personal pronoun suffixes.

Active Present Continuous

yapmak *to do*

yapıyorum *I am doing*

Passive Present Continuous

yapılmak *to be done*

yapılıyor *It is being done*

Active Potential Simple Present

yapabilmek *to be able to do*

yapabilirim *I can do*

Passive Potential Simple Present

yapılabilmek *to be able to be done*

yapılabilir *it can be done*

Negative Active Present Continuous

yapmamak *to not do*

yapmıyorum *I am not doing*

Negative Passive Present Continuous

yapılmamak *to not be done*

yapılmıyor *it is not being done*

Negative Passive Potential Future

yapılamamak *to not be able to be done*

yapılamayacak *it will not be able to be done*

Active Future Potential

yapabilmek *to be able to do*

Onu yapabileceğiz *we will be able to do it*

Causative Future Potential Active

yaptırabilmek *to be able to get it done*

Onu yaptırabileceğiz *we will be able to get it done*

Causative Future Potential Passive

yaptırabilmek *to be able to have it done*

Onu yaptırabileceğiz *we will be able to have/get it done*
[yap-tır-abil-eceğ-iz]

There are many other tenses and persons that can be built up using the causative and cooperative verbs in all tenses and persons.

This is one of the difficulties for Turkish learners, to use and recognize the verb forms and their meanings easily.

It takes practice new learners, but it is second nature to a Turkish national.

Verb Forms of the Passive Mood

The Passive Mood signifies that the verb acts upon the subject of the sentence whereas in the Active Mood the verb acts on the object of the sentence.

The Active Sentence

Kemal swept the street yesterday.

The Active Verb with the subject "Kemal" and the object "the street."

The Passive Sentence

The street is been swept by Kemal.

"The street" is the subject and "Kemal" (the person doing the sweeping) is called "the agent".

The Impersonal Passive

The street will be swept every day.

The Passive Verb *The street* is the subject without any agent operating on it.

In the Past Tense:

The street was swept yesterday.

Formation of the Passive

*The Turkish passive verb stem is formed by adding the passive suffix **-il** or **-in** to the basic verb stem.*

The verb stem can be an indicative, co-operative or a causative verb stem.

Passive: Verb stems terminating in a consonant add **-il -ıl -ul -ül** For verbs ending in a consonant (**Except -I**) the suffix **-il** is added to the verb stem.

For those verb stems which themselves end in **-I** then the suffix **-in -ın -ün -un** is added.

Active and Passive Mood Positive

yapmak *to do*

yapılmak *to be done*

bilmek *to know*

[bil-in-mek, Verb stem end in **-I**]

bilinmek *to be known*

kırmak *to break*

kırılmak *to be broken*

düzmek *to arrange*

düzülmek *to be arranged*

Active and Passive Mood Negative

Active and Passive Mood Negative

yapmamak *to not do*

yapılmamak *to be not done*

kesmemek *to not cut*

kesilmemek *to be not cut*

kırmamak *to not break*

kırılmamak *not to be not broken*

Causative and Potential Passive Verbs Positive

The Causative and Co-operative verbs form their Passive with **-il** in the usual way:

yapmak [Active]
to do

yapılmak [Passive]
to be done

yaptırmak [Active Causative]
to have something done

yaptırılmak [Passive Causative]
to be done

yapabilmek [Active Potential]
to be able to do s.o.

yapılabilmek [Passive Potential]
to be able to be. done

Causative and Potential Passive Verbs Negative

yapmamak *not to do*

yapılmamak *not to be done*

yaptırmamak *not to have something done*

yaptırılmamak *to be not done*

yapamamak *not to be able to do s.o.*

yapılamamak *not to be able get s.o. done*

Causative Passive Verb Examples

anlamak

to understand Active Verb

anlatmak

to explain Active Mood Causative

anlatılmak

to be understood Passive Verb Causative

kırmak [Active Verb]

to break [Active Verb]

kırdırmak [Active Mood Causative]

to break something

kırılmak [Passive Verb]

to be broken

[itself in a broken state]

kırılrmak [Passive Mood Causative]

to be broken by somebody

Co-operative Passive Verb Examples

bulmak [Active Verb]

to find

buluşmak [Co-operative Active]

to meet/to find each other

buluşulmak [Co-operative Passive]

to be met/to be found together

anlamak [Active Verb]

to understand

anlaşmak [Co-operative Active]

to agree/to understand each other

anlaşılmak [Cooperative Passive]

to be agreed

çarpmak [Active Verb]

to hit, collide

çarpışmak [Co-operative Active]

to collide with something

çarpışulmak [Co-operative Passive]

to be in collision with something

None of these Causative or Co-operative Verbs have a stem which ends in **-I**, therefore the **-il** passive suffix is used.

From the examples above it can be seen that by the use of short suffixes Turkish can say in one word which would take many more in English.

The use of the differing verb forms is rather difficult at first, but by practice and reading the logic of them quickly becomes clear to the student.

Passive: Verb stems ending in **-L** add **-ın -in -un -ün**

When the verb stem ends in **-L** then the passive mood is formed by the addition **-in**, subject to vowel harmony.

delmek [Active]
to pierce

delinmek [Passive]
to be pierced

bilmek [Active]
to know

bilinmek [Passive]
to be known

almak [Active]
to take

alınmak [Passive]
to be taken

bulmak [Active]
to find

bulunmak [Passive]
to be found

Passive: Verbs whose stem ends in a vowel add **-n**

beklemek [Active]
to wait/to expect

beklenmek [Passive]
to be waited for/to be expected

kapamak [Active]
to close

kapanmak [Passive]
to be closed

yemek [Active]
to eat

yenmek [Passive]
to be eaten

Examples of the Passive

Active Verb

Ali, pencereyi kapadı.
Ali closed the window.

Impersonal Passive Verb

Pencere kapandı.
The window was closed (ie. not open)

Passive Verb

Ali tarafından pencere kapandı.
The window was closed by Ali.

Ali is the agent by which the window was closed. Turkish has a particular construction in the Passive to denote the agent acting on the subject.

For the pronouns *my, your, his, our, their*, the agent (the pronoun itself) is placed in the Ownership Condition (Genitive) and followed by **tarafından** meaning *by*.

All other common and proper nouns, in this case, "**Ali tarafından**" *by Ali* are NOT suffixed by the genitive **-in**

O Pencereyi kapattı.

[Causative Active Impersonal]

He closed the window.

The object is "window" and the verb is Causative Active

Pencere onun tarafından kapatıldı.

[Causative Passive Impersonal]

The window was closed by him.

The pronoun "onun of him" is suffixed with the Ownership condition **onun**

Pencere Mehmet tarafından kapatıldı.

[Causative Passive]

The window was closed by Mehmet.

The subject is "window" and the verb is Causative Passive.

The proper noun "Mehmet" is not suffixed with the genitive **-in** as he is just the agent who is "closing the window".

Passive Examples with the agent as a Pronoun.

Hesap, benim tarafımdan ödenecek.

The bill will be paid by me.

Kitap, onların tarafından yazılacak.

The book will be written by them.

Passive Proper Nouns Examples

The agent is in the Subject Condition (Nominative)

Top, Mustafa tarafından bulundu.

[not: "Mustafa 'nın"]

The ball was found by Mustapha.

Araba, Ali tarafından temizleniyor.

The car is being cleaned by Ali.

If the agent is a Proper Noun it is in the Subject Condition.

If it is a Pronoun the Ownership Condition is used.

In Turkish the Subject of a sentence is usually followed by a comma. This is a good policy to follow when writing Turkish.

If a break is not put after the subject there is the possibility of being misunderstood as nick-names. "Top Mustafa, Fatty Mustapha", "Araba Ali, Taxi Ali" may be nick-names so used.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 26 : The Causative Mood



The Causative Verb

The Causative sense is "to have something done by somebody" English uses "get done by" or "to have done by". Turkish uses a Causative verb form.

The Active Verb

I'm going to clean the car.
[to clean it myself]

The Causative Form

I'll get John to clean the car.
[to get, cause John to clean it.]

Transitive Use of the Causative

One of the duties that the Causative Verb form carries out is to make intransitive verbs (which do not take an object) into a transitive verbs (which do take an object).

The verb **durmak** *to stop/to halt* is such a word:

Araba caddede durdu.

The car stopped in the street.

There is no object in this sentence. The verb is intransitive..

Mehmet, arabayı caddede durdurdu.

Mehmet stopped the car in the street.

The object in this sentence is **arabayı** *the car*. The verb is transitive..

Causative Verb Formation

*The Causative verb stem is usually formed by adding **-dir** to the basic verb stem.*

The suffix follows Vowel Harmony Rules and is subject to Consonant Mutation.

Causative Suffix possibilities due to the above rules are:

-dir/-tir -dır/-tır- -dur/-tur- -dür/-tür-

The resulting causative verb stem can have all mood and tense endings added as required. There are some exceptions to this rule discussed below.

Regular Causative Verb Formation

Most verbs are regular in their causative formation even if they are single syllable and end in an unvoiced consonant.

bakmak [Active Verb]

to look

baktirmek [Causative Verb]

to cause to look

itmek [Active Verb]

to push

ittirmek [Causative Verb]

to cause to push

koşmak [Active Verb]

to run

koşturmak [Causative Verb]

to cause to run

satmak [Active Verb]

to sell

sattirmek [Causative Verb]

to cause to sell

sevmek [Active Verb]
to love

sevdirmek [Causative Verb]
to cause to love

Causative Mood Suffix -k

akmak [Active Verb]
to flow

akıtmak [Causative Verb]
to cause to flow

sarmak [Active Verb]
to hang down

sarkıtmak [Causative Verb]
to hang s.o. up

ürkmek [Active Verb]
to have a scare

ürkütmek [Causative Verb]
to startle

Causative Mood Suffix -ar -er

çıkmak [Active Verb]
to go out/to exit

çıkarmak [Causative Verb]
to send out, to extract

gitmek [Active Verb]
to go

gidermek [Causative Verb]
to send away/to remove/to expel

kopmak [Active Verb]

to snap itself

koparmak [Causative Verb]

to break s.o. off

onmak [Active Verb]

to mend

onarmak [Causative Verb]

to have repaired

Irregular Causative Verb: göstermek

görmek [Active Verb]

to see

göstermek [Causative Verb]

to show

All these are common verbs and should be learnt as irregularities.

Regular Causative Verbs: -dir -tir

gülmek [Active Verb]

to laugh

Ona güldüm

I laughed at him.

["gülmek" takes a Motion Toward object]

Bana güldü.

He laughed at me.

güldürmek [Causative Verb]

to make laugh/cause to laugh

Onu güldürdüm.

I made him laugh

Beni güldürdü.

He made me laugh.

bilmek [Active Verb]

to know

Onu biliyorum.

I know that.

bildirmek [Causative Verb]

to make known

Mehmed' e haberi bildirdik.

We made the news known to Mehmet.

çalışmak [Active Verb]

to work

Bugün çalışıyorum.

I am working today.

çalıştırmak [Causative Verb]

to cause to work

Bugün, Mehmed'e çalıştırıyorum.

I am getting Mehmet to work today.

unutmak [Active Verb]

to forget

Çantamı unuttum.

I forgot my bag.

unutturmak [Causative Verb]

to cause to forget

Mehmet'e çantasını unutturduk.

We've let Mehmet forget his bag.

Causative in the Potential Mood

Onu güldürebilirsiniz.

You can make her laugh

Beni güldüremeyecek.

He will not be able to make me laugh.

Bizi güldüremediler.

They couldn't make us laugh.

Causative in the Necessitative Mood

Mehmet seni güldürmeliydi.

Mehmet must have made you laugh.

Onu yaptırmalıyım.

I must have it done.

Causative Forms in -t

Basic verb Stems ending in a **vowel** or **-r** form their causative by the addition of the suffix **-t** to produce the causative verb stem

oturmak [Active Verb]

to sit

oturtmak [Causative Verb]

to seat somebody

Sıra sıra öğrencileri oturttum.

I seated the students in rows.

anlamak [Active Verb];

to understand

anlatmak [Causative Verb]

to make understand/to explain

Onu Mehmet'e anlattım.

I explained it to Mehmet.

boyamak [Active Verb]
to paint

boyatmak(Causative Verb)
to get something painted

Ön kapımızı boyatmalıyız.
We must get our front door painted.

Single Syllable Causative Verb Forms

Some verbs mainly of a single syllable root form their causative by the addition of **-ır**, that is the initial **-d-** or **-t-** of the causative verb sign is dropped.

This generally happens when the basic verb stem terminates in **-ç** or **-ş** but there are other verbs included in this group.

Some verbs which end in **-ç** or **-ş** take the full **-tir** suffix.

These irregularities is not too great in number of verbs and some of them are fairly common. They are best learned separately.

Irregular Causative Verb List

artmak *to increase*
artırmak *to cause to increase*

batmak *to sink*
batırmak *to cause to sink*

bitmek *to finish*
bitirmek *to finish off*

doğmak *to be born*
doğurmak *to give birth*

doymak *to be filled*
doyurmak *to fill up s.o.*

düşmek *to fall*

düşürmek *to cause to fall/to drop s.o*

geçmek *to pass*

geçirmek *to cause to pass*

göçmek *to move/migrate*

göçürmek *to evict*

içmek *to drink/smoke*

içirmek *to cause to drink*

kaçmak *to escape*

kaçırmak *to miss/let escape*

pişmek *to cook (by itself)*

pişirmek *to cook something*

şaşmak *to be surprised*

şaşırmak *to surprise s.o.*

şişmek *to swell*

şişirmek *to cause to swell*

taşmak *to overflow*

taşırmaq *to cause to overflow*

uçmak *to fly*

uçurmak *to cause to fly*

Causative Transitive Verbs

The Causative makes transitive verb which takes an object out of an intransitive verb which has no object.

Pişmek [Active Verb]

to cook by itself

Yumurta tavada pişiyor.

The eggs are cooking in the pan.

[Intransitive: The eggs are cooking by themselves.]

Pişirmek [Causative Verb]
to cook something

Ali tavada yumurta pişiriyor.

Ali is cooking the eggs in the pan.

[Transitive: Ali (subj.) is cooking the eggs. (obj.)]

This is the reason that the Turkish verb *to eat* is **yemek yemek**.

The first **yemek** is a noun meaning *food* and the second **yemek** is the infinitive verb *to eat*.

Yemek is a transitive verb in Turkish so therefore must always take an object.

In English the verb *to eat* can be transitive, "I ate lunch" or intransitive, "I ate well on while on holiday".

Ali, lokantada yemek yiyor.

Turkish says: *Ali is eating food in the cafe.* [transitive]

English says: *Ali is eating in the cafe.* [intransitive]

Causative Verb differences in English

In Turkish, the causative verb is used when an instrument or a person causes a verb action.

In English the causative verb often differs from the active verb whereas Turkish uses its causative form of the active Form.

anlamak [Active verb]
to understand

Cevabı anladım.

I understood the answer.

anlatmak {Causative verb}
to explain

[Lit: to cause to understand]

Cevabı anlattım.

I explained the answer.

It is sometimes difficult to select the correct English verb in translation from Turkish.

Examples of Different Verb Use in English

to die (Active Verb)
to kill/to murder (Causative Verb)
[Lit: to cause to die]

to see (Active Verb)
to show (Causative Verb)
[Lit: to cause to see]

to halt (Active Verb)
to stop (Causative Verb)
[Lit: to cause to halt]

Causing a Third Party to Act

This is a doubled causative verb formed by adding -t or sometimes -tîr to the regular causative verb.

I made him paint the car.

I got him to paint the car.

I had him paint the car

All the above are translated:
Arabayı ona boyattırdım.
[boya-t-tîr-dım].

In this case we are causing a third party to act as an agent.

In these type of sentences the agent has the -a or -e (indirect object) case endings: *ie.* "I caused FOR him to paint the car".

The verb is basically a doubled causative form "boya-t-tîr-mak".

The doubled causative is used when you get someone else to do the job.

You cause them to have the job done.

Other doubled causatives are formed similarly:

Arabamı garajda tamir ettirdim.

[et-tir-dim] uses a single causative.

I got my car repaired at the garage.

Arabamı garaja tamir ettirttim.

[et-tir-t-tim] uses a doubled causative.

I got the garage to repair my car

anlattırmak

[anla-t-tır-mak]

to have something explained

Şifremi değiştirttim.

[değiş-tir-t-tim]

I had my code changed.

Fenerbahçe Yandex'in logosunu değiştirtti.

[değiş-tir-t-ti]

Fenerbache had the Yandex logo changed.

tamir ettirtmek

[et-tir-t-mek]

to have something repaired

yaptırtılmak [passive mood]

[yap-tır-t-ıl-mak]

to have something done.

If two letters **-tt-** occur together, then they are both pronounced individually.

These forms do crop up quite regularly, especially in newspaper reports about agencies, ministers, governments *etc.* having something carried out by a third party [Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 27 : The Mood of Obligation



Expressing Obligation the Necessitative Mood

Simple Tense of Obligation

I must go

I ought to go

I should go

I have to go

I have got to go

There are a number ways to express obligation in Turkish.

Using the noun **zor** *trouble, difficulty, worry, problem, difficult, hard* produces **zorunda** "*compulsion*" which is used with a suitable verb:

zorunda kalmak

to be left no choice but (to do something)

zorunda olmak

to have to, be obliged to (do something)

It is also used with the verb "to be" suffixes:

oynamak zorundayım

I have to play

oynamak zorunda kaldım

I had to play

oyynamak zorunda oldum

I was obliged to play

oyynamak zorundasın

you have to play

o oynamak zorunda(dır)

he has to play

oyynamak zorundayız

we have to play

oyynamak zorundasınız

you have to play

oyynamak zorundalar

hey have to play

The arabic word mecbur necessary to, need to is also used.

Mecbur demands a Motion Towards Object **-(y)a[-(y)e**

mecbur olmak

to be forced to, be obliged to, have to (do something).

Bakmaya mecbur oldum.

I had to look.

mecbur kalmak

to feel obliged to, feel that one has to (do something)

Bakmaya mecbur kaldım.

I felt (that) I had to look.

mecbur

to commit to do something

düşünmeye mecburum

I should, must, ought to think

düşünmeye mecbursun

you should think

o düşünmeye mecbur

he should think

düşünmeye mecburuz

we should think

düşünmeye mecbursunuz

you should think

düşünmeye mecburlar

they should think

Use of -meli/-mali as a tense mood

The Mood is formed by attaching the **-li** Suffix of Obligation to the short infinitive form (terminal **-k** is dropped) of the verb.

Personal Pronouns *I, you, he, we, you, they* are added to complete person and number.

kitap okumalıyım

I must, have to, should read a book.

kitap okumalısın

you must, have to, should read a book.

Ali kitap okumalı

Ali must, have to, should read a book.

kitap okumalıyız

e must, have to, should read a book.

kitap okumalısınız

you must, have to, should read a book.

onlar kitap okumalı(lar)

they must, have to, should read a book.

In this example "kitap" "book" is not specific, it is any book, a book generally.

If we add the direct object suffix it becomes a specific book

Kitabı okumalıyım.

I must read the book.

O kitabı okumalıyım.

I must read that book.

Use of lâzım *need* as an auxiliary.

lâzım is used with the personalised short infinitive of the verb.

Benim kitap okumam lâzım. *I should read a book.*

[Lit: "My reading a book is needed"];

The Possessive pronoun *my, your, his, etc.* is added to personalize the verb infinitive.

Benim kitap okumam lâzım.

I should read a book

Senin kitap okuman lâzım.

you should read a book

Ali'nin kitap okuması lâzım.

he should read a book

Bizim kitap okumamız lâzım.

we should read a book

Sizin kitap okumanız lâzım.

you should read a book

Onların kitap okuması.

OR Kitap okumaları) lâzım.

they should read a book

Use of gerek *necessity* as an auxiliary.

gerek is used with the personalised short infinitive of the verb.

Benim kitap okumam gerek

I should read a book

[Lit: "My reading book a is necessary"]

The Possessive pronoun *my, your, his, etc.* is added to personalize the verb infinitive.

Benim kitap okumam gerek.

I should read a book

Senin kitap okuman gerek.

you should read a book

Ali'nin kitap okuması gerek.

he should read a book

Bizim kitap okumamız gerek.

we should read a book

Sizin kitap okumanız gerek.

you should read a book

Onların kitap okuması gerek.

Or kitap okumaları) gerek.

they should read a book

The Possessive Personalized **-in** is used with both **gerek** and **lâzım** but not with **-meli,-malı** tense suffix.

Turkish **gerek** is now used in preference to the Arabic **lâzım**, although the latter is often used in daily conversation.

These methods are widely used especially in notices and newspapers, but the verb itself has a Mood of Obligation which is explained below.

There may be some fine differences in meaning and intent within these various methods of expressing obligation, but they can only be learned by experience and observation.

The Simple Mood of Obligation

English has many ways of conveying necessity "I must, I ought to, I should, I have (got) to do it."

All these methods are translated by the **-meli-/-malı-** mood suffix in Turkish.

Each method in English may have a slightly different meaning. These fine meaning are understood "in context" when speaking Turkish.

Obligation Mood A-Dotted Verb

The Short infinitive is formed by dropping the final **-k** from the Full Infinitive thus giving **bakma** [Positive] *to see* and **bakmama** [negative] *not to see*.

Then adding of the UnDotted **-li** Suffix of Obligation we arrive at the necessitative mood verb roots **bakmalı-** for the Positive and **bakmamalı-** for the Negative.

The obligation mood is personalised by adding the personal endings of the verb *to be*

Positive Mood

bakmalıyım

I ought to see/I must see

bakmalısın

You ought to see/You must see

O bakmalı(dır)

He ought to see/He must see

bakmalıyız

We ought to see/we must see

bakmalısınız

You ought to see/you must see

bakmalı(dır)lar

They ought to see/They must see

Negative Mood

bakmamalıyım

I ought not to see

bakmamalısın

You ought not to see

O bakmamalı(dır)

He ought not to see

bakmamalıyız

We ought not to see

bakmamalısınız

You ought not to see

bakmamalı(dır)lar

They ought not to see

Obligation Mood E-Dotted Verb

Adding of the Dotted **-li** Suffix of Obligation we arrive at the necessitative mood verb roots **gitmek** to go becomes **gitmeli-** for the Positive and **gitmemeli-** for the Negative

Positive Statement Present Tense

Ben gitmeliyim

I must go

Sen gitmelisin

You ought to go

O gitmeli(dir)

He, She, It should go

Biz gitmeliyiz

We have to go

Siz gitmelisiniz

You have got to go

Onlar gitmeli(dir)ler

They have to go

Positive Interrogative Present Tense

Ben gitmeli miyim?

Must I go?

Sen gitmeli misin?

Ought you to go?

O gitmeli mi?

Should he go?

Biz gitmeli miyiz?

Have we to go?

Siz gitmeli misiniz?

Have you got to go?

Onlar gitmeliler mi?

Have they got to go?

Negative Statement Present Tense

Ben gitmemeliyim

I must not go

Sen gitmemelisin

You ought not to go

O gitmemeli

He should not go

Biz gitmemeliyiz

We have not to go

Siz gitmemelisiniz

You have not got to go

Onlar gitmemeliler

They have not got to go

Negative Interrogative Present Tense

Ben gitmemeli miyim?

Must I not go?

Mustn't I go?

Sen gitmemeli misin?

Ought you not to go?

Oughtn't you to go?

O gitmemeli mi?

Should he not go?

Shouldn't he go?

Biz gitmemeli miyiz?

Have we not got to go?

Haven't we got to go?/

Siz gitmemeli misiniz?

Have you not to go?

Haven't you got to go?

Onlar gitmemeliler mi?

Have they not got to go?

Haven't they got to go?

Obligation Past Definite

The necessitative past definite relates to an actual situation

I should have gone

He must have gone

Positive Statement Past Tense Definite

Ben gitmeliydim

I must have gone

Sen gitmeliydin

You ought to have gone

O gitmeliydi

He should have gone

Biz gitmeliydik

We had to go

Siz gitmeliydiniz

You had got to go

Onlar gitmeliydiler
They had to go

Positive Interrogative Past Tense Definite

Ben gitmeli miydim?
Must I have gone?

Sen gitmeli miydin?
Ought you to have gone?

O gitmeli miydi?
Should he have gone?

Biz gitmeli miydik?
Had we to go?

Siz gitmeli miydiniz?
Had you got to go?

Onlar gitmeliler miydi?
Had they got to go?

Negative Statement Past Tense Definite

Ben gitmemeliydim
I must not have gone

Sen gitmemeliydin
You ought not to have gone

O gitmemeliydi
He should not have gone

Biz gitmemeliydik
We had not to go

Siz gitmemeliydiniz
You had not got to go

Onlar gitmemeliydiler
They had not got to go

Negative Interrogative Past Tense Definite

Ben gitmemeli miydim?

Must I not have gone?

Mustn't I have gone?

Sen gitmemeli miydin?

Ought you not to have gone?

Oughtn't you to have gone?

O gitmemeli miydi?

Should he not have gone?

Shouldn't he have gone?

Biz gitmemeli miydik?

Had we not got to go?

Hadn't we got to go?

Siz gitmemeli miydiniz?

Had you not got to go?

Hadn't you got to go?

Onlar gitmemeliler miydi?

Had they not got to go?

Hadn't they got to go?

Obligation Past Indefinite

The necessitative past indefinite relates to an assumption

I suppose that I should have gone

I suppose that he should have gone, etc.

Positive Indefinite (presumption)

Ben gitmeliymişim

(I suppose that) I must have gone

Sen gitmeliymişsin

(I believe that) you ought to have gone

O gitmeliymiş

(Presumably) he should have gone

Biz gitmeliymişiz

(In reality) we had got to go

Siz gitmeliymişsiniz

(It seems that) you had to go

Onlar gitmeliymişler

(Probably) they had got to go

Positive Interrogative of Presumption

Ben gitmeli miymişim?

Ought I to have gone? (at all?)

Sen gitmeli miymişsin?

Should you have gone? (possibly?)

O gitmeli miymiş?

(I wonder?) Did he have to go?

Biz gitmeli miymişiz?

(I wonder?) Did we have to go?

Siz gitmeli miymişsiniz?

(It seems that?) Did you have to go?

Onlar gitmeli miymişler?

(Surely by now?) Must they have gone?

Negative Statement of Presumption

Ben gitmemeliymişim

(I suppose that) I must not have gone.

Sen gitmemeliymişsin

(I believe that) you ought not to have gone.

O gitmemeliymiş

(Presumably) he should not have gone.

Biz gitmemeliymişiz

(In reality) we had not got to go.

Siz gitmemeliymişsiniz

(It seems that) you had not to go.

Onlar gitmemeliymişler

(Probably) they did not have to go.

Negative Interrogative of Presumption

Ben gitmemeli miymişim?

Ought I not to have gone? (at all?)

Sen gitmemeli miymişsin?

(I think that?) Should you not have gone?

O gitmemeli miymiş?

(I wonder?) Did he not have to go?

Biz gitmemeli miymişiz?

(I wonder?) Had we not got to go?

Siz gitmemeli miymişsiniz?

(It seems that?) Did you not have to go?

Onlar gitmemeli miymişler?

(Surely?) must they not have gone?

The Verb "Gerekmek"

Gerekmek to need, to want to is a verb in Turkish. It is used in all tenses and moods:

Present Continuous "gerekmek"

Saatimin ayarlanması gerekiyor.

My watch needs adjusting.

Otobüse binmem gerekiyor mu?

Do I have to get on a bus?

Mehmet'e yardım gerekiyor.

Mehmet needs help.

Bir vize gerekiyor mu?

Is a visa necessary?

Kışın kar yağması gerekmiyor mu?

It's supposed to snow in winter, right?

Hakkımda hiçbir şey öğrenmen gerekmiyor.

You do not need to learn anything about me.

Ondan korkmamız gerekmiyor.

We have no need to be frightened of that/it.

Simple Present "gerekmek"

İstanbul'a gitmek gerekmez.

It is not necessary to go to Istanbul.

Bunun üzerinden gümrük ödemeniz gerekir.

Because of this it will be necessary to pay Customs Duty.

Gülmek gerekir bazen

One should laugh sometimes.

On dakika beklemeniz gerekebilir.

It may be necessary for you to wait ten minutes.

Indefinite Past Tense "gerekmek"

Mutlu olmak için mutlu etmek gerekmiş.

In order to be happy it is necessary to make happiness.

Bir bilene sormak gerekmiş.

It seem it is necessary to ask someone who knows.

Çok şey gerekmezmiş mutlu olmaya.

Many things are not needed to become happy.

Sevmek için sebep gerekmezmiş.

No reason is necessary to love.

Hatta kimseye bir şey anlatması gerekmezmiş.
It seems it is not even necessary to let anybody know.

Definite Past Tense "gerekmek"

Kalemler pahalı olunca, ek iş bulma gerekti.
As the items were expensive, a spare time job was necessary.

Öyle olması gerekti.
It had to be like that.

Başarmamız gerekti aslında.
Really, we had to succeed.

Oraya buraya gitmem gerekti.
I had to go here and there.

Senin iyi olduğunu görmem gerekti.
I had to see that you were alright.

Üçüncü kez denemem gerekmedi.
I did not have to try a third time.

Vitesten yukarı çıkmam gerekmedi.
It wasn't necessary to change up (a gear).

Bir defa bile kutusunu açmam gerekmedi.
I did not even have to open the box.

Obligation in the Future

The -meli/-malı necessitative has no future form.

If you want to say in English "I will have to do it", then you cannot use **-meli/-malı** in Turkish.

Instead **gerek, zorunda** is used for the Future

Bunu yapmak zorunda olacağım.

I will have to do this.

Onu yapman gerekecek.

You will have to do that.

Bu adamların adını hatırlamam gerekecek.

I will have to remember these gentlemen's names.

Eşme'ye yeni bir yatak almam gerekecek

I will have to get a new bed for Esme.

İlk önce siteden şifre almanız gerekecektir.

Firstly you must obtain a password from the site.

Boyut değiştirmemiz gerekecektir

We will have to change the dimensions.

Kutuyu bitirdikten sonra yeniden doktorunuza görünmeniz gerekecektir.

After finishing the box it will be necessary to see the doctor again.

Present Participle of Obligation in "-en/-an"

İzlenilmesi gereken bir Film.

A film which must be seen.

Ankara'ya gidince uğranılması gereken bir yer olduğunu düşünüyorum.

I think that it is a place that must be visited when going to Ankara.

Gerçekten öğrenmesi gereken çok şeyler var.

Truly there are many things which are necessary to be learned.

Gümrük vergisi ödenmesi gerekmeyen ki arabamla geldim.

I came in my car for which customs duty was not necessary.

Sebzelerin tüketiminde dikkat edilmesi gereken konusu.

The steps that are necessary for the conservation of vegetables.

Conditional mood "if, whether"

O an ne yapılması gerekiyorsa onu yaparım.
I'll do whatever is necessary to do at that moment.

Eğer gitmem gerekiyorsa giderim
I will go if it is necessary

Her ne gerekiyorsa yaparım
I will do whatever is necessary.

Öyle olması gerekiyorsa öyle olur.
If it has to be like that then let it be so.

Her Türk asker doğar, gerekirse vatan için şehit olur.
All Turks are born soldiers and if necessary will die as a martyr for the country.

Kısaca anlatmak gerekirse böyle onu yazayım.
Let me write it like this if it need to be explained in short.

Gerekmezse konuşmam
If it is not necessary, I will not speak.

A Special use of "Gerek"

gerek, gerek ise as well as

Gerek göklerdeki kuşlar, gerek denizdeki balıklar, gerek yerdeki hayvanlar,

This means "all of them"

The birds in the sky, the fishes in the sea and also the animals on land, all of them,.

It is similar to "not only but also" in English.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 28 : The Potential Mood



The Potential Mood Positive

The Potential Mood (tense) indicates: **ability** *to be able, can* or **disposition** *may, might* **Turkish: yetenek** *ability, capability, predisposition* The Potential Mood uses the addition of **bilmek** *to know* to form its sense of meaning.

It always takes the form with a **dotted i** and is not subject to vowel harmony as **bilmek** is a word in its own right.

This is similar to the Scottish use of *ken can, be able to* as in the Scottish:

"Do you ken the swimming?"

Do you know how to swim?"

In essence, a new verb is formed.

English is different as it uses the auxiliary verb "to be able"

Present Continuous Tense

gelebiliyorum

I can come, I am able to come, I may come, I might come

Present Simple Tense

gelebilirim

I can come, I am able to come, I may come, I might come

Future Tense

gidebileceksiniz

you will be able to go, etc.

Past Tense

başlayabildik

we could have started, etc..

Verb Stems ending in a Consonant

The suffix **-ebil-** or **-abil-** is affixed to the positive verb stems which end in a consonant: **gelmek** *to come* forms a new verb and becomes **gelebilmek** *to be able to come* **yazmak** *to write* forms a new verb and becomes **yazabilmek** *to be able to write* **yazılmak** *to be written* [Passive Mood] forms a new verb and becomes **yazılabilmek** *to be able to be written* **gülmek** *to laugh* forms a new verb and becomes **gülebilmek** *to be able to laugh* **güldürmek** *to make s.o. laugh* [Causative Verb] forms a new verb and becomes **güldürebilmek** *to be able to make s.o. laugh*

Verb Stems ending in a Vowel

Verb Stems ending in a vowel add **-yebil-** or **-yabil-** using buffer letter **-y-**

yürümek *to walk* forms a new verb and becomes **yürüebilmek** *to be able to walk* **taşımak** *to carry* forms a new verb and becomes **taşıyabilmek** *to be able to carry* The various tenses can be formed as normal after dropping **-mek** or **-mak** which are replaced by **-e-** or **-a-** to which the verb **bilmek** *to know* is suffixed thus forming **-ebil-** or **-abil-** as the Potential Mood Suffix.

Potential Present Continuous

görmek [Active Verb]

to see

görebilmek [Potential Verb]

to be able to see

görebiliyorum

I can see, I am able to see

I may see, I might see

görebiliyorsun

you can see

görebiliyor

he can see

görebiliyoruz

we can see

görebiliyorsunuz

you can see

görebiliyorlar

they can see

Potential Present Interrogative

The Interrogative is formed in a similar manner as the basic verb with the addition of the personalised question tag written separately.

gelebiliyor muyum?

Can I come?

gelebiliyor musunuz?

Can you come?

Potential Future Tense

[Active Verb] **kalmak** *to stay, to remain*

kalabilmek [Potential Verb]

to be able to stay, remain

kalabileceğim

I will be able to stay

kalabileceksin

you will be able to stay

kalabilecek

he will be able to stay

kalabileceğiz

we will be able to stay

kalabileceksiniz

you will be able to stay

kalabilecekler

they will be able to stay

Potential Future Interrogative

gidebilecek misiniz?

will you be able to go?

Potential Past Definite Tense

beklemek [Active Verb]

to wait, to expect

bekleyebilmek [Past Definite Potential]

to be able to wait, expect

bekleyebildim

I could wait

bekleyebildin

you could wait

bekleyebildi
he could wait

bekleyebildik
we could wait

bekleyebildiniz
you could wait

bekleyebildiler
they could wait

Inserting the Habitual Present tense sign **-r -ir etc.** the meaning becomes "unreal"

beklemek [Active verb]
to wait, to expect

bekleyebilirmek [Past Definite Potential Unreal]
to be able to wait, expect

bekleyebilirdim
I could have waited

bekleyebilirdin
you could have waited

bekleyebilirdi
he could have waited

bekleyebilirdik
we could have waited

bekleyebilirdiniz
you could have waited

bekleyebilirdiler
they could have waited

Potential Past Indefinite Tense

düşünmek [Active Verb]
to think

düşünebilmek [Potential Verb]
to be able to think

düşünebilmişim
it seems I was able to think

düşünebilmişsin
it seems you were able to think

düşünebilmiş
it seems he was able to think

düşünebilmişsiz
it seems we were able to think

düşünebilmişsiniz
it seems you were able to think

düşünebilmişler
it seems they were able to think

Potential Past Interrogative

bekleyebildi mi?
could he have waited?

Potential Past Continuous

yapmak [Active Verb]
to do, to make

yapabilmek [Potential Verb]

to be able to do

yapabiliyordum

I was able to do

yapabiliyordun

you were able to do

yapabiliyordu

he was able to do

yapabiliyorduk

we were able to do

yapabiliyordunuz

you were able to do

yapabiliyorlardı

they were able to do

Potential Past Continuous Interrogative

durabiliyorlardı mı? *were they able to stop, halt ?*

This example clearly shows that **bilmek** *to know* keeps its **dotted i** as it is not subject to vowel harmony rules, being a separate word in its own right.

The Negative Potential Verb

Negative Potential Formation

This mood is formed in all tenses by inserting an **-e-** or **-a-** before the negative suffix of any negative verb whether it be active, passive, reflexive, reciprocal or causative.

It is a completely new verb with its own infinitive.

Negative Potential A-UnDotted Verbs

bakmamak [Active Verb]

to not look

bakamamak [Negative Potential]

not to be able to look

bakamıyorum

I can't look

bakamadın or **bakamıyordun**

you could not look

bakamıyordu

he was not able to look

bakamazsak

if we cannot look

[Conditional form]

bakamayacaksınız

you will not be able to look

bakamadılar

or **bakamıyorlardı**

they could not look

It can be seen above that the tense and personal endings are added to make the full verb form which includes the "if" forms of the Conditional Mood.

Negative Potential E-Dotted Verbs

çekmemek [Active Verb]

to not pull

çekememek [Negative Potential]

not to be able to pull

Simple Present Negative Potential

çekemem

I can't pull

Present Continuous Negative Potential

çekemiyorsun

you cannot pull

Passive Past Definite Negative Potential

çekilemedi

it could not be pulled

Future tense Negative Potential

çekemeyeceğiz

we will not be able to pull

Past in the Past Negative Potential

çekememiştiniz

you had not been able to pull

Negative Potential A-UnDotted Verbs ending in a Vowel

The buffer letter **-y-** is used to keep the last vowel of the verb stem separate from the **-e-** negative potential particle that has been added to the normal negative infinitive.

anlamamak [Active Verb]

to understand

anlayamamak [Negative Potential Verb]

[anla-y-a-ma-mak]

not to be able to understand

anlayamadım

I could not understand

anlamasaydın

if you did not understand

anlayamasaydın

if you could not understand

[Negative Potential Conditional]

anlayamamış

it seems he could not understand

[Inferential Tense]

anlaşılamayacaksak

if we will not be able to understood

[Passive form]

anlayamazsınız

you cannot understand

anlaşamadılar

they could not agree

[Lit: understand each other, Reciprocal form]

Negative Potential E-Dotted Verbs ending in a Vowel

beklemek [Active Verb]

to wait, expect

bekleyememek [Negative Potential Verb]

[bekle-y-e-memek]

not to be able to wait

bekleyemesem

if I cannot wait

[Conditional]

bekletemeyeceksin

you will not be able to let (it/him) wait

[Causative]

beklenemedi

it could not have been expected

[Passive]

bekleyemeyeceğiz

we will not be able to wait

bekleyemezsiniz

you couldn't have waited

bekleyememişler

it seems that they could not wait

[Inferential tense]

In speech this negative potential particle **-a- (-ya-)** or **-e- (-ye-)** is heavily accented in order to draw the attention of the listener.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 29 : The Mood of Wish and Desire



Wish and Desire Mood

*In Turkish Grammar this is called the **İstek Kipi** the Mood of Wish or Desire.*

This mood is widely used in daily conversation, especially the first person singular and plural forms.

The *İstek Kipi* gives a sense of doubt, uncertainty or wish *Let me, Let us*, or in the negative *Let me not, Let us not*.

The third person forms are also used regularly.

Should a secretary say to the boss that *Ahmet bey* has arrived then the answer might be *Let him wait* or *Let him come in*. In these cases the *İstek Kipi* would be used.

When a person is ill English will say: *I hope you get better soon*.

Turkish uses The "Wish and Desire tense" to say: **Geçmiş olsun** *Let it pass from you*.

The Personal Endings *İstek Kipi*

-eyim let me or -ayım let me

Ofiste bekleyeyim.

[bekle-y-eyim]

Let me wait in the office.

Nerede bekleyeyim sizi?

Where should I wait for you?

Ne yapayım, dilimi mi keseyim?

What should I do, should I shut up?
[Lit: cut my tongue.]

Batinin tekniğini alalım kültürünü almayalım.
[alma-y-alım]
Let us take western techniques, let us not take the culture.

"-sin -sın sun -sün" let him

Olsun!
Let it be! (so)
Olmasın!
Let it not be! (so)
Neden olmasın?
Why not?

Çocuk kendini suçlu hissetmesin.
Let the child not feel guilty.

"-elim -alım" let us...

Gidelim.
Let us go; We better go!
Birlikte bir kahve içelim mi?
Should we drink a coffee together?
Neden egzersiz yapmayalım ki?
Why shouldn't we do that exercise?
Ukrayna bizi etkileyecek ama panik yapmayalım.
Ukraine will affect us but let us not panic.

"-sinler -sınlar sünler -sunlar" let them...

Gelsinler!
Let them come; They ought to come!
Ondan korksunlar!

Let them fear that!

Kaldırımlara arabaları park etmesinler, trafik kurallarına uysunlar.

They should not park on the pavement, let them conform to the traffic regulations.

Negative Forms

gitmemek

not to go

Oraya gitmeyelim.

Lets not go there.

bakmamak

not to look

Ahmet mektuba bakmasın.

Let Ahmet not look at the letter.

bulmamak

not to find

Onu bulmasınlar

Hopefully they won't find it.

beklememek

not to wait

Beklemeyeyim!

I'd better not wait!

Interrogative Form

*The Interrogative Particle **mi?** or **mı?** is written separately but obeys Vowel Harmony Rules:*

Geleyim mi?

Should I come (too)?

Araba kullanalım mı?

Should we use the car?

Kasabaya yürümeyelim mi?

Shouldn't we walk to town?

Partiye gelsinler mi?

Should they come to the party?

How to say "Since..."

This structure has the suffix **-eli -alı** containing added to the Verb Stem. The subject person is also stated and the tense is taken from the final main verb

Other ways of saying since are as follows:

-eli, -eli beri, -eliden beri *since*

All these mean Since we came to Istanbul it has not rained.

Biz İstanbul'a geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

Biz İstanbul'a geleli beri hiç yağmur yağmadı.

Biz İstanbul'a geleliden beri hiç yağmur yağmadı.

Since I, you, he etc. ... can also be translated as -di(X) -eli where the (X)-person is taken from the tense sign:

Mehmet İstanbul'a geldi geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

(Ben) İstanbul'a geldim geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

(Siz) İstanbul'a geldiniz geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

(Biz) İstanbul'a geldik geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

(Onlar) İstanbul'a geldiler geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

These examples do not really need the subject **ben, sen, o, biz, siz, onlar** stated as it is already evident from the verb endings **geldi, geldim, geldiniz, geldik, geldikler**.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 30 : Verbal Adjectives and Nouns



Participles, Verbal Adjectives and Nouns

Participles are adjectives and nouns formed from verbs.

Learning can be fun. "Learning" is a Verbal Noun.

The boiling kettle. The kettle which is boiling. "Boiling" is a Verbal Adjective.

About Verbal Adjectives Nouns.

The most important function of participles is to form modifying phrases or adjectives equivalent to the relative clauses, "who, that, which, when" found in English languages.

The use of participles in Turkish is rather different than in English and at first sight is difficult to understand.

This is due to the fact that the Relative Pronouns *who, what, which, where* are not used in Turkish as in English.

Instead Turkish uses participles of its verbs as adjectives and nouns to show interrelation in sentences.

Relative Participles -an/-en, -yan/-yen

This Participle means "who does/that goes/which comes".

gelen adam

the man who comes

the man who is coming

Strip the **-mek** or **-mak** ending from the infinitive of any verb and add **-(y)en** or **-(y)an** to the remaining verb stem.

The buffer **-y-** is inserted if the verb stem ends in a vowel to avoid the occurrence of two consecutive vowels.

Relative Participle Positive

Infinitive verb, Relative participle.

gelmek, gelen [gel-en]
coming [who/whom/that/which comes]

sarılmak, sarılan [sarıl-an]
hugging [who hugs]

anlamak, anlayan [anla-yan]
understanding [who understands]

beklemek, bekleyen [bekle-yen]
waiting [who waits]

Relative Participle Negative

Infinitive verb, Relative participle.

gelmemek, gelmeyen [gelme-yen]
not coming [who is not coming]

sarılmamak, sarılmayan [sarılma-yan]
not hugging [who is not hugging]

anlamamak anlamayan [anlama-yan]
not understanding [who is not understanding]

beklememek, beklemeyen [bekleme-yen]
not waiting [who is not waiting]

The buffer **-y-** is inserted in negative verbs all verb stems end in a vowel

Examples of Relative Verbal Adjectives

Öğle yemeğe gelen adamı tanırım.

[used as an adjective "gelen adam"]

I know the man who is coming to lunch.

Akşam yemeğe geleni tanır mısınız?

[used as a noun "geleni" direct object]

Do you know who is coming to dinner?

Gelenlerden biri tanıyorum.

I know one of those who are coming.

Bekleyenlere her şey gelir.

Everything comes to those who wait.

Zengin olanlar çok şanslıdır.

Those who are rich are very lucky.

The Relative Participle can be used as an adjective as in 1 above: **gelen adam** or as a noun as in 2 above: **Geleni tanır mısınız?**

Relative Participle Examples

*The suffix **-an** or **-en** is added to the verb stem or **-yan** or **-yen** after vowels.*

yürümek to walk

yürüyen [yürü-yen]

who walks, who is walking

yürümemek not to walk

yürümeyen [yürüme-yen]

who doesn't walk

who is not walking

beklemek to wait

bekleyen [bekle-yen]

who waits
who is waiting

beklememek *not to wait*

beklemeyen [bekleme-yen]
who doesn't wait
who is not waiting

bakmak *to look*

bakan [bak-an]
which looks
who is looking

bakmamak *not to look*

bakmayan [bakma-yan]
which doesn't look
who is not looking

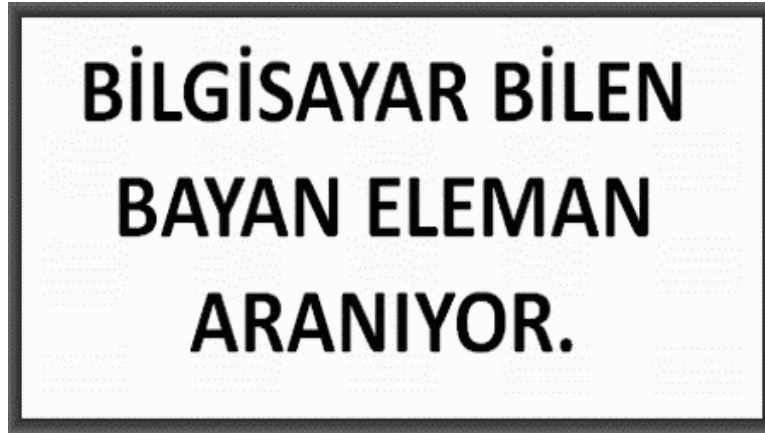
görmek *to see*

gören [gör-en]
who sees
who is seeing

görmemek *not to see*

görmeyen [görme-yen]
who doesn't see
who is not seeing

Relative Participle in a shop window advertisement.



Computers who knows about [bilen] lady worker is being sought Consider the sentences:

I know the man who is sitting in the chair I know the man sitting in the chair

"who" is a relative pronoun referring to "the man" which may be omitted in English, as in the second version above.

The word "sitting" is a present participle or verbal adjective describing the state of the man.

The sentence above can be broken down to:

(1) *The man is sitting in the chair.*

(2) *I know him.*

Transposing the example above to the form that Turkish exhibits, it would convert as follows: **Sandalyede oturan adamı tanıyorum.**

Chair-in sitting-who-is man-the know-I.

One could also say:

Gökte uçan kuşu görebilirim.

I can see the bird that is flying in the sky.

[Lit: Sky-in flying-which-is bird-the see-can-I.]

Sarkan ipi çektim.

I pulled the rope which was hanging down.

[Lit: Hanging down-which-was rope pulled-I]

This last example is in the Past Tense which is taken from the final verb of the sentence.

The present participle "sitting" translates the relative pronoun by implication, "who is sitting, which is flying".

It is important to understand that Turkish uses the verbal adjective as a relative pronoun "who, what, that, which", so it is always best to add "who is, which is, that is," in the English translation.

In these cases "which" and "that" are relative pronouns whilst "flying" and "hanging down" are present participles used as adjectives.

Turkish uses the present participle does the job of both the relative pronoun and the adjective.

Beni arayan kimse var mı?

Is there anybody (who is) waiting for me?

Ayakları kırılmış olan sandalye onarılmalıdır.

The chair whose legs are broken should be mended.

Dışarıdaki oturan kız seni bekliyormuş.

The girl who is sitting outside is (apparently) waiting for you.

Taksi isteyen adam bize demin eli salladı.

The man who wanted a taxi waved his hand at us just now.



İNGİLİZCE BİLEN TECRÜBELİ BAYAN ELEMAN ARANIYOR.

"Experienced lady worker *who knows* **[bilen]** English is being sought."

Arka bahçeye bakan pencere kırıldı.

The window facing the back garden is broken.

[Lit: Back garden-to looking-at-which-is (facing) broken-is.]

Mektup yazan adam çok yaşlıdır.

The man writing the letter is very old.

[Lit: Letter-the writing-who-is man-the old-is.]

Examples in the Potential Mood:

The suffix **-an** or **-en** is added to the verb stem, (or either **-yan** or **-yen** after vowels)

yürüyebilmek

to be able to walk

yürüyebilen [yürü-ye-bil-en]

who can walk

yürüyememek

not to be able to walk

yürüyemeyen [yürü-ye-me-yen]

who can't walk

The Relative Participle as a Noun

As the Participle formed can be used as a Verbal Noun then suffixes added to it

AS THE PARTICIPLE FORMED CAN BE USED AS A VERBAL NOUN THEN SUFFIXES ADDED TO IT change the meaning as with all Nouns in Turkish.

Noun as Direct Object

oturmak *to sit (or to live at)*

oturan

who is sitting / sitting (adj.)

oturana [oturana-ı]

who sits / sitter

Noun in Movement Toward Condition (Dative) Singular

uçmak *to fly*

uçan

which is flying / flying (adj.)

uçana [uçana-ya]

to that flying / to the flier

Noun in Movement Toward Condition (Dative) Plural

yemek *to eat*

yiyecek

who is eating / eater (adj.)

yiyecekler [yiyecek-ler]

to those eating / to those who eat

Noun in Movement Away Condition (Ablative)

sarkmak

to hang down, dangle

sarkan

which is hanging down / hanging down (adj.)

sarkandan [sarkandan-ı]

from that which is hanging

Example of a Causative Verb

Noun in Ownership condition (Genitive)

güldürmek *to cause to laugh*

güldüren

which makes one laugh/comic, funny (adj.)

güldürenin [güldür-en-in]

of that which makes one laugh/comic, funny

Example of a Passive Verb

Noun in Movement Toward Condition (Dative) Plural

kesilmek *to be cut*

kesilen

which is being cut (adj.)

kesilenlerden [kesil-en-ler-den]

from those that are being cut

Adjectival Participle

Masaya oturan adamı tanırım

I know the man who is sitting at the table.

[Lit: Table-to (at) sitting man-the know-I.]

In this case **oturan** is an adjective describing *the man (singular)*

And in the plural:

Masaya oturan adamları tanırım

I know the men who are sitting at the table

[Lit: Table-to sitting men-the know-I.]

Thus using **oturan** as an adjective describing **the men**

The Participle as a Noun

Here Turkish uses a Verbal noun:

Masaya oturamı tanıyorum.

I know (he) who is sitting at this table.

[Lit: Table-to sitting-he-who-is know-I.]

Thus using **oturamı** as a relative pronoun (singular direct object)

And in the plural:

Masaya oturanları tanırdım

I knew those who were sitting at the table.

[Lit: Table-to sitting-they-who-were knew-I.]

Thus using **oturanları** as a relative pronoun (plural direct object.)

The Past tense of this sentence is taken from the final verb.

Suffixed Participles

The Relative Participle can be declined in both Singular and Plural Positive and Negative and in the Passive and Potential Moods of the verbs.

The suffix **-an** or **-en** is added to the verb stem, (or either **-yan** or **-yen** after vowels).

The Positive Verb

vermek *to give*

veren

who gives

verenler

those who are giving

The Negative Verb

vermemek *not to give*

vermeyen

who doesn't give

vermeyenler

those who don't give

Oğluma, hediye veren adam onun amcasıydı.

The man who gave the present to my son was his uncle.

[Lit: Son-my-to, present gave-who man-the his uncle-was.]

Ankara'ya giden otobüslerin hepsi doludur.

All the buses which are going to Ankara are full up.

[Lit: Ankara-to going-which-are buses all full-are.]

Ankara'ya gidenlerin hepsi erkek.

All the those who are going to Ankara are male.

[Lit: Ankara-to going-those-who-are all male-are.]

Passive Mood Examples

The Positive Verb

beklenmek *to be expected*

beklenen

which is expected

beklenenler

those who are expected

The Negative Verb

beklenmemek *not to be expected*

beklenmeyen

which is not expected

beklenmeyenler

those which are not expected

The resulting **-an** or **-en** Relative Adjective is used to describe nouns, and can be used as a noun in its own right.

Potential Mood Active Examples

The Positive Verb

çalışabilmek *to be able to work*

çalışabilen

who is able to work

çalışabilenler

those who are able to work

The Negative Verb

çalışamamak *not to be able to work*

çalışamayan

which is not able to work

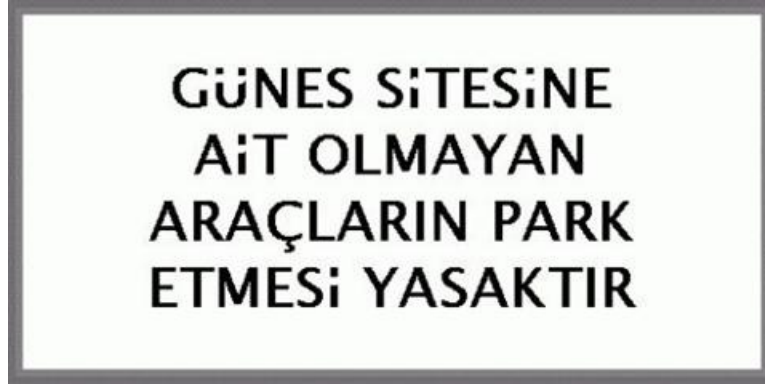
çalışamayanlar

those who are not able to work

The resulting **-an** or **-en** relative adjective can be used as a noun in its own right.

A sign at Ladies Beach in Kuşadası for restricted entry into the **Güneş (Sun)**
Site of Apartments.





This sign shows how difficult Turkish can be to understand as the grammatical construction is alien to English Speakers.

Expalantion of this sign:

Güneş sitesine [Güneş site-si-ne]
(In) to the Güneş Site

ait olmayan *who is not concerned*
[with the site anyway]

araçların park etmesi
their car's its-parking

yasaktır. *is prohibited.*

Yüzebilenlere bir madalya verelim.
Let us give a medal to those who can swim.

In the above example the Relative Adjective is used as a noun with the Dative Suffix **-e to** added [yüz-ebil-en-ler-e]

Sokağımızda çalışamayan bir engelli oturuyor.
A disabled man who is unable to work is living in our street,

In the above example the Relative Adjective [çalış-a-ma-y an] *who is unable to work / who can not work* is used to describe the noun **engelli** *invalid/cripple*.

Süremeyenlerden arabaları geri alınız.
Take away the cars from those who can't drive.

In the above example the Relative Adjective [sür-e-me-y-en-ler-den] *from those who can not (are not able to) drive* is used as noun with the addition of the suffix **-den** *from*

Potential Mood Passive Examples

Examples of Turkish turning everything into an adjectival description wherever possible.

yapılabilmek *to be able to be done / made*

yapılabilen
which can be done

yapılabilenler [yapılabil-en-ler] *t*
hose which can be done

sürülememek *not to be able to be driven*

sürülemeyen
which can not be driven

sürülemeyenler [sürül-e-me-y-en-ler]
those which can not be driven

Sürülemeyen arabaları çıkarınız.
Take away the cars which can not be driven.

In the above example the Relative Adjective is used [sürül-e-me-yen]

Yapılabilenleri bitirelim.
Let's finish those that can be done.

In the above example the Relative Adjective [yapılabil-en-ler-i] *those that can be done* (object) is used as a direct object noun.

Participle of "Olmak" to be/to become

The present participle of the verb **olmak** is **olan** meaning *which, is being* or if used as a pronoun means "that, who, which, what is"

This is used with the Infinitive in the Locative Case to form a present continuous participle:

Yüzmekte olanları (obj.)

those who are presently swimming.

Denizde yüzmekte olanları tanırım. [olan-lar-ı]

I know those who are presently swimming in the sea.

Kalmakta olanlardan

from those who are presently staying.

Hırsızlar, otelde kalmakta olanlardan para çaldılar. [olan-lar-dan]

The thieves stole money from those who are staying at the hotel.

Beklemekte olana

to he who is waiting and still is waiting.

Bu koliyi, beklemekte olana verin. [olan-a]

Give this parcel to the man (he who is) waiting.

About olan being

Another use of **olan** is with normal adjectives to describe people and events as the following examples show. In these cases **olan** can sometimes be translated as *being, as a*. [Lit: who be's]

Satılık olan bir ev arıyorum.

I am looking for a house which is for sale.

[Lit: For sale being a house look for-I]

Çok pahalı olan bir fotoğraf makinesini aldım.

I have bought a camera which was very expensive.

[Lit: Very dear being a camera bought-I]

Babası kasap olan bir arkadaşım var.

I have got a friend whose father is a butcher.

[Lit: Father-his butcher being a friend-mine there-is]

Use of olan to mean the one that

An explanation of **olan** *the which one*

olanı *One [the one that]*

[Lit: that which is as an item]

olanları *Ones [the ones that]*

[Lit: those which are as items]

Hangi tişörtü istiyorsunuz?

Which tee-shirt do you want?

Mavi olanı(nı) lütfen.

The blue one, please.

Hangi ayakkabıları istiyorsunuz?

Which shoes do you want?

Siyah olanları(nı) lütfen.

The black ones, please.

The **-ni** as a direct object ending is grammatically correct in the answers as the verb **istemek** *to want* is understood.

But as with all languages sometimes the easy way is used and the direct object suffix is discarded though constant daily conversational usage.

Participle of bulunmak to be found

The Verb **bulunmak** *to be found, to be*

This verb "to be found" is the passive form of **bulmak** *to find*. It is used very much as in English. One might say to a friend you are meeting later on: **Bu akşam otele geldiğinde, ben barda bulunurum.**

When you get to the hotel tonight, I'll be found in the bar.

[Lit: I'll be found in the bar.]

Otelde bugününün gazeteleri bulunur mu?

Are there any of today's newspapers "to be found" in the hotel?

This construction is used is often in Turkish and is translated more easily by the verb *to be*

The use of *bulunan* with adjectives:

Similarly another use of **bulunan** is used with adjectives to describe people and events as the following examples show.

In these cases **bulunan** can sometimes be translated as *having a, containing a*.

İçinde beş kitap bulunan kutuyu getirin.

Bring along the box containing the five books. Lit: Inside five books-the found-which-are-being bring along.]

Bahçemizde bulunan güzel çiçekleri sana göstereyim.

Let me show you the beautiful flowers (which are) in our garden. [Lit: Garden-ours-in found-which-are-to-be beautiful flowers you-to show-let-me.]

Summary of Verbal Adjective Tense Forms

These participles are discussed in detail in the next chapters.

Present/Past Relative Participle suffix **-(y)en -(y)an**

Future Relative Participle suffix **-(y)ecek -(y)acak**

Past Direct Participle suffix **-dik/-tik -dık/-tık -duk/-tuk -dük/-tük**

Past Indirect (Inferential) Participle suffix **muş -miş -muş -müş**

Simple Present Positive Participle (Simple tense) with the suffix **-r -er -ar -ir -ır -ur -ür**.

Simple Present Negative Participle (Simple tense) with the suffix **-mez -maz**

These forms can function as either adjectives: **oynamayan çocuklar** *children who do not play* or as nouns: **oynamayanlar** *they/those who do not play*.

- (1) The most important function of participles is to form modifying phrases or adjectives equivalent to the relative clauses found in English.
- (2) The relative pronouns "who, what, which, where" are not used in Turkish.
- (3) Turkish uses participles of its verbs as adjectives or nouns.
- (4) English relative construction "he man who sits." becomes "The sitting man." in Turkish by using the verbal adjective to describe the noun.

Past Tense Participles

There are two types of Past Participle in Turkish:

The first type is formed by suffixing **-miş** to the verb stem and is used when the participle is subject of the sentence.

The second type is formed by the addition of **-dik** to the basic verb stem which is used as an Objective Participle for both the Present and Past Tenses.

The **-miş** Relative Past Participle

*The Relative Participle in **-miş** is used when the action is definitely completed.*

The **-miş** suffix does not take on a dubative or reportative sense when used as a participle. As with the present continuous participle the relation is completed by using the relative participle **olan** *that, who, which, is*.

vermiş olan

given, which is given

verilmiş olan

given, which has been given

vermemiş olan

not given, which has not given

verilmemiş olan

not been given, which has not been given

boyamış olan

painted, which is painted

boyanmış olan

been painted, that has been painted

seçmiş olan

chosen, which is chosen

seçilmiş olan

been chosen, that has been chosen

Seçilmiş olan şapkayı beğenirim.

I like the hat that has been chosen.

Seçmiş olanı beğenirim.

I like the one who has chosen.

Henüz gelmiş olan adamı tanırım.

I know the man who has just come.

The -miştir Past Participle Official and Public Use

The **-miştir** Past Participle is a happening which is definite in the past
kırılmıştır *which has been broken* although we usually say in English *which is broken* **Mavi kapı kırılmıştır.**

The blue door is broken.

[Lit. has been broken]

The **-miş** Past Participle is also used with suffix **-dir** to make an official definite statement: **Türkiye'de yapılmıştır.** *Made in Turkey.*

[Lit: Turkey-in made-which-has-been-is.]

Paslanmaz çelikten yapılmıştır *Made from stainless steel*

[Lit: Stainless steel-from made-which-has-been-is.]

İzmir' de üretilmiştir *Produced in Izmir*

[Lit: Izmir-in produced-which-has-been-is.]

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 31 : Object Participles



Object Participles

This Participle is used for both Present and Past Tenses. A participle is an adjective which is formed from a verb, and as such it precedes the noun that it describes.

Being a relative participle then it can also serve as a noun and therefore have the personal suffixes and the suffixes of declension added thus forming a relative clause.

It is used for both the present and past tenses, only the context of the situation pertaining will tell which tense to use in English.

Object Participle Formation

The **-mek** or **-mak** is dropped from the Infinitive of the Verb and is replaced by the suffix **-dik** which is subject to vowel harmony.

The E-Dotted Vowels

gelmek

to come

geldik

that came

that which is coming

gülmek

to laugh

güldük

that laughed
that which laugh

The A-UnDotted Vowels

bakmak
to look

baktık
that looked at
that which looks at

çıkma
to exit

çıkma
that went out
that which is exiting

Generally the Object Participle is not used in its pure form as above but is always personalized.

This participle just happens to be the same as the 1st Person Plural of the Simple Past Definite Tense Suffix **-dik/-tik -dık/-tık -duk/-tuk -dük/-tük** according to Vowel Harmony and Consonant Mutation Rules.

Being a Participle (verbal adjective) it describes a noun so therefore it precedes its noun.

As it is not a verb then it does not stand in final position in the sentence.

From this is becomes easier to recognize it as a verbal adjective by its position in any sentence.

Oynadığım park bu köşede.
[Oyna-dığ-ım]
The park where I play is on this corner.

En çok sevdiğin kitap nedir?
[sev-diğ-in]
Which book do you like best?

Gönderdiği koliyi aldım.

[Gönder-diğ-i koli-yi]

I have received the parcel that he sent.

Geldiğimiz araba yepyenidir.

[Gel-diğ-imiz]

The car in which we came is brand new.

Beğendiğiniz perdeleri bulamadım.

[Beğen-diğ-iniz]

I could not find the curtains that you liked.

Bu çocukların her gün yaptıkları şey nedir?

[Yap-tık-ları]

What is it that these children do every day.

The **-dik** Objective Participle is used for both present and past time.

When suffixed with personal pronouns it is equivalent to the English relative participle "who, that, which, where, when".

The final **-k** changes to **-ğ** before the possessive suffix, except when adding "-lar" third person plural suffix.

Oturduğumuz ev budur.

This is the house in which we live.

Oturduğunuz ev budur.

This is the house in which you live.

Oturdukları ev budur.

This is the house in which they live.

Adjectives can be turned into nouns in Turkish:

Mehmet, kendiye verdiğim hediyeyi beğendi.

Mehmet liked the present that I gave to him(self).

Here the participle **verdiğim** that which I gave describes **hediyeyi** [hediye-yi] the present which the object of the final verb **beğendi** he liked.

In Turkish the participle "verdiğim" can be turned into a noun and placed in the objective case itself:

Mehmet, verdiğimi beğendi.

Mehmet liked what I gave.

The Objective Participle used as a Noun

These examples show relative pronouns in the objective case as a direct object of the verb **bilmek** to know.

The pronoun, object and the verb are personalised to show "who is loving and who is being loved and who knows".

Seni sevdiğimi biliyorum

[sev-diğ-im-i]

I know that I love you.

Seni sevdiğimi bildim.

I knew that I loved you.

Beni sevdiğini biliyorum.

[sev-diğ-in-i]

I know that you love me.

Beni sevdiğini bildim.

I knew that you loved me.

Onun beni sevdiğini biliyorum.

[sev-diğ-i-n-i]

I know that he/she love me.

Onun seni sevdiği bildim.

I knew that he/she loved you.

Here **Onun** his/her is used to show the third person meaning clearly.

Mehmet'i sevdiğimizi biliyorum.

[sev-diğ-imiz-i]

I know that we love Mehmet.

Mehmet, seni sevdiğimizi bildi.
Mehmet knew that we loved you.

Mehmet'i sevdiğinizi biliyorum.
[sev-diğ-iniz-i]
I know that you love Mehmet.

Mehmet, Ayşe'yi sevdiğinizi bildi.
Mehmet knew that you loved Ayshe.

Seni sevdiklerini biliyorum.
[sev-dik-leri-n-i]
I know that they love you.

Mehmet, seni sevdiklerini bildi.
Mehmet knew that they loved you.

Başkan hiç beklemediği bir sürprizle karşılaşır.
The Prime Minster meets with an unexpected surprise.

Galatasaray taraftarının beklediği haber çıktı.
The news that the Galatasaray fans were waiting for has arrived.

Gece karanlığından bıktığımızı bilmezler mi?
Don't they know that we are fed up with the dark nights?

Gece karanlığından bıktığımızı bilmediler mi?
Didn't they know that we were fed up with the dark nights?

Otomobilinizle hızla giderken dümdüz bir duvara çarptığınızı hayal edin.
Just imagine that you collide head on with a wall while travelling at speed in you car.

Otomobilinizle hızla giderken dümdüz bir duvara çarptığınızı hayal edin.
Just imagine that you collided head on with a wall while travelling at speed in you car.

The participle can be past or present in meaning.

Ford yeni bir tasarım ekibi kurduklarını söylüyor.

Ford are saying that they are setting up a new design team.

Libya, petrol üretimini durdurduklarını bildirdi.

It has been reported that Libya have halted their petrol production.

Mehmet, seçtiğimi beğenmemiş.

Mehmet did not like what I chose.

Mehmet, yaptığını beğenmemiş.

Mehmet did not like what you did.

Mehmet, söylediğini beğenmemiş.

Mehmet did not like what he said.

Mehmet, bulduğumuzu beğenmemiş.

Mehmet did not like what we found.

Mehmet, aldığınızı beğenmemiş.

Mehmet did not like what you bought.

Mehmet, değiştirdiklerini beğenmemiş.

Mehmet did not like what they changed.

Object Participle Usage

This **-dik/-tik -duk/-tuk --dık/-dık --dük/-tük** suffix is often difficult to recognize as it has so many forms due to vowel harmony operating in its internal vowel and consonant mutation operating on both the initial **-d** and the terminal **-k**.

If a further suffix with a vowel is added the final **-k** is also subject to Consonant Mutation:

-diği/-tiği -duğu/-tuğu -dığı/-tığı -düğü/-tüğü

bulmak

to find

Bulduğum şapka.

The hat which I found.

Bulduğum mendil beyazdır.
The handkerchief that I found is white.

seçmek
to choose

Seçtiğin kitap.
The book that you are choosing/chose.

görmek
to see

Gördüğü araba.
The car that he sees/saw.

yazmak
to write

Yazdığımız mektup.
The letter that we are writing/that we wrote.

Yazdığımız mektuplar burada.
The letters that we wrote are here.

demek
to say

Dediğiniz gibi.
Like (what) you say/said.

sevmek
to like

Sevdikleri dondurma.
The ice cream that they liked.

Çalıştığım büro (ofis) kapalı.
The office where I work is closed.
The office where I worked is closed.

Söyledikleri mantıklıdır.

What they are saying/said is/was sensible.

The addition of **-dır** onto **mantıklı** [Lit: logical] makes it a Statement of Fact.

The Difference of the Subject Participle -en/-an

***To reiterate:** a participle is an adjective so it describes a noun and therefore always precedes the noun (or noun phrase) that it describes.*

The subject participle describes or signifies the person/thing who is doing something, the subject of the sentence.

Çalan zil.

The bell which is ringing.

This description itself can be an Object of another verb:

Çalan zili duyabiliriyorum. [zil-i]

I can hear the bell (obj.) which is ringing.

Çalan zili duyabildim.

I could hear the bell which was ringing.

The passive of **çalmak** is **çalınmak** so the above sentence in the Passive is:

Çalınan zili duyabiliyorum.

I can hear the bell that is being rung.

Çalınan zili duyabildim.

I could hear the bell that was being rung.

The **-an/-en** Subject Participle being an adjective does not show the tense.

The tense is taken from the main verb at the end of the sentence.

Object Participle Description

The Object Participle describes the person/thing that is actioned by something as an Object.

çalldığı zil

the bell that is/was rang.

This description itself can be an Object of another verb:

Mehmet'in çaldığı zili duyabiliyorum.

I can hear the bell that Mehmet is/was ringing.

Mehmet is actioning the "ringing".

Similarly in the Passive:

Mehmet tarafından çalınan zili duyabiliyorum.

I can hear the bell that is/was being rung by Mehmet.

The bell's ringing is being actioned by Mehmet.

In Turkish if a Participle is put between the nouns composing "possessive construction" there is no need to use a "possessive suffix" at the end of the second noun.

"Mehmet'in çaldığı zilini : This is WRONG objective "-ni" is not used.

Ayşe'nin okuduğu kitabını sen de okumak istiyor musun?

[*kitabını* is wrong]

Ayşe'nin okuduğu kitabı sen de okumak istiyor musun?

[*kitabı* is correct]

Do you want to read Ayshe's book too?

If an adjective is put between the nouns composing "possessive construction" it is necessary to use a "possessive suffix" at the end of the second noun: **Ayşe'nin kalın kitabını bulamıyorum.**

[*kalın kitabını* is correct.]

I cannot find Ayshe's thick book.

Annesi, evin küçük odasını ailenin en küçük çocuğuna verdi.

[*küçük odasını* is correct.]

The mother gave the house's small room to the smallest child.

Lack of Relative Pronouns in Turkish

There is NO Relative Pronoun *that, who, which, when* in Turkish.

[The English relative pronouns do NOT have question marks.].

"Turkishified" English will say:

çalan zili

the ringing bell/the bell which is/was ringing.

[-en/-an Subjective Participle, *the bell* is the subject.]

çaldığı zili [Active Verb Stem]

the bell that he is ringing/that he rung rung.

[-dik/-dığı Objective Participle.]

çalındığı zili [Passive Verb Stem]

the bell that is/was being rung.

[-dik/-dığı Objective Participle]

In the Object Participle **geldiğim zaman** *When I came* "time" is the object of "my coming"

But the Subject Participle **gelen zaman** this means the *time itself is coming* (the future or next time)

Tense taken from main Verb

Ali'nin geldiği zaman, çarşıya GİDİYORUZ.

When Ali COMES we ARE GOING to the shops.

Ali'nin geldiği zaman, çarşıya GİTTİK.

When Ali CAME we WENT to the shops.

Thus it becomes that both ideas, "Ali" and his "coming" both become a compound participle (verbal adjective) to describe **zaman** *time*.

This is more suitable to the Turkish point of view than the relative "when" construction which English uses.

The use of "ki" "that"

The Persian **ki** can be used to produce a relative clause in Turkish but it is alien

to the language and this method should be avoided or you will be marked as a foreigner.

Biliyorum ki beni seviyorsunuz.

I know that you love me.

The Persian method understandable (and sometimes used) but WRONG.

This method is based on Persian Grammar and is more suitable to European thinking. However the construction shown below comes over as more natural to the Turk.

Biliyorum ki beni seviyorsunuz. Is NOT the natural Turkish method

Beni sevdiğini biliyorum. Is the CORRECT method according to Turkish Grammar, using the object participle: **Beni sevdiğ-in-i biliyorum.**

[Lit: Me that-love-you know I.]

Beni [me] **sevdiğini** [that you love] **biliyorum** [I know]

"sevdik" [that loves] + -in [you/your] + -i [object marker for the verb] becomes "sevdiğini".

The correct method uses the **-dik** Relative Object participle.

Both ideas, the "person" and "their loving" become objects of the verb "I know". This is more suitable to the Turkish point of view.

Future Objective Participle

*This Participle in its simple form consists of the verb stem with the addition of the Future Tense Sign **-ecek** or **-acak**.*

The **-mek/-mak** is dropped from the Infinitive of the Verb and is replaced by the suffix **-ecek/-acak** which is subject to vowel harmony.

gelmek

to come

gelecek

that will come

gülmek

to laugh

gülecek

that will laugh

bakmak

to look

bakacak

that will look

çıkma

to exit

çıkacak

that will go out

This **-ecek/-acak** future participle can be used in its pure form and also personalized.

This participle happens to be the same as the 3rd person singular of the Future Tense but it is not possible to mistake it. Being an adjective it is never last in the sentence.

It usually describes a noun:

Yarınki yapacağım iş önemli.

The work that I will do tomorrow will be important.

Yapılabilecek bir şey yok.

[yap-il-ebil-ecek]

There is nothing that can be done.

[from a future aspect]

Oturacak değilim.

I don't intend to sit (down).

Eng:I am not going to sit down.

[Lit: to sit as a future aspect]

An Actual Example Future Participle

"Hayır" diyemeyeceğiniz tek lezzet.

The only taste that you will not be able to say "No" (to)

[Lit: "No" that-you-will-not-be-able-to-say only taste.]



Here is a slogan from a famous Nut Spread bottle for sandwiches. It can be seen on all the supermarket shelves.

The only taste that you will not be able to say "No" (to)

di-ye-me-yeceğ-iniz precedes the noun **lezzet** taste.

It is a Verbal Adjective or Future Participle describing this noun.

Breaking this Future Participle into its components:

di-ye-me becomes *not to be able to say*

di-ye-me-yecēğ becomes *will not be able to say*

di-ye-me-yecēğ-iniz becomes *that you will not be able to say*

Thus the whole meaning becomes:

In Turkish English: *"No" that-you-will-not-be-able-to-say only taste.*

In English English: **The only taste to which that you will not be able to say "No"**

A "real life" example

While walking around the market with my wife in Izmir one time, we were dragged into a carpet shop and plied with both cups of tea and a sales pitch from the carpet seller.

We "escaped" by saying:

Bey efendi teşekkür ederiz fakat hiç bir şey alacak değiliz.

Thank you sir but we are not about to purchase anything at all.

Another "real life" example

Here is an actual email from the web where the writer is asking advice about his employment and it changes. there are many instances of Future Object Participles and Past Tense Object Participles.

"Merhaba,

Ben 14 seneden beri aynı firmada sistem mühendisi olarak çalışmaktaydım.

Firmam başka bir firma ile birleşince iş hayatıma bu yeni firma altında devam ettim.

Bu geçiş sürecinde istersek işten **çıkabileceğimiz** ve tazminat (*compensation*) **alabileceğiz** söylendi.

Biz istemedik.

Aradan geçen 16 ayda yönetim tarafında bir çok değişiklik oldu ve biz artık oluşan bu yeni yönetim organizasyonunda **olmayacağımızı** ve çıkmak **istediğimizi** söyledik.

Fakat bize **dedikleri** "Biz sizi bırakmak istemiyoruz, siz bize lâzımsınız. Bizler, sizlerden memnunuz."

Biz, işe böyle bir yönetim altında devam **edemeyeceğimizden** dolayı, ayrılmakta kararlı **olduğumuzu** söyledik.

Onlarda bize bu şartlarda (*conditions*) tazminat ve diğer haklarımızın **yanacağımı** söylediler.

Ne yapmamız lazım lütfen yardım."

How to say "Instead of"

There is a special construction in Turkish when making a choice between future actions. This consists of The future Participle + Person + Dative (motion

toward) Particle **-a/-e**.

oturacağıma

[oturacağ-ım-a]

instead of me sitting

(future participle + person + dative particle)

Bahçede oturacağımıza salonda oturalım.

Instead of sitting in the garden let us sit in the salon.

This construction is difficult for English speakers to understand, so it can be considered idiomatic to the Turkish language.

Relative Object Participle Examples

Oturduğun şehri ziyaret ettim.

I visited the city where you live(d).

Bana verdiğin hediyeyi kaybettim.

I have lost the present that you gave me.

İlk karşılaştığımız yeri hatırlıyor musun?

Do you remember the place where we first met?

İlk karşılaştığımız zaman hatırlıyor musun?

Do you remember the time when we first met?

Çantanı bıraktığın yere geri dönüyorum.

I am going back to the place where I left your bag.

Çantası bırakmış olduğu yere geri döndüm

I went back to the place where he had left his bag.

Future Object Participle Examples

Londra'ya çıkacağımız zaman saat beş'tir.

5 o'clock is the time that we will leave for London.

Uçağın kalkacağı zamanı bilmiyorum.

I don't know what time the plane will take off.

Evleneceğim kızı tanıştırmak istiyorum.

I want to introduce the girl that I'm going to marry.

"Fakirlik" Poverty a Joke

Günlerden bir gün bir baba ve zengin ailesi oğlunu köye götürdü.

Bu yolculuğun tek amacı vardı, insanların ne kadar fakir **olabileceklerini** oğluna göstermek.

Çok fakir bir ailenin çiftliğinde bir gece ve gün geçirdiler.

Yolculuktan **döndüklerinde** baba oğluna sordu:

-İnsanların ne kadar fakir **olabildiklerini** gördün mü?

-Evet!

-Ne öğrendin peki?

Oğlu yanıt verdi:

Şunu gördüm: Bizim evde bir köpeğimiz var, onlarınsa dört.

Bizim bahçenin ortasına kadar uzanan bir havuzumuz var, onlarınsa sonu **olmayan** bir dereleri.

Bizim bahçemizde ithal lambalar var, onlar inşa yıldızları.

Bizim görüş alanımız on avluya kadar, onlarsa bütün bir ufku görüyorlar.

Oğlu sözünü **bitirdiğinde** babası söyleyecek bir şey bulamadı.

Oğlu ekledi:

-Teşekkürler, baba. Ne kadar fakir olduğumuzu **gösterdiğin** için!

Simple Present Participles

The Simple Present Tense is called "Geniş Zaman, Wide Tense" in Turkish. It is also known as the aorist or timeless tense grammar. This verb tense is used for habitual situations.

The tense participle also has this same sense for when used as an adjective and it precedes the noun which it describes.

The formation of both the positive **-ir -ır -ür -ur** and negative **-maz -mez**

participles is the same as their respective simple present tense bases.

Positive Timeless Participle

The simple present tense positive sign **-r** is used to mark this type of participle. **akmak** *to flow* becomes **akar** *that which flows* (continually, habitually)

If we place the tense base after the noun then it is a verb:

Nehir, denize kadar akar.

The river flows as far as the sea.

However if we use it in front of a noun then it is an adjective meaning *that which flows*

Yatak odasında akar su var.

There is running water in the bedroom.

[Meaning water is available in that room.]

This is at variance with the Present Participle **akan** *which is flowing*.

Here the meaning is different.

Yatak odasında akan su var.

There is water (which is) flowing in the bedroom.

[The meaning here is that there is leak or maybe the roof is leaking.]

It is apparent that the wide tense participle in **-r** describes what generally happens as a rule and the Present Participle in **-an -en** describes what is happening now.

Many Wide Tense Participles have entered the language as common nouns in their own right:

Yazmak *to write*. simple present tense base **yazar** *writer/author*.

Bu kitabın yazarı Orhan Kemal'dir.

The writer/author of this book is Orhan Kemal.

But if we were to use the Present Participle then the meaning changes.

Bu kitabın yazanı Orhan Kemal'dir.

It is Orhan Kemal who wrote this book.

Negative Timeless participle

The negative participle is also used as an adjective to describe the general state of things. English also uses this construction: *I saw an unbelievable film last night.*

[which is not able to be believed.]

It was an unforgettable film last night.

[which is not able to be forgotten.]

Here we in English are using the negative participle as an adjective by placing it in front of its noun.

But it can also take its verbal form as well:

The film I saw last night was unbelievable.

["It could not be believed" as a verb.]

The film was unforgettable.

It was not able to be forgotten] as verb.

It is all a matter of position of the participle.

Placed before its noun it is an adjectival description.

Placed after its noun it becomes a verb.

Turkish uses these participles in exactly the same manner as English.

Formation of the Negative Timeless Participle.

The simple present tense negative sign -maz/-mez is used to mark this participle.

akmak to flow. becomes **akmaz**

[That which does not flow continually, habitually]

İnanılamaz bir şey oldu!

An unbelievable thing has happened!

["inan-ıl-a-maz" that which is not able to be usually believed]

Dün akşam unutulamaz bir film seyrettik.

We watched an unforgettable film last night.

Garajınızda kullanılamaz olan eski bir bisiklet buldum.

["kullan-ıl-a-maz olan" that which is unable to be used]

I found an old unusable bicycle in your garage.

This example shows the addition of **olan** *that which is*, the present participle of **olmak**, thus helping the listener to discern that the participle is an adjective.

Common Participle Nouns Negative

Many of these negative participles have also become nouns in their own right.

An example of this is **çıkamaz** *that which does not exit*.

This has come to mean a "*cul-de-sac*", as a street sign: **ÇIKMAZ SOKAK** *a street with no exit, cul-de-sac*.

It can also be found on doors which lead nowhere in public buildings **ÇIKMAZ NO EXIT** [Lit Does not exit.]

How to say: As soon as

There is one formula to translate *as soon as* which uses both positive and negative Wide Tense participles in apposition: **Biz gelir gelmez yemek yiyelim.** *As soon as we come, lets eat (a meal).*

As soon as is translated by using the Wide Tense Positive and Negative Participles in apposition: **...ir ...mez Sen gelir gelmez.** *As soon as you come/came.*

1. The person (subject) has to be stated as it is not apparent from the verb form.
2. The tense is taken from the verb of the final statement.
3. Very often the word *when* can be substituted for *as soon as* in English.

Examples showing changes in person:

Ben gelir gelmez bir kaza oldu.

As soon as I came an accident happened.

Sen gelir gelmez bir kaza oldu.

As soon as you came an accident happened.

O gelir gelmez bir kaza olacakmış.

As soon as he comes an accident will probably happen.

Mehmet gelir gelmez bir kaza olabilir.

As soon as Mehmet comes an accident may happen.

Biz gelir gelmez bir kaza oldu.

As soon as we came an accident happened.

Siz gelir gelmez bir kaza oldu.

As soon as you came an accident happened.

Onlar gelir gelmez bir kaza oldu.

As soon as they came an accident happened.

Polis gelir gelmez başka bir kaza oldu.

As soon as the police came another accident happened.

Biz çıkar çıkmaz annem gelecekmiş.

As soon as (when) we go out my mother may arrive.

Onlar oraya varır varmaz parti başlayacak.

As soon as (when) they arrive there the party will begin.

Saying "Whether or not.." in Turkish

The positive and negative Object participles are use in apposition to convey the idea of "whether or not.."

Question: **Yağmur yağıyor mu?** *Is it raining?*

Present Tense

Yağmurun yağıp yağmadığını bilmiyorum.

I don't know whether it is raining or not.

Past Tense

Yağmurun yağıp yağmadığını bilmedim.

I didn't know whether it was raining or not.

Future Tense

Yağmurun yağıp yağmayacağını bilmiyorum.

I don't know if it'll rain or not.

yağıp replaces the Positive Object Participle **yağdığını** which is followed by the Negative Object Participle **yağmadığını** or Negative Future Object Participle **yağmayacağını**.

The meaning becomes "I do not know " that that it is raining OR **(-ip)** it is not raining."

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 32 : İken "while"



Turkish *iken* while, when

There are various ways of describing time relationships in English, consider:

When I saw him, I waved at him.

When I see him, I shall wave at him.

As soon as I see him I shall wave at him.

Whenever I see him I wave at him.

Every time I see him I wave at him.

If I see him, I shall wave at him.

Adverbial Clauses of time has a slightly different sense in relation to tense, time and duration.

They are best studied by example, as it is sometimes rather difficult at first to relate the English Constructions to the corresponding Turkish ones.

Turkish uses the Relative Adjectival Participles widely and at first sight they may be difficult to analyze.

They are logical constructions however and reading and study will be rewarding in hastening understanding.

"iken -ken -yken" meaning *while*

1. **iken** can stand alone or be suffixed as **-ken** (when added to consonants) or **-yken** (when added to vowels).

2. It is invariable and does not follow the rules of vowel harmony.
3. It does not take further suffixes. **iken** is used when the verb action is continuous at a point in time.
4. It may also follow an adjective.

iken with the Present Tenses

-ken is always suffixed to the verb tense sign. As the subject is not always evident, then it is normally stated as in the examples below.

Mehmet kasabaya yürüyorken onu gördüm.

I saw Mehmet while (he was) walking to town.

Sen kasabaya yürüyorken, seni gördüm.

I saw you while (you were) walking to town.

Ben kasabaya yürüyorken, seni gördüm.

I saw you while (I was) walking to town.

Biz kasabaya yürüyorken, onu gördük.

We saw him while we were walking to town.

Siz dans ediyorken, dinleneyim.

Let me rest while you are dancing.

Onlar dans ediyorken, dinlenelim.

Let's rest while they dance.

Biz kasabaya yürürken, onu her gün görürüz.

Every day we see him when (while) we walk to town.

[Simple present habitual yürü-r-ken]

This example shows a slight difference in meaning due to the differing use in the Wide Tense and Present Continuous Tenses.

In these examples the Personal Subject Pronouns have to be used to point to the subject, as **iken** can not be suffixed to pronouns.

iken with Adjectives

iken can be used with adjectives, in this case it can stand alone or be suffixed:

Ben, hasta iken, uyurum.

I sleep while [when] I am ill.

Biz, o hastayken, merak ettik.

While he was ill, we worried.

Onlar, siz uykuda iken, meşgul olacaklar.

They will be busy while you are asleep.

Uykudayken, soyuldular.

They were robbed while they were asleep.

1. The 3rd Person Plural comes from the last verb.
2. It is in the Passive Mood thus states the subject.
3. The Subject Pronouns are used clarify the meaning.

iken with the Past Tenses

If the action is continuous in the past then **iken** can be translated into English: As -were -ing

As I was going to town I saw him.

As we were going to town I saw him.

Past Definite Tense:

Ben İngiltere'deyken, yağmur yağdı.

While I was in England, it rained.

Past Continuous Tense:

Biz İngiltere'ye giderken, yağmur yağıyordu.

When we were going to England it was raining

tam iken just as

A further construction with **iken** is "just as" or "right at the moment that".

This construction uses the word **tam** *complete* to introduce the Adverbial Clause at the point in time:

Biz tam evden çıkarken, yağmur yağmağa başladı.

Just as we were leaving the house it started to rain.

Onlar tam kapıyı açarken, anahtar koptu.

Just as they were opening the door the key broke.

"iken" with Future Tense "-ecekken/-acakken"

When attached to the Future Tense the meaning of **iken** becomes *just as I was about to or instead of*

İngiltere'ye gidecekken, Türkiye'de kaldık.

Instead of going to England we stayed in Turkey.

This may seem difficult to understand but it can be analyzed that **iken** *as/while* is suffixed to the Future Participle **gidecek** *that about to go/which will go* and the Turkish aspect becomes apparent.

"We, while about to go to England, did something different"
(ie. We stayed in Turkey.)

This sense is best translated into English as: *instead of -ing*

Türkiye'de kalacakken, İngiltere'ye gidelim.

Instead of staying in Turkey let's go to England.

"iken" with the "-miş" Past Participle "-mişken -mişken -müşken -muşken"

This construction produces **-mişken** as in **yapmışken** *having done*

yapmışken *having done*

yapılmışken *having been done*

görmüşken *having seen*

görölmüşken *having been seen*

Bu iş bitirilmişken, eve gidelim.

This job having been finished, let's go home.

Aklıma gelmişken, söyleyeyim.

Having come to (my) mind, let me tell you.

Hazır gelmişken bir kahveni içelim.

Having already come, let us drink one of your coffees.

The Negative Simple Present "-mazken/-mezken"

-mezken, -mazken means *though not or while it isn't*

This is a kind of official/public language. This construction is normally used in news and commercials.

Galatasaray'ın yıldız futbolcularından Necati Ateş, kendilerine ödeme yapılamazken, bazı yabancı oyuncuların alacaklarının verildiğini duymanın üzüntü verici olduğunu söyledi.

One of the star players of Galatasaray, Necati Ates, has said that it was disappointing to hear that some foreign players' debts had been paid while there can not be a payment for themselves.

Konu hakkında henüz herhangi bir bilgiye ulaşılamazken, araştırmaların devam ettiği bildirildi.

Here is the "Turkish" English:

While any information can't be reached yet about the subject, it has been told that the investigations keep on.

Here is the "English" English:

Although as yet no information can be communicated about the subject, it has been stated that investigations are continuing.

We can see some differences of tense and negation in the change from "Turkish" English to "English" English. This is because of:

1. Basic grammatical structure differences between the two languages.
2. The difference in local daily usage of each language.

3. It also underlines the fact that literal translation between the two languages is often difficult, and it is better to arrive a suitable translation in ones own language.

These examples could be translated into English in a different way whilst still retaining the intended meaning in Turkish.

A positive statement usually follows this negative form.

The Conversational Method

Saying: *Though not, or while it isn't*

The following method is a little formal :

Çalışmazken susuzum.

Although I have not worked I am thirsty.

Sürmezken yolu bilirim.

Although I do not drive I know the road.

From the last two examples above it can be seen that **iken** takes its person from the main verb at the end of each sentence.

To arrive at the meaning *though not or while it isn't* a construction with **-a rağmen** *in spite of, despite* is used:

Çalışmamama rağmen susuzum.

Despite not working I am thirsty.

Ben sürmememe rağmen yolu bilirim.

Although I do not drive I know the road.

Explanation:

Sür-me-me-m-e

1st **-me** is short infinitive [sür-me] from **sürmek** *to drive*

2nd **-me** is negative short infinitive [sür-me-me] from *sürmemek* *to not drive*

3rd **-m** is suffix producing a verbal noun for 1st sing. Person **sürmemem** *my not driving* [sür-me-me-m]

4 Finally **-e** is suffix for Movement Towards Condition (dative case) *to my not driving* [sür-me-me-m-e] with the addition of **rağmen** to give the meaning of *in spite of/despite*.

Conversational stress is on the first syllable, preceding the negation suffix.
[SÜR-me-me-m-e]

Bilmememe rağmen.

Although I don't/didn't know.

An analysis of this construction:

Bilmek *to know (something)*

Bil *know*

Bilme *to know*, short infinitive positive from *bilmek*

Bilmeme *to not know*, short infinitive negative from *bilmemek*)

Bilmemem. *My not knowing.*

-e rağmen *In spite of*

Bilmememe rağmen.

Despite my not knowing/Although I don't/didn't know.

Mehmet sürememesine rağmen yolu bilirmiş. [Inferential tense]

Although Mehmet can not drive it seems that he knows the road.

The basic sentence is

Mehmet yolu bilirmiş.

It seems Mehmet knows the road. to which we add *although he can not drive*.

Explanation:

Sür-e-me-me-si-n-e

1st **-e-me** is negation suffix of inability [sür-eme-mek]

2nd **-me** is noun producing suffix [sür-eme-me].

This is the short Infinitive Verbal Noun from **sürememek** *to not be able to drive*

3rd **-si** is suffix for 3rd. sing. Person [sür-eme-me-si *Mehmet's inability to drive*]

The **-(n)e** is a suffix for Movement Towards Condition (dative case, including the buffer letter "-n-") thus producing **sürememesine** [sür-eme-me-si-n-e]

Finally the addition of **raġmen** to give the meaning of in *spite of/despite*.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 33 : Verbal Nouns



Verbal Nouns

Further explanations and examples are in the following Ch. 34.

The suffix -(y)e, -(y)a

The Verb sign -(y)e, -(y)a [indicates repeated or continuing activity simultaneous with the main verb.]

Gide gide çarşıya mı gittin?;

Did you go along to the shops then? [going and going]

Göz göre göre onu yaptı.

He did it, eyes wide open. [open and open]

Güle güle! (Leave) Happily!

[said to someone who is departing from "gülmek" "to laugh."]

Güle güle kullan! Use it with smile!

[said to one who has obtained a new item that they will enjoy.]

-(y)erek, -(y)arak *by doing*

The addition of the suffix **-rek** or **-rak** to the -(y)e/-(y)a verb base of the verb means "by doing".

bilerek

[bil-e-rek]

knowingly

Kapıyı açarak evden gitti.
Opening the door, he left the house.

Used with negative verbs
bilmeyerek
[bilme-ye-rek]
unknowingly

istemeyerek
reluctantly

Bu yılki üzüm festivali de yapılamayarak, belediye panayıra dönüştü.
[yap-ıl-a-ma-ya-rak]
Not being able to hold this year's grape festival, the Corporation changed (it) to a street market (instead).

Koşarak gitti.
[kös-a-rak]
He went a-running.

Gülerek baktı.
[gül-e-rek]
She looked laughingly.

Teşekkür ederek evden çıktı.
[ed-e-rek]
Thanking (his host), he left the house.

Telefon ederek sordunuz mu?
[ed-e-rek]
Have you inquired by telephoning?

Gülümseyerek karşılık vermiş.
[gülümse-ye-rek]
She answered smilingly.

Yürüyerek gideceğim.
[yürü-ye-rek]
I shall go by foot (by walking).

Otomobile atlayarak kaçmış.

[atla-ya-rak]

By jumping into a car he escaped.

Bavulunu alarak taksiyi bindi.

[al-a-rak]

Taking his luggage, he got on a taxi.

Kapıyı açarak odama girdim.

[aç-a-rak]

Opening the door I entered the room.

Special case "olarak"

Olarak ("ol-a-rak" from "olmak to become") is widely used. It is best translated by "as a" or "being a"

Dost olarak.

As a friend/Being a friend.

Kesin olarak.

Definitely/Being sure.

Memur olarak.

As a civil servant/Being a civil servant.

İlk kez olarak.

For first time/Being the first time.

Kadın, mutlu olmayarak, boşanma istedi.

[ol-ma-y-a-rak]

The woman, not being happy, wanted a divorce.

Mehmet, kendisine hakim olamayarak bir yumruk attı.

[ol-a-ma-y-a-rak]

Mehmet, not being able to control himself, threw a punch.

-(y)erek/-(y)arak shows an action accompanying or preceding that of the main verb in the sentence.

The gerund formed by affixing **-rek** or **-rak** to the Verb Base **(-y)e** or **(-y)a** is the same for all verbs.

The tense and person is taken from the main verb at the end of the sentence.

-(y)ip "and, also"

The vowel harmony variations are **-(y)ip**, **-(y)ıp**, **-(y)up**, **-(y)üp**

Used when there are two verbs with identical suffixes joined by "and/also" to simplify the first one.

Kalkıp gittik.

[not: kalktık gittik.]

We got up and left

Oturup konuşuyorlar.

[not: oturuyorlar konuşuyorlar]

They are sitting and talking.

Gidip bakmalıyız.

We must go and see.

If one verb is negative then **de** *also* and is inserted between the them.

Pazara gidip de hiç bir şey almadım.

I went to the market and (also) I bought nothing.

-(y)ince "on doing/when"

The vowel harmony variations are **-(y)ince** **-(y)ınca** **-(y)ünce** **-(y)unca**

Signifies action just prior to the main verb:

This translated by *On doing* or *When* in English:

Otobüs gelince, onu binerim.

When the bus arrives, I will get on it.

[On the bus arriving, I will get on it.]

-(y)inceye kadar, -(y)inceye dek -(y)inceye değin "until"

The vowel harmonised variations are **-(y)inceye -(y)ıncaya -(y)ünceye -(y)uncaya**

This signifies "until" [Lit: to-the-on-doing the-amount]. The tense is taken from the final verb.

Otobüs gelinceye kadar, gidemedik.

We couldn't go until the bus came.

[The amount to the bus on coming, we couldn't go]

Otobüs varıncaya kadar, gidemiyorum.

I callon go until the bus arrives.

[The amount to the bus on arriving, I cannot go]

Otobüs duruncaya dek, inmeyin.

Don't get off until the bus stops.

[The amount to the bus stopping, do not get off.]

The Turkish here is cumbersome so it is best learned and translated as "until"

-ene kadar, -ene dek, -ene değin "until"

The vowel harmonised variations are **-ene kadar -ana kadar, -ene dek -ana dek, -ene değin / -ana değin** The meaning is "until" but less formal

Otobüs gelene kadar, gitmiyoruz.

We are not going until the bus comes.

Otobüs gelene dek, gidemedik.

We could not go until the bus came.

-(y)esiye, -(y)asıya "to the point of"

Here the meaning is *to the point of*

Sarhoş olasıya kadar içki içmek.

To drink to the point of becoming drunk.

O öpücük bitesiyse dek sanki cennette kendimi hissettim.

Until that kiss was ending, I felt as though I was in heaven.

Ben seni seviyorum ölesiye, sen beni sevdin gülesiye!

I love you to the point of dying, you loved me to the point of laughing!

-(y)eli, -(y)eli beri, -(y)eliden beri, -diX -eli "since"

The vowel harmonised variations are **-(y)alı, -(y)alı beri, -(y)alıdan beri, -diX -eli / -dıX -alı -düX -eli -duX -alı** All these mean "since" with the **-di** past ending conjugated as needed.

Biz İstanbul'a geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı.

Since we came to Istanbul it has not rained.

Siz İstanbul'a geleli beri hiç yağmur yağmadı.

Since you came to Istanbul it has not rained.

Ben İstanbul'a geleliden beri hiç yağmur yağmadı.

Since I came to Istanbul it has not rained.

Onlar İstanbul'a geldiler geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı. [gel-diler geleli]

Since they came to Istanbul it has not rained.

Mehmet İstanbul'a geldi geleli hiç yağmur yağmadı. [gel-di geleli]

Since Mehmet came to Istanbul it has not rained.

-meden/-madan, -mezden/-mazdan "before, without"

Meaning: *before, without* followed by **evvel** or **önce** to mean before.

Siz gitmeden evvel beni uyandırınız.

Wake me up before you go.

Otobüs kalkmadan önce bir çay içelim.

Let's drink a tea before the bus leaves.

-dikten sonra/-tikten sonra "after doing"

The vowel harmonised and consonant mutated variations are **-dikten sonra/-tikten sonra, -dıktan sonra/-tıktan sonra, -dükten sonra/-tükten sonra, -duktan sonra/-tuktan sonra.**

After the unvoiced consonants "**ç f h k p s ş t**" this suffix is mutated to "**-tikten sonra**" etc.

Meaning: "after doing"

Beni uyandırdıktan sonra hemen kahvaltı yapabilir misin?
Could you make breakfast straight away after waking me.

-r -mez, -r -maz "as soon as"

The positive tense base can have the forms **-r -ar -er -ir ir -ur -ur** according to the verb being used in the sentence.

Turkish is awkward here, literally meaning "between doing and not doing":
The simple present positive and negative tense bases are repeated.

Ben oturur oturmaz telefon çaldı.
As soon as (When) I sat down, the telephone rang.

Mehmet, kapıdan girer girmez cereyan kesildi.
A soon as (Just as) Mehmet entered through the door, the electricity supply was cut.

-dikçe/-tikçe, -dıkça/-tıkça "so long as, the more that, all the while that"

Alışveriş yaptıkça para kazan.
[An advertisement]
Win money while shopping.

Terör devam ettikçe operasyonlar sürecektir.
[A short headline form]
As terror continues the operations (against it) will go on.

Ali'nin durumu gittikçe kötüleşiyor.

Ali's condition is getting worse as it goes (on)

gittikçe [from: gitmek] *as it goes* can be translated as "gradually"

Ali's condition is gradually getting worse.

Fırsatım oldukça fotoğraflarına bakıyorum.

Whenever I have the chance I look at your photographs.

oldukça [from: olmak] *as it becomes/as it is* can be translated as *quite*

O kız oldukça güzel görünüyor.

That girl over there is quite good looking.

Otel postaneden oldukça uzak.

The hotel is quite a way from the post office

Adam yaşadıkça yaşıyor

Man ages as he lives.

-medikçe, -madıkça "so long as it is not, unless"

To understand how Turkish arrives at this suffix: The **-ça/-çe** suffix means *appertaining to*.

This is added to the relative participle of the negative verb thus meaning *appertaining to that which is not done* producing the meaning *unless* in English.

Gerçekten gerekli olmadıkça.

Unless it's really necessary.

Yabancı dil devamlı kullanılmadıkça körelmekte ve unutulmaktadır.

Unless a foreign language is not used regularly it dries up and is forgotten.

[kullan-ıl-ma-dık-ça "appertaining to that which is not used"]

-diği müddetçe "as long as, all the time"

The vowel harmonised and consonant mutated variations are **-diği/-tiği,**

-dığı/-tığı, -dügü/-tüğü, -duğu/-tuğu After the unvoiced consonants **ç f h k p s ş t** this suffix is mutated to **-tiği** etc.

O çalıştığı müddetçe şarki söyler.

He sings all the time he works.

Fenerbahçe kovmadığı müddetçe buradayım.

As long as Fenerbahçe don't kick me out, I'm (still) here.

(Said by a footballer on the transfer list.)

Yaşadığım müddetçe o doktora minnettar olacağım.

As long as I live I will be indebted to that doctor.

Her we can see it is personalised to the subject "as long as I live".

-diği halde "although/in a state of"

Bağırdığım halde kimse yardıma gelmedi.

Although I shouted, no one came.

Bacağı alçıda olduğu halde eve döndü.

He returned home although his leg was plastered.

Bacağı alçıda olduğu halde eve dönecekmiş.

It seems he will return home although his leg is plastered.

-diği için, -diğinden "because of the..."

Bu hali aldığı için, vergi ödemeliyim.

I have to pay taxes because I bought this carpet,

-diği kadar, -dığı kadar, -duğu kadar, -dügü kadar "as much as"

İstedığınız kadar kalınız.

Stay as long as you want.

Senin uyuduğun kadar ben uyuyamam.

I cannot sleep as much as you do.

-eceğine, -acağına, -ecek yerde, -acak yerde "instead of"

İzmir'e yürüyeceğine, otobüsü bineceğim.
Instead of walking to Izmir, I will get on the bus.
[Lit: board the bus]

-mekle, -makla "with/by doing"

Günümü hep yazı yazmakla geçirdim.
I spent all of my day writing.

-mektense, -maktansa, -mekten ise/, -maktan ise "rather than doing"

Ankara'ya gitmektense, İstanbul'a gittim.
Rather than going to Ankara, I went to Istanbul.

-meksizin, -maksızın, -meden, -madan "without"

"-meden" is more frequently used.

Taksiye falan binmeksizin yürüyerek Aksaray'a varabilirdik.
Without getting a taxi or anything we were able to get to Aksaray by walking.

Para ödemedem, ücretsiz olarak onu kullanabilirsiniz
Without paying, you can use it free.
[Lit: ücretsiz olarak being un-priced]

Şu resme 10 saniye boyunca gülmeden bakar mısın?
Can you look at this picture for 10 seconds without laughing?.

-casına/-cesine "like, as if"

This suffix is added to a tense base.

-ırcasına
Yağmur, bardaktan boşanırcasına yağıyordu.
It rained as if being emptied from tumblers.

-mişçasına
Zavallı, böylesini görmemişçesine bakıyordu.

The poor chap looked as if he was not seeing.

-(1)yormuşçasına

Anlatılanları alıyormuşçasına kafasını salladı.

He nodded his head as if he understood what was being said.

-acakmışçasına

Burada temelli kalacakmışçasına eşyalarını yerleştirmeye başladı.

He began to place his belongings as if he would be staying here for good.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 34 : Adverbial Clauses



Adverbial Clauses Explained

Order of Main and Subordinate Clauses

Subordinate clauses are treated differently in Turkish. In English we always put the main part of the meaning at the beginning of a sentence as below:

*I shall go home **when** the party is over.*

*I went out to the library **after** (eating) dinner.*

*He put on his pyjamas **before** he went to bed.*

*We can have supper **as soon as** we arrive at the hotel.*

All the above are ways of describing what will or did happen. Turkish as always says it backwards.

The Turkish construction puts the most important part at the end of the sentence with the main verb as the final word.

English Construction: *I shall go home when the party is over.*

Turkish Construction: When the party is over, *I shall go home.*
Parti bitince, eve gidiyorum.

English Construction: *I went out to the library after (eating) dinner.*

Turkish Construction: After (eating) dinner, *I went out to the library.*
Yemek yedikten sonra, kütüphaneye çıktım.

English Construction: *Ali put on his pyjamas before he went to bed.*

Turkish Construction: Before he went to bed, *Ali put on his pyjamas.*
Ali, yatmadan önce, pijamasını giydi

English Construction: *We can have supper as soon as we arrive at the hotel.*

Turkish Construction: As soon as we arrive at the hotel, *we can have supper.*
Otele varır varmaz (varınca), akşam yemeğini yiyebiliriz.

This construction puts the main verb last in the sentence, which of course is one of the main rules of Turkish Grammar.

Differing Aspects of Adverbial Clauses

"Who did or will do what? and When?"

Time modifying words and clauses, (*before, after, as soon as, etc.*) are also managed differently in Turkish. One of the problems is the relationship of the temporal adverb with the subjects and objects.

English Construction: I went out to the library *after eating dinner.*

Turkish Construction: *After eating dinner* I went out to the library.
Yemek yedikten sonra, kütüphaneye çıktım.

The subject or objects can be changed easily in English. The same applies to Turkish, but treats this problem in a different way.

Aspects of Time Clauses

The locution **-dikten sonra** means *after doing*. As an example **yazdıktan sonra** means *after writing*.

The tense and person is taken from the final verb:

Mektubu yazdıktan sonra çıktık.
After writing the letter we went out.

Mektubu yazdıktan sonra çıkacağım.
After writing the letter I will go out.

Sen mektubunu yazdıktan sonra çıkabilirsin.

After writing your letter you can go out

Odasını temizledikten sonra yatağa girdi.

After cleaning his room he went to bed.

English Model: *I went out to the library after (eating) dinner.*

Turkish Model: **Yemek yedikten sonra, kütüphaneye çıktım.**

Mehmet went out to the library after he had (eaten) dinner.

Mehmet, yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıktı.

You went out to the library after Mehmet had (eaten) dinner.

Siz, Mehmet yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıktınız.

He went out to the library after (eating/having eaten) dinner.

O, yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıktı.

I went out to the library after you had (eaten) dinner.

Ben, siz yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıktım.

They will go out to the library after (having eaten) dinner.

Onlar, yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıkacaklar.

I used to out to the library after we had (eaten) dinner.

Ben, biz yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıkardım.

You went out to the library after we had (had) dinner.

Siz, biz yemek yedikten sonra kütüphaneye çıktınız.

In these examples the changes in the final verb tense in Turkish changes the English tense of the actual aspect of "eating dinner".

It is not usual for us to state this "eating aspect" in English as it is normally understood and has become redundant.

There are many differing aspects of subject, object and tenses in this simple sentence and changes have to be made in Turkish, just as in English.

Clauses of Place *Where, Wherever*

English Model: *I can not remember where I left my bicycle.*

Turkish Model: **Bisikletimin bıraktığım yerini hatırlayamıyorum.**
[hatırla-ya-m-ıyorum "I can not remember(ing)"]

I can not remember where you left my bicycle.

Bisikletimin bıraktığınız yerini hatırlayamıyorum.

I can not remember where he left my bicycle.

Bisikletimin bıraktığı yerini hatırlayamıyorum.

I can not remember where I left his bicycle.

Bisikletinin bıraktığım yerini hatırlayamıyorum.

We will not remember wherever our bicycles are.

Bisikletimizin bıraktığımız yerini hatırlayamayacağız.

He can never remember where to leave your bicycle.

Her zamanki gibi (Asla) bisikletinin bırakacağı yerini hatırlayamaz.

You could not remember where you left my bicycle.

Bisikletimin bıraktığın yerini hatırlayamadın.

They can not remember where they left their bicycles.

Bisikletlerinin bıraktıkları yerini hatırlayamıyorlar.

We just need to be aware of what we are trying to say at the time, and use the Turkish Constructions accordingly

About Noun Clauses and Adverbial Clauses.

Example of a Noun Clause

I can not remember where you left my bicycle.

This is a **Noun Clause** as it can be replaced by pronoun *it*

I can't remember it.

Example of an Adverbial Clause:

I can shop *where credit cards are accepted*

This is an **Adverbial Clause** which is replaced by an adverb.

I can shop *there*.

Adverbial Clauses of Time "when"

There are many ways of saying "when" in English and of course the same applies in Turkish.

When I've painted the house, I am going on holiday.

As soon as I have painted the house, I am going on holiday.

After I have painted the house I am going on holiday.

On the house being painted, I am going on holiday.

1. These choices in English help us to fine tune our meaning.
2. The Turkish language has similar nuances of intention.
3. In some cases the choice is easy, in others it may alter the meaning slightly.
4. The choice of the expression always relies on the circumstance appertaining at the time.
5. The Turkish word order is contrary to English as the main verb must be last in the sentence:

I shall go to the cafe, when the job is finished **English Construction**

When the job is finished, I shall to the cafe. **Turkish Construction**
İş bitince, lokantaya gideceğim

When I got up, it was raining hard.

Yataktan kalktığı zaman çok yağmur yağıyordu.

They were dancing while I was playing the piano

Ben piyano çalarken onlar dans ediyorlardı

I was very tired when I returned from the party.

Partiden döndüğümde çok yorgundum. (yorgun idim).

My sister found the money when she was sweeping the carpet.
Kız kardeşim halıyı süpürürken parayı buldu.

When the rain stopped we returned home.
Yağmur durunca evlerimize döndük

"önce, -meden önce" before

I went out to play before I had dinner **English Construction**

Before I had dinner, I went out to play **Turkish Construction**
Akşam yemeğini yemeden önce dışarıya oynamaya çıktım.

We must go home before it gets dark.
Hava kararmadan önce eve gitmeliyiz.

I will finish everything by the time my father comes home.
Babam eve gelmeden önce her şeyi bitireceğim.

If there is no verb in the sentence : **-dan önce/-tan önce** or **-den önce/-ten önce** is used:

Before May **Mayıstan önce**

Before April **Nisandan önce**

Before 5 o'clock **Saat beşten önce**

Before 2 o'clock **Saat ikiden önce.**

"-dan dolayı, yüzünden" because of

Because of what Mehmet has done we can never succeed.
Mehmet'in yaptığından dolayı asla başaramayız

Because of what Mehmet has done we can never succeed.
Mehmet'in yaptığı şey yüzünden asla başaramayız

Because of what Mehmet has done we will never be able to succeed.
Mehmet'in yaptığı şey yüzünden asla başaramayacağız [will not be able to].

"sonra, -dikten sonra" after, afterwards

I turned the lights off after my sister went to bed **English Construction**

After my sister went to bed, I turned off the lights. **Turkish Construction**
Kız kardeşim yattıktan sonra ışıkları söndürdüm.

After class I'll ask the teacher a question.
Ders bittikten sonra öğretmene bir soru soracağım.

After leaving Ankara I'll write a letter to you.
Ankara'dan ayrıldıktan sonra sana mektup yazacağım.

"-dığında, -ınca, iken" as, while

Ali went to bed as the clock struck ten **English Construction**

As the clock struck ten, Ali went to bed. **Turkish Construction**
Saat onu vurunca Ali yattı.

We saw a man running down the stairs as we were going out.
Evden dışarı çıkınca merdivenlerden aşağı koşan bir adam gördük.

The poor man was going home as the snow was falling.
Kar yağdığında zavallı adam evine gidiyordu.

The boy met a fisherman as he was walking along the seashore.
Çocuk deniz kıyısına doğru yürürken bir balıkçıya rastladı.

"tam, iken" just as

The phone rang just as I was leaving the house.
Just as I was leaving the house, the phone rang.
Ben, tam evden ayrılırken telefon çaldı.

It started to rain just as I was leaving home.
Ben, tam evden ayrılırken yağmur yağmaya başladı.

"esnasında" during

Necessary actions to take during a heart attack.

Kalp krizi esnasında yapılması gerekenler

"iken" while

We stayed at a hotel while we were in Istanbul

While we were in Paris, we stayed at a hotel.

Biz İstanbul'da iken bir otelde kaldık.

While the children were playing in the garden it started to rain.

Çocuklar bahçede oynarken yağmur yağmaya başladı.

I will visit my friends while you are in Ankara,

Sen Ankara'dayken arkadaşlarımı ziyaret edeceğim.

"-masıyla bir oldu" no sooner than, as

The dance had no sooner started than the lights went out.

No sooner had the dance started then the lights went out.

Dansın başlamasıyla ışıkların sönmesi bir oldu.

I recognised him as soon as I saw him.

Onu görmemle tanımam bir oldu.

"her ne zaman" whenever

Whenever I started to speak English, my friend used to laugh.

My friend used to laugh whenever I started to speak English.

Her ne zaman İngilizce konuşmaya başlasam arkadaşım gülerdi.

Whenever I drink too much coffee I cannot sleep well.

Her ne zaman çok kahve içsem iyice uyuyamam.

"her bir zaman, her zamanki gibi" every time that, as usual

Every time I meet her we go the cinema.
Onunla her karşılađım zaman sinemaya gideriz.

It is not a bad thing to be late every time.
Geç kalmak her zaman kötü deđildir.

Our love is in danger as usual!
Aşkımız her zamanki gibi tehlikede!

"...ır ...mez" as soon as

Other meanings: "the moment that, directly that, immediately that (once), once, when"

As soon as Ali arrives I'll ring you.
Ali gelir gelmez sana telefon edeceđim.

The moment I finish this job I'll take a break.
Bu iş bitirir bitirmez bir mola vereceđim.
[mola vermek to take a break]

I will give him the message directly I get there.
Oraya varır varmaz ona mesajı vereceđim.

They are going to inform us immediately (once) they hear the news.
Haberi duyar duymaz bize bildirecekler.

We'll go when my father is ready.
Babam hazır olur olmaz gideceđiz.

"-diđi zaman" Now that, When that

Now (that) you mention it, of course I do remember.
Ondan bahsettiđiniz zaman, elbet hatırlıyorum.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 35 : *Ki* "that, which, who"



About *Ki*

*In Turkish there are 3 types of **ki** and its plural **-kiler***

Conjunction: *that, so that, as, but what, but.*

Pronoun: *that/those which, which, who.*

Idiom: *thus, like that, so it is.*

There are many meanings of **-ki** as a suffix or as a stand alone word:

who, which, that

so, that, such, that

seeing, considering that

as, though

when

I wonder?

in, of

Ki as a Conjunction

This word **ki** replaces the English words *who, that, which* when joining two ideas in relation to each other.

A comma is usually placed after the subject before **ki**.

Oran, ki sen bugün gördün, benim en iyi arkadaşım.

Oran, who you saw today, is my best friend.

Matematik, ki bir çok insan nefret eder, benim en sevdiğim derstir.

Maths, which many people hate, is my favorite class.

Ki is also used for joining two sentences together.

Biliyorum ki beni seviyorsun.

I know that you love me.

This method is based on Persian Grammar although understandable is NOT the natural Turkish method.

It is more suitable to European thinking.

The correct Turkish method uses the **-dik** Relative Object participle:

Beni sevdiğini biliyorum.

I know that you love me.

[Lit: Me that-love-you knowing-am-I].

sevdiğ- "that loves" + **-in** "your" + **-i** "object marker".

Both ideas "Beni the person" and "sevdiğini their loving" become objects of the verb "I know".

Ali'nin arabasını temiz ettiğinizi görüyorum.

[et-tiğ-iniz-i]

I see that you have washed Ali's car.

Ki as a Suffix

The suffix **ki** *who, that, which* is often used with the Static Position suffix **-daki -deki** to show "where an object is".

In Turkish the addition of **ki** to a located object completes the meaning.

It becomes a descriptive adjective of location.

In English the relative pronoun "who" in this relationship is often not included.

Bahçedeki çocuk top oynuyor

The child (who is) in the garden is playing ball.

The use of the relative **ki** *who, which, that* is necessary in Turkish although in English it can be omitted.

Without "ki" then "Bahçede çocuk" is meaningless.

"BahçeDEKİ çocuk" means "The child WHO IS IN the garden" showing that "the child" is specific and "is in the garden, "-deki" becomes an adjective standing in front of its noun describing the position of "the child".

Elimdeki kitap eskidir.

The book (that is) in my hand is old.

[Lit: Hand-of-mine-in-which-is book old-is.]

["The "book" is described by an adjective of location.

Yanımdaki para yok.

I don't have money with me

[Lit: Side-of me-at-which-is money there is not.]

Masadaki bardağı bana verin.

Give me the glass (which is) on the table.

[Lit: Table-on-which-is the-glass to-me give.]

Kedi hasta(dır).

The cat is sick.

Hasta kedi.

The sick cat

hasta is originally an adjective, so it can be used as an adjective without any change.

Kedi evde(dır).

The cat is at home.

Evdeki kedi.

The cat, (which is) at home

evdeki *which is at home* is an adjectival expression of place describing "where the cat is".

To use such an expression as an adjective, the **-ki** *that which* completes the description.

Sokaktaki adam.

The man (who is) in the street.

Here **sokakta** is not an adjective, but a noun plus a suffix, therefore *-ki* is added to make an adjective.

Adam sokakta(dır).

The man is on the street.

Here, **sokakta** is not an adjective but a noun indicating the location, therefore *-ki* is not required.

Ki as an Idiom

This **ki** is often used in comparison as in:

oysa ki

if it is thus, if that's the way it is, thus, so then

hal bu ki

the condition is this, that is the way it is, so then

These locutions are often written as a single word

oysaki

so, then

halbuki

It's this way, like this

Ki as a Relative Pronoun

In the completion of descriptive nouns, the suffix **-ki** can be added to the completed noun and then used in place of the noun + noun completion.

Ali'nin arabası, Ayşe'nin arabasından daha güzeldir.

Ali's car is better than Ayşe's car.

Ali'nin arabası, Ayşe'ninkinden daha güzeldir.

[Ayşe'nin-ki-nden]

Ali's car is better than Ayşe's (one).

Koltuklarımız, Fatma'ninkilerden daha yenidir.

[Fatma'nın-ki-ler-den]

Our chairs are newer than Fatma's ones.

Bizimkiler, Fatma'nın koltuklarından daha yenidir.

[Bizim-ki-ler]

Our ones are newer than Fatma's chairs.

Bizimkilerden mi bir tane alırsanız.

[Bizim-ki-ler-den]

Why don't you take one of ours.

Bahçenin domatesi, seranın domatesinden daha lezzetlidir.

The garden tomatoes are tastier than the greenhouse tomatoes.

["Bahçenin domatesi" particular tomatoes]

Bahçeninkiler, seranınkinden daha lezzetlidir.

The garden ones are tastier than the greenhouse ones.

["Bahçeninkiler" [particular ones]]

Bahçe domatesi, sera domatesinden daha lezzetlidir.

Garden tomatoes are tastier than greenhouse tomatoes.

["Bahçe domatesi" tomatoes generally]

Bahçekiler, serakinden daha lezzetlidir.

Garden ones are tastier than greenhouse ones.

["Bahçekiler" [general ones]]

Ahmet'in kinin yerine Ali'nin kitabını alsana.

Why don't you take Ali's book instead of Ahmet's one.

Kiler in the plural

içindekiler *contents*

[Lit: those which are inside]

Odanın içindekileri hepsi kiralamış.

Apparently all the room's contents are on hire.

In dictionaries the word "contents" is shown as "içindekiler".
It is a string of suffixes added to the basic word **iç** *inside* [iç-i-nde-ki-ler]

This is the reason that it is difficult to "look up" words in Turkish dictionaries.
This is another language hurdle that the Turkish language student has to surmount.

Vowel changes to "ki"

-ki is not usually subject to the vowel harmony changes but with one exception:
-kü is added to words whose last vowel is **ö** or **ü**.

Bugünkü planımız ki sinemaya gidelim.
Our plan for today is to go to the cinema.

Bugünkünün filimi güzeldi.
[Bugün-kü-nün "today-which-of the-film"]
Today's film was good.

Dünkü hava çok güzeldi.
Yesterday's weather was nice.

In both cases, the words **bugün/dün** are used in adjective-like functions.

Without **-kü** then **Dün hava çok güzeldi** would mean *Yesterday the weather was nice*.

"Ki" as a separate word

The Natural Turkish constructions below are preferred. The Persian "ki" construction is gradually coming into use especially in newspaper reporting.

The "Ki" construction: **Film o kadar üzücüydü ki, ağlamalıydım.**
The Turkish construction: **Film o kadar üzücü olduğundan ağlamalıydım.**
The film was so sad, that I had to cry.

The "Ki" construction: **Hava o kadar sisliydi ki, hiç bir şey göremiyordum.**
The Turkish construction: **Hava o kadar sisli olduğundan, hiç bir şey göremiyordum.**

The weather was so foggy, that I hardly saw anything.

The "Ki" construction: **Herkes bilir ki, dünya yuvarlaktır.**

The Turkish construction: **Herkes dünyanın yuvarlak olduğunu bilir.**

Everybody knows that the world is round.

The "Ki" construction: **Oturdum ki, biraz dinleneyim.**

The Turkish construction: **Dinlenmek için oturdum.**

I sat down (in order) to have a rest.

The "Ki" construction: **Odadan içeri girmişti ki telefon çaldı.**

The Turkish construction: **Odadan içeri tam girdiği zaman telefon çaldı.**

The phone rung just as he entered the room.

Madem ki geldin o zaman konuşalım.

Seeing that you have come, let's have a chat then.

İyi ki erken gelmişiz, yoksa yer bulamazdık.

Its a good job that we came early, otherwise we would not have found a place.

Neden bu kadar sinirleniyorsun ki?

Why are you getting so upset?

"-ki" at the end of a sentence shows a shock, emphasis, exaggeration or curiosity.

İçerdeki masanın üzerinde duran gömlekler yeni mi?

Are the shirts lying on top the table inside new?

Evet bugün aldım. Seninkileri de gördün mü?

Yes I bought Then today. Did you see yours?

("seninkiler = senin gömleklerin *your (own) shirts*")

Yoo, nerede ki?

No, where are they then?

If **ki** does not make an adjective, it should be always written separately.

Some uses of "Ki"

"who, which, that"

Bir çocuk ki çok yaramaz.
A child who is very naughty.

Anlaşıldı ki bu işi o yapmış.
It's understood that he's the one who did this.

Sanmam ki gelecek.
I don't think he'll come.

Bir şey yapmadım ki pişmanlık duyayım.
I haven't done anything that I should feel sorry about.

"so that, such that"
Öyle ucuz ki herkes alabilir.
It's so cheap that everyone can afford it.

"but, Would you believe it?"
Eve geldim ki kapı duvar.
I came home, but (ki? would you believe it?) nobody answered the door.

Elimi cebime attım ki para yok.
I felt in my pocket for it, but (ki? would you believe it?) the cash wasn't there.

"seeing that, considering that"
Adam üşümüş ki paltosunu giymiş.
The man must have been cold, seeing that he put on his coat.

"such as, though"
Ne yazık ki!
What a shame!

"When"
Henüz uykuya dalmıştım ki, bir patlama oldu.
I'd just dropped off to sleep when there was an explosion.

"I wonder?"
Bilmem ki ne yapsam?
What should I do, I wonder?

"Indicates frustration, disapproval, doubt, or anxiety"

O bana inanmaz ki!
She won't believe me at all?

Ama ona yapamam ki?
But I can not do that anyhow?

"Is used for emphasis"
Öyle güzel ki!
That is so beautiful!

Öyle bir para döktü ki!
He spent and spent!

Araba ki ne araba!
That's some car and a half!

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 36 : Demonstratives



Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives

The Demonstrative Adjectives "this and that, these and those" and Demonstrative Pronouns "this one, that one, these ones, those ones" demonstrate and describe which item is being mentioned.

The Simple Form *this and that, these and those*

bu *this (here) or this (which was just mentioned)*
bunlar *these*

şu *that (nearby) or that (which follows on)*
şunlar *those (nearby)*

o *that (over there, yonder)*
onlar *those (over there)*

When adding any suffixes including the plural suffix **-lar** buffer letter **-n-** is always used with the demonstratives, thus forming the plurals **bunlar**, **şunlar**, **onlar**

bu kedi *this cat*
bu kediler *these cats*
bunlar *these (ones)*

şu fincan *that cup*
[near to, between]
şu fincanlar *those cups*
şunlar *those (ones)*

o adam *that man over there, yonder*
o adamlar *those men*
onlar *those (ones)*

This and These

bu *this (here)* OR *this (which was just mentioned)* and the plural **bunlar** *these*
Turkish has two words for "that, those"

Şu *that (nearby)* OR *that (which follows on)* and the plural **şunlar** *those (nearby)*

Şu signifies something near by or something between the speakers.

Şu also means "that which follows" as in **şu tavsiye** *the following recommendation*.

O *that yonder* and the plural **Onlar** *those yonder* signifies items far away or which does not lie between the speakers.

O and **onlar** are often used for descriptions of happenings in foreign countries and cities.

About the usage of "şu"

Question: **Şu ne?** *what is that (just there)?*

Answer: **O bir gazete** *that is a newspaper*

As an answer "**Şu bir gazete**" is incorrect. It is only used as an adjective describing "the newspaper".

The correct answer is **O bir gazete**.

As a phrase in its own right **Şu bir gazete** *That (just there) is a newspaper* is used, but not as an answer to a question like **Şu ne?** *What's that?*

If you are asked **Şu masanın üstündeki nedir?** *What is it on that table?* then would be either **O bir gazete** or just **gazete**, not "**Şu bir gazete**".

If you are describing it **Şu bir gazete** is correct but to ask for it you must say **Nerede o gazete?** not "**Nerede şu gazete?**"

Summary:

Question: **Şu ne?** *What is that?*

Answer: **O bir gazete.** *That is a newspaper.*

Question of Place: **Nerede o gazete?** NOT "Nerede şu gazete?"

The disparaging meaning of "Şu"

Although **şunca** and **şunlarca** are not normally in use, they are sometimes used for disparagement.

In Turkish they can be used to despise something in quantity or magnitude, muscular power.

If someone has a small wound and is complaining too much about it then one could say: **Şunca/Şuncacik yaradan ölmezsın.**

You won't die from such a small wound. (surely not!)

Care must be taken using **şu** and its extensions as they are used in a derogatory sense according to context.

Şu adama bakın!

Look at that bloke!

Şunu istemedim!

I didn't want that!

[damn thing]

Şu kahrolasıca herif kim?

Who is that damn fellow?

[quite strong language]

This is a "frozen form" **kahrolasıca** [from "kahrolmak" "to be distressed"]
-sıca is a rarely used suffix indicating *having the attribute of*.

This utterance is considered rather rude.

You can also say: **kaholsun!** *Let him be dammed!*

It is like a bad swear word in English. Be careful in its use!

The Suffixed Forms of the Demonstratives

The Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives **bu** *this*, **şu** *that*, **o** *that yonder* use buffer letter **-n-** to become **bun-** **şun-** **on-** when adding any further suffixes.

This includes the plural suffix **-lar** buffer letter **-n-** is always used with the demonstratives, thus forming the plurals **bunlar** **şunlar** **onlar**.

bu *this*

bunlar *these*

buna *to this*

bunlara *to these*

bunun *of this*

bunların *of these*

bunu *this (object)*

bunları *these (obj.)*

bunda *in/on/at this*

bunlarda *in/etc. these*

bundan *from this*

bunlardan *from these*

bununla *with this*

bunlarla *with these*

şu *that (nearby, between))*

şunlar *those*

şuna *to that*

şunlara *to those*

şunun *of that*

şunların *of those*

şunu *that (object)*

şunları *those (obj.)*

şunda *in/on/at that*

şunlarda *on those*

şundan *from that*

şunlardan *from those*

şunla *with that*

şunlarla *with those*

o *that yonder*

onlar *those yonder*

ona *to that*

onlara *to those*

onun *of that*

onların *of those*

onu *that (object)*

onları *those (obj.)*

onda *in/on/at that*

onlarda *on those*

ondan *from that*

onlardan *from those*

onunla *with that*

onlarla *with those*

The suffix "-ca concerning"

This is used with the Demonstrative Pronoun to produce:

bunca *all this*

bunlarca *all these*

onca *all that*

onlarca *all those*

Although "şunca" and "şunlarca" are not normally in use but they are sometimes used for contempt

used for contempt.

The addition of **-ca** produces an adjective which means "*all this/that amount of*".

Bunca emeğim boşa gitti.

All this work of mine was in vain.

["all this amount of my work"]

Bunca kitabı, kitaplıkta dursunlar diye mi aldın?

Did you buy all these books (just) to fill the bookcase?

["all this amount of books"]

Bunca arkadaşımın arasından onu mu beğendin?

Between all these friends of mine, was it (only) him you liked?

["all this amount of my friends"]

Bunca yıldır bu okuldayım, böyle olay görmedim.

I was at this school all these years and I have not seen such a thing (before).

["all these years"]

Bunca kediyi nasıl besleyeceksin ki?

How do you feed all these cats?

["all this amount of cats"]

The addition of **bunca** replaces **bu kadar** *this amount of* and **onca** replaces **o kadar** *that amount of*.

bunca *all this*

"şunca" Not used

onca *all that*

bunlarca *all these*

"şunlarca" Not used

onlarca *all those*

Bu ne? ;

What's this?

Bu bir büyük kedi.

This is a big cat.

Avluda bunca uzun kuyruklu kedi cirit atıyorlar.

All these long tailed cat are running wild in the yard.

["cirit atmak" Literally "to throw a javelin" but used here idiomatically meaning "run amok, swarm wildly".]

Başka eğlencemiz mi var şuncacığın dışında

*Is there anything more amusing for us, **other than this!***

[the "-cik" suffix shows "despite"]

bunca and **onca** are plural and they take a singular object

The substantive that it describes is always in the singular.

bunca kedi, onca kedi *all these/those cats* is similar to **Bu kediler, O kediler.**
these cats, those cats.

O ne?

What is that over there?

O bir dergi.

That is a magazine.

Bunca dergiyi nereye koyacaksın?

Where are you going to put all these magazines?

[Plural is assumed from "bunca"]

Bunlar ne?

What are these?

Bunlar yeşil elma.

these (ones) are green apples.

Şunlar ne?

What are those?

Onlar beyaz ev.

Those are white houses.

Onlar kim?

Who are those (people) over there?

Onlar genç kızlar.

Those (people) are young girls.

Yarın onca genç kız Ayşe'nin partiye gidiyormuş.

All those girls are going to Ayşe's party tomorrow.

["all that amount of girls"]

Should we use **Onlarca kız** or **Onca kız**?

Onlarca kız means: there are some girls in groups containing 10 girls.

Buna bakar mısınız?

Would you look after this?

[Motion Towards Object: "-a bamak" means "to look after"]

Bunlara bakar mısınız?

Would you look after these?

Onu bakar mısınız?

Would you look at that?

[Direct Object "-u bamak" means "to look at"]

Onları bakar mısınız?

Would you look at those?

Adverbial Forms of the Demonstratives:

There are further derivations of **bu**, **şu**, **o** which have produced the words **böyle**, **şöyle**, **öyle** the meanings are as follows: **böyle** *In this way/thus*

Onu böyle yaptım.

I did it like this.

["böyle" is usually used with the First Person Pronoun]

şöyle *like that/in that manner*

Onu şöyle yapın!

Do it like that!

["şöyle" is usually used with the imperative]

öyle *such as that/like that*

Onu öyle yaptı.

He did it like that!

[Past tense is more distant, "öyle" is used]

The **-ce** suffix can also be added to form adverbs:

böylece *In this way/thus*

"şöylece" is not used very often

öylece *such as that/like that*

The **-ce** suffix give a sense of completion:

Böylece iş tamamlandı.

And so the job was completed thus.

Böyle bir iş yapmayın!

Don't do anything like (this) that!

[in Turkish "bu" and "böyle" are used regarding a specific action, such as "jumping on the bed", whereas English uses the word "That!" as opposed to the Turkish "This!" for emphasis.]

Böylece onu yapın!

Do it like that!

[Turkish Lit: "Do it like this!"]

şöyle böyle *just so-so*

[Lit: "like that, like this", as French "comme ci comme ca"]

When asked *How are you?* then **şöyle böyle** can be given as an answer *"So so, I'm up and down, I'm getting on OK"*

Öyle bir sağanak yağmur yağdı ki.

There was such a downpour that (I can't begin to tell you).

The "Formula Speak" **Öyle mi?** is used when listening with apparent disbelief to someone describing events, meaning *Well I never!, Go on then!, Really?*

This formula is heavily used in daily conversation.

Examples of Extended Forms

Bu ne?

What's this?

Bu bir büyük kedi.

This is a big cat.

Bunca kedi uzun kuyruklu(dur).

All these cats are long tailed.

Bütün bu kediler uzun kuyrukludur.

All these cats are long tailed

Şu ne?

What is that (just there)?

O bir gazete.

That is a newspaper.

Onca gazete dünkü'nün.

All those newspapers are yesterday's.

Bütün o gazeteler dünkü'nün.

All those newspapers are yesterday's.

O ne?

What is that over there?

O bir dergi.

That is a magazine.

Bunlarca dergi.

All these are magazines.

Bunlar ne?

What are these?

Bunlar yeşil elma.

These (ones) are green apples.

Şunlar ne?

What are those?

Onlar beyaz evler.

Those are white houses.

Onlar kim?

Who are those (people) over there?

Onlar genç kızlar.

Those (people) are young girls.

Onlarca kızlar genç.

All those girls are young.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 37 : Spatial



Spatial or "Lost in Space"

The suffix **-re-** or **-ra-** means *place* or *place of*

nerede? means *Where?*

[Lit: *ne-re-de* what-place-at]

Suffixing the demonstratives **bu ş u o** *this, that, that yonder* with **-ra-** meaning *place of* the basic locations are formed:

bura *here*

[Lit: this place]

ş ura *there*

[Lit: that place]

ora *that yonder*

[Lit: that place over there]

These words are not very often used in this pure form but are extended to show the place *where at, from where, to where* by the addition of a suitable suffix.

The Basic Spatial

Adding the Static Position Suffix (Locative) **-de** or **-da** *in, on, at* forms the basic locations:

The Singular Specific Place

burada

here

[Lit: "bu-ra-da" this-place-at]

şurada

there

orada

over there

nerede?

where?

The Plurals Spatially more vague

buralarda

hereabouts, around here

[Lit: "bu-ra-lar-da" these-places-at]

şuralarda

thereabouts, around there

oralarda

thereabouts over there, around about over there

nerelerde?

whereabouts?

Extended Spatial

*To show movement from or movement to a place or places the suffixes **-dan** from or **-a** to, towards are used.*

buradan *from here*

["burdan" as spoken]

oraya *to there*

We also use the same construction in English.

If a child strays too near to the fire, then the mother will say: "Get away *from there!*".

1. English does not say "come to here", "go to there".

Older English used forms "Come hither", "Go hence".

2. However Turkish must use the **-a/-e** and **-den/-dan** suffixes to show movement towards or from a location.
3. Basically Turkish is using "hence", "hither" and even "thence" and "thither".
4. English would say "hither" and "thither" in the old days, and this is what is happening in Turkish.
5. In English these words are no longer used in daily speech.

Singular Extended Spatial

buradan *from here*

buraya *to here*

şuradan *from there*

şuraya *to there*

oradan *from there*

oraya *to there*

nereden? *where from?*

nereye? *where to?*

The plural forms **buralarda**, **şuralarda**, **oralarda**, **nerelerde** cause the meaning to be more generalized in both space and location.

1. **More vague: buralarda** *hereabouts, around here*
2. **More spatial: şuralarda** *thereabouts, around there, over there*
Meanings based on **şuralarda** are in the near vicinity
3. **More distant: oralarda** *thereabouts, over there, around about*
meanings based on **oralarda** are more distant (maybe in another country).
4. **Any mixture of the three: nerelerde?** *whereabouts?*

buralardan *from hereabouts*

[bu-ra-lar-dan]

şuralardan *from around there*
[şu-ra-lar-dan]

oralardan; *over around there*
[o-ra-lar-dan]

nerelerden? *whereabouts from?*
[ne-re-ler-den?]

buralara *to around here*
[bu-ra-lar-a]

şuralara *to around there*
[şu-ra-lar-a]

oralara *to those parts*
[o-ra-lar-a]

nerelere *whereabouts to?*
[ne-re-ler-e?]

The plural forms are vaguer and wider. They are used as in English to make these distinctions in place and space.

Şuracıkta büyük otel var.
There is a big hotel just there.

Kredi Bankası nerede?
Where is the Kredi Bank?

Çarşı nerelerde?
Whereabouts are the shops?

Buradan saat sekizde çıkalım
Let's leave (from) here at 8 o' clock.

All the various Noun Conditions can be used to extend the demonstrative pronouns.

bura(sı) *here*

burayı *here (obj.)*

buraya *to here*

burada *at here*

buradan *from here*

buranın *belonging to here, of here*

buralar *hereabouts*

bura(sı)yla *with this place here*

The same is also valid for **şura(sı)**, **ora(sı)** and also interrogative **nere(si)?**

Example Basic Spatial

Buralarda bir güzel restoran var mı?

Is there a good restaurant around here?

Buraya gel!

Come (to) here!

Oradan yeşil bir araba geldi.

A green car came from over there.

Şurada büyük bir otel var.

There is a big hotel there.

şura has a diminutive form **şuracık** in general use. The meaning becomes "*just here/there, hereabouts*": **Şuracıkta gazeteyi koyun.**

Put the newspaper just there/here.

There are similar forms for **bura** becoming **buracık** and **ora** becoming **oracık**. These forms are in use, but not as much as the form **şuracık**.

The suffix "-deki/-daki" "which is on, in, at"

The suffix of place is **-re** or **-ra** meaning *place/place of...*

By suffixing the demonstratives **bu**, **şu**, **o** *this, that, that yonder* with **-ra-** place of plus the Static Condition (locative) suffix **-da** *in, on, at* the words *here, there, over there* are formed.

These words are used for a general sense of location.

burada *here*

[Lit: "bu-ra-da" "this-place-at"]

şurada *there*

[Lit: "şu-ra-da" "that-place nearer-at or in between-at"]

orada *over there*

[Lit: "o-ra-da" "that-place yonder-at"]

nerede? *where?*

[Lit: "ne-re-de?" "what-place-at?"]

In conversation and writing these words are often shortened (abraded) to **burda**, **şurda**, **orda**, **nerde?**

In reality there is no such suffix **-daki/-deki** in Turkish.

-deki is actually two suffixes together, **-de** plus an added **-ki**. **-de** means *on, in, at*, while **-ki** means *that which is*. Most grammar books gloss over this construction although it is in constant daily use to make an **Adjective of Location**.

For ease of explanation this book will treat **-daki/-deki** as suffix in its own right. Let us call it a "pseudo" suffix.

Sokaktaki araba.

The car which is in the street .

[Lit: 'Sokak-ta-ki street-in-which-is car"].

Here **-daki** makes an Adjective of Location "that which is in."

This pseudo suffix is very important as it is used a lot in daily conversation and reading.

The suffix **-daki/-deki** is added to words to produce an adjective to describe the location of an object.

This is best shown by example.

The telephone [which is] in my bedroom is broken.

[Lit: Bedroom-of-me-which-is-in telephone broken-is.]

Turkish trying to turn everything into an adjective will say thus:

Yatak odamdaki telefon bozuktur.

[Yatak oda-m-daki telefon bozuk-tur.]

Here **odam-daki telefon** [Room-my-in-which-is telephone.] is used as an adjective to describe just where the telephone is!

This point is a particular difficulty for Turkish learners, as English does not use an adjectival construction.

Instead, English uses a Relative Construction *The telephone "which is" in my bedroom is broken.*

It is important to understand this adjectival construction of location, as it is in constant daily use in Turkish.

Masadaki kitap.

The book (which is) on the table.

Masadaki kitabı bana verin.

Give me the book (which is) on the table.

Kilitteki anahtar.

The key (which is) in the lock.

Kilitteki anahtarı çıkarınız.

(Would you) take the key out of the lock.

[Lit: Lock-in-which-is key-the take out!]

Kutudaki kibritler nemlidir.

The matches (which are) in the box are damp.

The Turkish aspect is different from English and is appreciated by usage and practice, being an alien construction for English speakers.

An Example in Time Scale:

The full Suffix of Adjectival Location is either **-deki** or **-daki**.

It does not follow Vowel Harmony Rules entirely The vowel of **-ki** is invariable.

It can also be used as a location in time scale:

Önümüzdeki hafta.

[Ön-ümüz-deki hafta]

Next week

[Lit: Front-of-us-which-is week.]

Önümüzdeki haftanın havası çok güneşli olacak.

The week ahead's weather will be very sunny.

As already stated, this is a difficult construction but it can be assimilated by reading, listening and using.

Particular Locations

Particular Locations *right here, right there and just where?*

If we need to communicate a more particular place and sense of location then as in English we have to be more precise.

This precision in Turkish is achieved by using the suffix **-i** or **-si** meaning *its*. By adding this suffix Turkish makes the place particular: **burası** (bu-ra-sı) *right here*

[Lit: its place (exactly) here.]

şurası (şu-ra-sı) *right there*.

orası (o-ra-sı) *right over there*.

neresi? (ne-re-si?) *just where?*

[Lit: where exactly?]

The **-si** suffix is the Possessed part of the Possessive Relationship and sometimes the Possessor is "understood".

This expression is used to complete the relationship as in:

bankanın burası or **evin şurası** or **İngiltere'nin orası**, but this is considered to be pedantic.

More about Exact Locations

For exact locations the Possessive Adjective suffix **-(s)ı** is added to make the meaning become more exact.

If someone asks you on the telephone:

Neredesin? [ne-re-de-sin?]

Where are you?

You might answer:

Ankara' dayım [Ankara'-da-y-ım]

I 'm in Ankara

If they ask you:

Oranın neresinde? [ne-re-si-n-de?]

Where (of there) exactly?

You might answer:

Banyodayım [banyo-da-y-ım]

I am in the bath

Some Examples: *right here, just there.*

All these mean exactly *right here* or *right there* or *just where*?

Burası soğuk.

It is cold right here.

Burasına gel!

Come (right up to) here.

Binanın burasından kaçalım!

Let's get away from (of) this building

In the last two examples are used as a descriptive way when showing a particular location on a map.

In normal conversation we can say:

Buradan kaçalım!

Let's get out of here!

İzmir? Orası güzel.

Izmir? That very place is beautiful.

Çantamı, odamın neresine koydum, acaba?

Where exactly did I put my bag in my room I wonder?

Or more general:

Çantamı nereye koydum acaba?

Where did I put my bag, I wonder?

Kitabı dolabın şurasına koyun.

Put the book just over there in(to) the cupboard.

Kitabı şuraya koyun.

Put the book just over there.

Tam saat sekizde burada görüşelim.

Let's meet right here at dead on 8 o' clock.

"Burası, Şurası, Orası" just here

Burası neresi?

Where is this (exactly)?

Şurası güzelmiş.

Just there is beautiful.

Orası güzel.

It is nice over there.

In extended cases a possessor is required to possess the "burası surası, orası."

Binanın burasına gel!

Come right here to the building!

Balkonun şurasında bir kuş vardı.

There was a bird right on the balcony.

Ormanın orasından ilginç sesler geliyordu.

There are interesting sounds coming out of forest ('s place.)

Example of a Particular Location

Here is a snippet of conversation between Mehmet and Ali to show the difference between:

nereye? *where to?* [Lit: to where?] as a general location and

neresine? *just where to?* [Lit: to THE where?] as an exact location.

Mehmet: **Bu akşam nereye gidiyorsun?**

Where are you going (to) this evening?

Ali: **Merkeze gidiyorum.**

I'm going to the town centre.

Mehmet: **Merkezin neresine?**

Where to (exactly) of the town centre?

Ali: **Büyük Efes Oteline gidiyorum**

I'm going to the Grand Efes Hotel.

General and Precise Location

Here is a little conversation between Ali and his friend Mehmet to explain the above about general and precise location.

Ali: **Neredesin?** [Nerdesin? abraded in conversation]

Where are you?

Mehmet: **Üsküdar' dayım.**

I am in Üsküdar.

Ali: **;Üsküdar'ın neresinde?**

Whereabouts (of Uskudar)?

Mehmet: **Ahmet Çeşmesi'nin yanımdayım.**

I'm by the Ahmet Fountain.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 38 : Spatial Relationships



"Lost in Space"

Some Space Oddities

As in English spatial may either be adjectives or nouns.

Consider: *The exterior door. The outside wall.*

The words *exterior* and *outside* are adjectives describing the nouns they possess, *the door* and *the wall*.

As in English these spatial can also be nouns.

Consider: *At the back of the house. From the top of the table.*

Both "*the back*" and "*the top*" are nouns.

English method: *At the back of the house.* becomes in Turkish: *At the house's back.*

This is exactly the same as the Possessive Relationship in Turkish:

Evin arkası.

The back of the house.

[Lit: the house-of the back-its.]

Masanın üstü.

he top of the table.

[Lit: the table-of the top-its.]

Spatial Relationships are another form of the Possessive Relationship in Turkish where one noun owns the second **ev-in arka-sı** *the back of the house*.

Further suffixes can be added, "to, from, at etc." to complete the meaning as

required.

Masanın üstünden.

From the top of the table.

Masanın üstünde.

On the top of the table.

Masanın üstüne.

To the top of the table.

This then is the way that Turkish treats Spatial Relationships and some of the main ones are shown below.

dış / dışı Exterior, outside

Used as an Adjective (dış)

dış kapı *the outside gate*

dış avlu *the outside yard*

Used as a Noun (dışı)

kapının dışı *the outside of the gate*

bankanın dışına *to the outside of the bank*

evin dışında *at the outside of the house*

bahçenin dışından *from the outside the garden*

A cafe sign

"Please do not bring anything to eat and drink from outside."



kapının dışından *from (the) outside (of the) gate*

bankanın dışından *from (the) outside (of the) bank*

peronun dışına *to (the) outside (of the) railway platform*

English sometimes drops the little word "of".

The noun **dışı** *the exterior* takes a buffer letter **-n-** when adding the **-de** and **-dan** suffixes.

A little warning: Do not mix this word with **diş** *tooth* which is spelt with a Dotted-i

A sign in a park cafe

"In here which are sold products from outside to bring is prohibited. We thank you."



dışardan *from outside* is used without a preceding noun, because it is a adverb of place.

dışarı gidiyorum. *I'm going out.*

["dışarıya" also could be used]

dışarıdan geliyorum. *I'm coming from outside.*

dışarıdayım *I am outside.*

OR [converstional "dışardayım" like "buradayım" which is spoken "burdayım"]

Evin dışına çıktı.

He went out of the house.

[to the outside of the house]

Kapının dışında bir adam bekliyordu.

A man was waiting outside the door.

[at the outside of...]

Evin dışından arabalar geçiyor.

Cars are passing outside the house.

[by way of the outside of the house.]

iç interior, internal

-(n)in içine *to the inside of*

-(n)in içinde *at the inside of*

-(n)in içinden *from the inside of*

Used as an Adjective

iç hastalıkları *internal diseases*

iç savaş *civil war*

Used as a Noun

odanın içi *the inside of the room*

ormanın içinde *in the depths the forest*

garın içinden *from the inside of the railway station*

Tirenin içinde yer buldu, oturdu.

He found a place in the train and sat down.

Bu kutuda ne var? Bilmem, içine bakmadım

What is in this box? I don't know, I haven't looked inside.

Odanın içinden bir gürültü geliyordu

A noise was coming from inside the room

Bu odanın içindekilerin hepsi kiralıktır.

[iç-i-nde-ki-ler-in hep-si]

The contents of this room are all on hire.

Eşyalarımı kutu içine koydum.

I put my things into a box/boxes.

Eşyalarımı kutunun içine koydum.

I put my things into the box.

Bir hafta içinde kitabını bitirecek.

He will finish his book within a week.

Bu şehrin içinde çok insan var.

There are many people in this town.

As an Adverb of Place içeri inside

içeri *inside* is used without a preceding noun, because it is a adverb of place.

içeri *I'm going in(side).* ("içeriye" could also be used.)

içerden geliyorum. *I'm coming from inside.*

Also **içeri** and **dışarı** can be used with nouns.

Lütfen kapıdan içeri giriniz.

Please go (pass) inside through (or from) the door.

Evimden dışarı çık!

Get out of my house!.

yan side, next to

-(n)in yanına *to the side of*

-(n)in yanında *at/by the side of*

-(n)in yanından *from the side of*

Used as an Adjective

yan kapı *side gate*

yan sokak *side road*

Used as a Noun

kapının yanında *right/just next to the gate*

bankanın yanından *from next to the bank*

sol duvarın yanına *next to the left wall*

duvarın sol yanına *next to the left side of the wall*

Mehmet, Ali'nin yanına oturdu.

Mehmet sat down next to Ali.

Mehmet, Ali'nin yanında oturdu.

Mehmet sat next to Ali.

Kitabi, yatağın yanındaki masanın üstüne attı.

He threw the book on top of the table beside the bed.

taraf side, side part

-(n)in tarafına *to the side part of*

-(n)in tarafında *at/by the side part of*

-(n)in tarafından *from the side part of*

Used as a Noun

taraf is not an adjective, it is only used as a noun.

kapının tarafında *at the side of the gate*

bankanın tarafından *from the side (of) the bank*

peronun tarafına *to the side of the railway platform*

Arabanın alt tarafından bir seyler damlıyor.

Something(s) is dripping from the underside of the car.

Sen kimin tarafındasın? Benim mi onun mu?

Whose side are you on? Mine or his?

Dolabın üst tarafına baktın mı?

Have you looked at (to) the topside of the cupboard?

üst top, topmost

-(n)in üstüne *to the top of*
-(n)in üstünde *at/by the top of*
-(n)in üstünden *from the top of*

masanın üstünde = on the table [touching the table]

Used as an Adjective

üst tepe *the top hill*

en üst pencere *the uppermost window*
[superlative]

Used as a Noun

bardağın üstünde *on top of the glass*

ağaçların üstüne *towards the top of the trees*

arabamın üstünden *from the top of the my car*

Kitabi, masanın üstüne koydu.

He put the book on top of the table.

Kapının üzerinde büyük bir pencere vardı.

There was a big window over (on top of) the door.

üzeri over

üzeri *over, on top of, in addition to, besides*

-(n)in üzerine *over*

masanın üzerinde = over the table [not touching the table]

Used in Construction üzeri is not an noun or adjective.

It is only used in prepositional constructions.

Elma üzerine portakal getir.

In addition to apples bring (some) oranges.

binanın üzerinden.

from over the building.

Masanın üzerindeki fincan.

The cup which is over the table.

Bu sözün üzerine çok kızdım.

Upon these words I became very angry.

alt under

alt bottom, under, below, underneath

-(n)in altına under, to the under of

-(n)in altında under, at/by the under of

-(n)in altından from underneath

Used as an Adjective

alt kapı the bottom gate

alt dolap the lower cupboard

Used as a Noun

Alt dolabın altına fincanları koyunuz dışarıda.

Put the cups (to the) underneath the bottom cupboard.

Masanın altından topu çekin.

Get the ball from under the table.

Sağ ayağımın altı kaşınıyor.

The underneath of my right foot is itching.

Köpek dolabın altına girdi, orada yatıyor.

The dog went under the cupboard (entered to the underneath the cupboard) and is lying there.

Köpek dolabın altında yatıyor.

The dog is lying under the cupboard.

Köpeğimiz hep ayak altında.

Our dog is always underfoot.

orta middle, center

-(n)in ortasına *to the middle of*
-(n)in ortasında *at the middle of*
-(n)in ortasından *from the middle of*

Used as an Adjective

orta kapı *the middle gate*

orta oda *the centre room*

Used as a Noun

parkın ortasına *to the middle of the park*

bahçenin ortasında *in the middle of the garden*

orta odanın ortasından *from the centre of the middle room*

Yemeğin ortasında geldi.

He arrived in the middle of the meal.

Her zaman yemek ortasında gelir.

He always comes in the middle of dinner.

Sokağın ortasında yürüyor.

He is walking in the middle of the street.

Tam sokağın ortasında yürüyor.

He is walking right in the middle of the street.

Tam sokağın ortasından yürüyor.

He is walking exactly down the middle of the street.

Ahmed'in kitabının ortasına kadar okudum.

I read as far as the middle of Ahmet's book.

Buraya hafta ortasında vardı.

He arrived here in midweek.

Buraya haftanın ortasında vardı.

He arrived here in the middle of the week.

art behind

art *behind, rear side, backside*

-(n)in ardına *to the behind of*

-(n)in ardında *at the rear of*

-(n)in ardından *from behind of*

Used as a Noun

art is not an adjective. It is only used as a noun.

kapının ardında *at the rear the door, behind the door*

bankanın ardından *from behind the bank*

mutfağın ardına *to the rear of the kitchen*

arka back, rear

-(n)in arkasına *to the back of*

-(n)in arkasında *at/by back of*

-(n)in arkasından *from the back of*

Used as an Adjective

arka kapı *the back gate*

arka bahçe *the back garden*

Used as a Noun

kapının arkası *the back of the door*

garajın arkasından *from back of the garage*

kuyruğun arkasına *to the back of the queue*

Evimin arkasında büyük bir bahçe var.

There is a big garden behind my house.

Masanın arkasına baktınız mı?

Did you look behind the table?

ön front

-(n)in önüne *to the front of*

-(n)in önünde *at/by front of*

-(n)in önünden *from the front of*

Used as an Adjective

ön kapı (the) front door

ön pencereler (the) front windows

Used as a Noun

kapının önünde *in front of the door*

manavın önüne *to the front of the greengrocer's*

rafların önünden *from the front of the shelves*

Otobüs, tam evimizin önünde durur.

The bus stops just in front of our house.

Bahçemizin önündeki duvarda oturduk.

We sat on the wall in front of our garden.

yakın near

yakın *near, nearby, close to, in the vicinity of*

-(n)in yakınına *to the nearby of*

-(n)in yakınında *nearby*

-(n)in yakınından *from near the*

Used as an Adjective

yakın kapı *the nearby gate*

yakın bir ofis *an office nearby*

Used as a Noun

kapının yakınında *near the gate*

kapının yakınlarında *near by the gate* [plural is more vague]

bankanın yakınından *from close to the bank*

[Lit: from the near of the bank]

otogarın yakınına *in the vicinity of bus station*

Used as an Adverb of Place **yakın** *near*

bankaya yakın *near to the bank*

ara *space between*

-(n)in arasına *in between*

-(n)in arasında *between*

-(n)in arasından *from between*

Used as an Adjective

ara kapı *the door between*

[a connecting door between rooms]

Used as a Noun

hafta arası *mid-week*

Kapıların arasında bir basamak var.

There is a step in between (of) the doors.

Masaların arasına iskemleyi koyun.

Put the chair (to the) between (of the) tables.

Bunların arasından bir tane alın.

Take one from between these.

This word refers to the space between two or more things.

It is used in constructions which mean "between" or "among" and is preceded either by a plural noun or several nouns connected by **ile** *also, and*.

Evlerimizin arasında büyük bir bina var.

There is a big building between our houses.

O evlerin arasında bir park var.

There is a park amongst those houses.

Amerika ile Avrupa arasında Atlas Okyanusu var.

The Atlantic Ocean is between America and Europe.

karşı opposite, against

-(n)in karşısına *to the opposite side of, against*

-(n)in karşısında *at the opposite side of, against*

-(n)in karşıından *from the opposite side of, against*

Used as an Adjective

karşı kapı *the opposite gate*

karşı kaldırım *the opposite pavement* [USA: sidewalk]

Used as a Noun

kapının karşısında *opposite the gate*

bankanın karşıındaki sokak. *the street which is opposite the bank.*

Mehmet, kahvenin karşıından çıktı. *Mehmet came out from opposite the cafe.*

Fabrika, evimizin karşısında.

The factory is opposite our house

[Lit: across from our house.]

Mehmet'in karşısına oturdu.

He sat down facing (opposite, across from) Mehmet.

Bir kedi karşıma çıktı.

A cat appeared in front of me.

etraf around

Etraf was originally an Arabic Plural of **taraf** side
etraf around, environment, surroundings

-(n)in **etrafına** to the surrounds of

-(n)in **etrafında** around the

-(n)in **etrafından** from around the

Used as a Noun

etraf is not an adjective. It is only used as a noun.

Masamızın etrafına bolca çiçek koyuldu.

Flowers galore were put around our table.

Etrafımda çocuklar oynuyordu.

The children were playing (all) around me.

Bostanın etrafından.

From around the vegetable garden.

çevre around, surrounding

A sign in a park "Let us keep our surroundings clean."



çevre is synonymous with *etraf* shown above, and is gradually replacing the

Arabic word

-(n)in çevresine *to the surrounds of*

-(n)in çevresinde *around the*

-(n)in çevresinden *from around the*

Used as an Adjective

çevre yolu *circular road (bypass road)*

Used as a Noun

Kentin çevreleri.

The surroundings of the town.

Bankanın çevresinde bir park bulunur.

There is a park surrounding the bank.

Fabrikanın çevresine bir engel koydular.

they have put a barrier around the factory..

In Geometry **Çevre** also means *perimeter*

Karenin çevresi 24 cm(dir).

The perimeter of the square is 24 cm.

The other words are **alan** *area* and **hacim** *volume*.

A building site sign "Çevre-miz-e"

"We apologize on account of the dangers and discomforts that we will give to our surroundings during building works."



çevre-miz-e [surroundings-of-us-to]

inşaat sırasında *during the building (works)*

vereceğimiz zararlardan *from the damages that we will give*

rahat-sız-lık-lar-dan dolayı [on account of discomfort
[Lit: discomfortnesses-from because of] , the word is just "discomfort" in English.

-dan dolayı *because of/on account of*. This construction takes the "movement away from" (ablative) case.

aşağı down, downstairs

-(n)in aşağısı *downwards*

-(n)in aşağısında *below, downstairs*

-(n)in -aşağısından *from below, less than*

Used as an Adjective

aşağı mahalle *a low town district* (Figuratively: slum)

aşağı kat *the floor below*

Used as a Noun

inişin aşağısı *downhill*

[Lit: The down of the hill]

Merdivenin aşağısına

To the downstairs

Yolun aşağısından yürüyün.

Walk from the bottom of the road.

Dağın aşağısı serin.

It is chilly down the mountain.

[Lit: The down of the mountain is chilly.]

Dağın aşağısındaki ağaçlar çok güzel.

The trees which are at the lower side of the mountain are very beautiful.

Dağın aşağısından gelen rüzgar çok soğuk.

The wind which comes from the lower side of the mountain is so cold.

Used as an Adverb of Place

aşağı *downstairs*

Aşağı gidiyorum. *I'm going downstairs*

or **Aşağıya gidiyorum.** *I'm going (to) downstairs.*

"Aşağı" and "yukarı" are also used for the geographical terms "upper/lower" in Turkish.

Yukarı Bavyera *Upper Bavaria*, **Aşağı Bavyera** *Lower Bavaria*.

Some places in Turkey called "Lower".

Aşağıazaplı, village in Adıyaman Province.

Aşağınasırlı, a village in the District of Gölbaşı.

Aşağı Gökdere, Eğridir, Isparta.

Aşağı Pınar, Neolithic excavation in the outskirts of the town of Kırklareli.

Akbank Aşağıayracı Şubesi, a local bank in Ankara Çankaya.
Aşağı Dudullu İlköğretim Okulu, Ümraniye, İstanbul.
Aşağı Yuvalı Köyü, a village in Gümüşhane.
Aşağı Hadim Cami, a mosque in Konya.

yukarı above, up upstairs

-(n)in yukarısına *upwards*
-(n)in yukarısında *up, upstairs*
-(n)in yukarisından *from above/more than*

Used as an Adjective

yukarı ev *the house above*
yukarı dal *the branch (of a tree) above*

Used as a Noun

yokuş yukarı *uphill*
merdivenin yukarısı *upstairs*

Tepenin yukarisından indik.

We came down from the top of the hill.

Some places in Turkey called "Upper".

Yukarı Borandere, Kayseri
Yukarı Düden Şelalesi Antalya
Yukarı Ağadeve, Hamur, Ağrı Province
Yukarı Karahayıt Hotels
Yukarı Norgâh in Erzurum
Yukarı Pınarca Köyü Trabzon
Yukarı Nasırlı Turkey
Yukarı Gökdere, Eğridir, Isparta

peş back, the space behind

Peş means *"the back of a moving object"*.

Usually found in the form "peşinden" which has come to mean "after".

Used only of a moving object when something or someone follows after

something else that is also in motion.

Taksiyle otobüsün peşinden gittik.

We went after the bus by taxi.

[We followed the bus by taxi.]

Benim peşime düşün!

Follow me!

[Fall in behind me.]

The word **peşin**, **peşinat** means *pre-payment, paid in advance, following on*
peşin para *cash, ready money, spot cash*

General Space Examples

Bir adam, vapurun arkasından suyun içine düştü.

A man fell from the back of the ship into the water.

Onlarla bizim aramızda, bahçe üzerine kavga çıktı.

A fight arose between them and us over the garden.

Büyük bir ağacın altında yere yattı.

He lay on the ground under a big tree.

Her şeyim el altında.

Everything of mine is at hand.

Dükkanın arkasında büyük elma ağaçları var.

There are big apple trees behind the store.

Halil her akşam içki içer, gece ortasında eve gelir.

Halil drinks every evening and comes home in the middle of the night.

Size bir paket getirdim, eşyalarınızın arasına attım.

I brought you a package and threw it among your things.

Bu kış, sizinkinin karşısındaki evde oturacağız.

This winter we will live in the house opposite yours.

Paketin içindekilerini bize gösterir misiniz?

Will you show us the contents of the package?

Evin dış kısmına baktık, irine ama girmedik.

We looked at the outside part of the house, but we didn't go inside.

Yunus Emre'nin Ahmet'in üstündeki tesiri çok büyüktür.

Yunus Emre's influence on Ahmet is very great.

Askerler, şehrin önüne duvar yaptılar.

The soldiers made a wall in front of the city.

Ahmet daima o kızın peşinden gider.

Ahmet always follows that girl.

Senin koca ayaklarının yanında yer kalmadı.

There is no room left beside your enormous feet.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 39 : Time and Seasons



Time, Seasons, Numbers

About Time

The terms ending in "**-lik**" refer to a specific noun of amount

saniye, saniyelik *second*

an *moment*

dakika, dakikalık *minute*

saat, saatlik *hour*

[Plural **saatler** does not follow vowel harmony rules.]

gün, günlük *day*

hafta, haftalık *week*

ay, aylık *month* [also *moon*]

yıl, yıllık or **sene senelik** (arab.) *year*

iki hafta sonra *two days later.*

İki haftalık bir tatil yapacağım.

I will take a two week (amount) holiday.

Bir dakikalık saygı duruşu.

A minute's silence (stoppage) of respect.

The word "time"

zaman is the main word in use for "time, occasion"

zaman *time*

vakit (vakti) *time as a particular occasion*

defa *time (as an event or occasion)*

kere *time (as an event, occasion or point in time)*

kez *a point in time*

zaman *time*

ne zaman? *what time?, when?*

kaç zaman *how long?, how much time?*

zamandan zamana *from time to time*

[zaman-dan zaman-a]

her zaman *all the time, every time, always*

her ne zaman *whenever*

vakit (vakti) *point in time, occasion*

['vakit' apocoptates loses final vowel when suffixed with a vowel.]

Boş vaktimiz var mı?

Have we got time to spare?

Vaktim yok. or Vaktim kalmadı.

I haven't got time

This word is used most for "time to spare"

kere *times, occasions*

dört kere *four times*

Onu, beş kere yaptım.

I did it five times

kez *time, point in time*

This is a provincialism, but is also used regularly in modern daily speech

üç kez *three times*

her kez *always*

bu kez *this time*

bir kez daha *once more*

bir çok kez *more than once*

Telling the Time

State the actual time "to o'clock":

It is # min. to # o'clock using **-e var**

Saat iki'ye on (dakika) var *It is ten (minutes) to two*

[There are 10 to hour 2]

State the actual time "past o'clock":

It is # min. past # o'clock using **-i geçiyor**

Saat iki'yi on (dakika) geçiyor. *It is ten (minutes) past two.*

[10 are passing the hour 2]

State at the time "when to 'o'clock":

At # min. to # o'clock using **-e kala**

Saat iki'ye on (dakika) kala. *At ten to two.*

[To the hour 2 remain 10]

State at the time "when past 'o'clock":

At #min. past # o'clock using **-i geç**

Saat iki'yi on (dakika) geç. *At ten past two.*

[The hour 2 pass 10]

Saat kaç acaba?

What time is it please?

Saatiniz kaç acaba?

Have you got the time please?

Saat yedi'yi çeyrek geçiyor.

It is a quarter past seven.

[A quarter is passing seven.]

Saat yedi'ye çeyrek var.

It is a quarter past seven.

[There is a quarter to seven.]

Sentence structure can only be used with the suffix **-ken** *while*

Ne zaman gelirsin?

When (at what time) will you come?

Saat 7'yi çeyrek geçerken gelirim.

I will arrive at a quarter past seven.

[I'll come while a quarter is passing 7 o'clock.]

Saat yedi'yi çeyrek geçiyorken gelirim

I'll come at quarter past seven.

[I'll come while a quarter is passing the seven.]

Saat yedi'yi çeyrek geçe gelirim

I'll come at quarter past seven.

[I'll come (as) a quarter is passing the seven.]

Saat altı'ya beş varken gelirim

I'll come at five to six.

[I'll come while there is 5 to six.]

Saat altı'ya beş kala gelirim

I'll come at five to six.

[I'll come (as) 5 remain to six.]

For Digital Time it is possible to use the English method of saying "at..."

Saat 7:15 (yedi on beş'te) gelirim. [Digital]

I'll come at seven-fifteen.

Some times of day

şafak *dawn*

kahvaltı *breakfast*

sabah *morning*

sabahleyin *at morning, in the morning*
gün *day*

bütün gün *all day long*
her gün *every day*
gündüz *daytime, daylight*
öğle *noon*
öğleden sonra *afternoon*

öğle yemeği *lunch*
akşam *evening*
akşamleyin *in the evening, at eventide*
akşam üstü *teatime, early evening*
akşam yemeği *dinner, evening meal*

dün *yesterday*
dün sabah *yesterday morning*
dün akşam *yesterday evening*
dün gece *last night*
evvelki gün *the day before yesterday*

alacakaranlık [alaca-karanlık] *twilight*
gece *night*
geceleyin *in the night, at night*
gece yarısı *Lit: night its-half midnight*
geçen gün *the day past, the other day, yesterday*

geçen ay *last month*
geçen sene/yıl *last year*

geçen hafta *last week*

geçenlerde *recently (in the past), lately*

erken *early*

geç *late*

ne zaman *when (what time, the time that)*

ay *month*

cumartesi gecesi *Saturday night*

ertesi gün *the following day*

ertesi hafta *the following week*

evvelki/evvelsi gün *the day before yesterday*

geceleri *at nights*

gelecek hafta *next week*

hafta *week*

öbür gün *the day after tomorrow*

öbür hafta *the week after next*

öğleleri *at noon times*

öğleyin *at noon*

pazar sabahı *Sunday morning*

sabahları *in the mornings*

son günlerde *in the last few days*

son zamanlarda *recently*

yarın *tomorrow*

yıl/sene *year*

Saying How long for?, Since when?

Ne iş yaparsınız?

What is your job?

[Lit: "What do you do (generally)?" uses General Simple Tense]

Öğretmenim.

I am a teacher.

Dört yıldır öğretmenim.

I have been a teacher for 4 years.

[Lit: "It is 4 years I am a teacher."]

İki bin üçten beri öğretmenim.

I have been a teacher since 2003.

[Lit: "I am a teacher since 2003"]

Dünden beri hastayım.

I have been ill since yesterday.

Pazar Gününden/Pazardan beri evdeyim.

I have been at home since Sunday.

Saying "since"

This construction is the Short Infinitive **gelme** + Motion Coward Condition **-ye** and suffixed with **-li** furnished with.

The verb **olmak** to be, become completes this "since" construction.

Ben, Londra'ya gelmeyeli bir hafta oluyor. [gelme-ye-li oluyor]

It is a week since I am coming to London.

[ENG: "It is a week since I came to London."]

Ben Londra'da kalmayalı üç sene oldu. [kalma-ya-lı oldu]

It was three years since I stayed in London.

[Eng: "I stayed in London 3 years ago."]

Ben, sinemaya gitmeyeli 3 ay oluyor.

It is three months since I have been to the cinema.

Birbirimizi görmeyeli beş yıl oldu/oluyor.

It is five years since we have seen/are seeing each other.

Onlar evleneli sadece/yalnızca 2 ay oldu/oluyor.

It is just two months since they were/are (got) married.

Timing Events

"çoktan, bile, zaten" already, besides

Hâlâ öğle yemeğini yedin mi?

Have you eaten your lunch yet?

Ooo, çoktan yedim.

Oh, I have already eaten.

Yedim bile.

I have already eaten.

Sanırım bir şeyler yemek istiyor musun?

I suppose you want something to eat?

Gelecek zaman bana hiç bir şey getirme.

Do not bring me anything next time.

Ben yedim zaten.

Besides, I have already eaten.

"Yeni, şimdi, henüz" just

Hasan,lütfen banyoya girme, yeni/şimdi/henüz (onu) temizledim.

Hasan, please don't go into the bathroom, I have just cleaned (it).

Kuruması gerek/lazım. Tamam mı?

It needs to dry. OK?

Bana 100 lira ödünç verir misin Ayşe?

Can you lend me 100 Tl Ayşe?

Üzgünüm, [OR Kusura bakma] veremem.
I am sorry, I can't give (it).

Daha yeni/şimdi faturaları ödedim.
I have just paid the bills.

"Daha, henüz, hâlâ" yet

Daha/henüz ödevini bitirmedin mi?
Haven't/have you finished your homework yet?

Hayır, daha bitirmedim. Henüz değil.
No, I haven't finished yet. Not yet.

Daha gelmediler.
They haven't come yet.

"şimdiye kadar, şu ana kadar" So far, up to now, until now

Bu kış şimdiye kadar [OR şu ana kadar] kar yağmadı.
[şimdi-ye kadar OR şu an-a kadar]
It has not snowed so far this winter.

Bugün şimdiye kadar [OR şu ana kadar] hiçbir şey yemedik.
We have not eaten anything so far today.

"ilk" the (very) first

Bu, ilk kez araba sürdüm.
This is the first time I have driven a car.

"son" the last

Bu, son iki saatte içtiğin beşinci kahve.
This is the fifth cup of coffee you have drunk in the last two hours.

Son beş saatte iki fincan kahve içtin.
You have drunk two cups of coffee in the last five hours

"ilk, birinci" first

Dünyanın ilk insan Adam adlı'dı.

The world's first man was called Adam.

Birinci yarış başlamak üzeredir.

The first race is about to begin.

"hayatımda" ever in my life

hayatında *ever in your life*

[*"hayat-in-da"* informal]

hayatınızda *ever in your life*

[*formal*]

onun hayatında *ever in his life*

[*"hayat-ı-n-da"* in his life]

hayatımızda *ever in our life*

hayatlarında *ever in their life*

Bu hayatımda okuduğum en sıkıcı kitap.

This is the most boring book I have ever read (in my life).

Bu hayatımda içinde bulunduğum en zor durum.

This is the most difficult situation I have ever been in, (in my life).

Hayatımda tanıştığım en konuşkan/geveze insan.

He is the most talkative person I have met (in my life.)

"Have you ever been to?"

There are two methods to translate this in Turkish:

(1) Formal Method: using **-de/-te -da/-ta bulunmak** *to be found (in/on/at a place)*

Hiç Ankara'da bulundun mu?

Have you ever been to Ankara?

(2) Informal Method: using **-a/-e gitmek** to go (to a place)

Hiç Ankara' ya gittin mi?

Have you ever been to Ankara [Colloquial Speech informal]

The inclusion of **hiç** signifies ever...

"once, twice, several times."

bir kez, bir defa, bir kere *once*

iki kez, iki defa, iki kere *twice*

"birçok kez, defa, kere" *several times*

hiç *ever* [in positive sentences]

hiç *never* [in negative sentences]

Neredeydin? [colloquial Neredeydin?]

Where have you been?/Where were you?

Hiç Antalya'da bulundun mu?

Have you ever been to Antalya?

Hiç Antalya'ya gittin mi?

Have you ever been to Antalya?

Evet, bir defa/iki defa/ orada bulundum.

Yes, I have been there once/twice.

Evet, bir çok kere (bir çok kez/ bir çok defa) oraya gittim.

Yes, I have been there many times.

Yo, Antalya'ya hiç gitmedim.

No, I have not been/never been there.

Yo, Antalya'da hiç bulunmadım.

No, I have not been/never been there.

Yo is a gentle conversational way of saying "No".

It is not so strong as using **Hayır** No. It may be a contraction of "yok" "there is not"

Seasons and the Weather

Names of the Months

January **ocak**
February **şubat**
March **mart**

April **nisan**
May **mayıs**
June **haziran**

July **temmuz**
August **ağustos**
September **eylül**

October **ekim**
November **kasım**
December **aralık**

Names of the Months and Days of the Week are usually written without a capital letter in Turkish

The Weekday Names

Sunday **pazar**
[Lit: "market"]

Monday **pazartesi**
[Lit: after Sunday]

Tuesday **salı**
[Lit "slaughter"]

Wednesday **çarşamba**
[Lit: 4 days after Sabbath from Persian]

An idiom:

Bu iş, çarşamba pazar gibi.

This job is a complete mess up.

[Lit: This job is like a Wednesday Market.]

Thursday **perşembe**

[Lit: 5 days after Sabbath from Persian]

Friday **cuma**

[Lit: "reunion" (Per.)]

Saturday **cumartesi**

Lit: after Friday]

The Seasons of the Year "Yıl Mevsimi"

ilkbahar *spring*

[also ;"bahar" is used]

yaz *summer*

sonbahar *autumn* ("fall" American usage)

["also güz"]

kış *winter*

When saying *in the summer* Turkish says **yazın** or *in the winter* **kışın** is used. This ending **-in** is an old Instrumental Case which is no longer used much in day to day speaking other than these examples.

For saying *in the spring* and *in the autumn*, the Static Condition (Locative) Suffix is used **sonbaharda** and **ilkbaharda**.

The word **bahar** can supplant either **ilkbahar** or **sonbahar** it depends on the choice of the speaker.

The Cardinal Points Dört Yön

Kuzey *North*

Güney *South*

Doğu *East*
Bati *West*

A Weather Vocabulary

berbat *awful*

fırtına *storm*

soğuk *cold*

güneş *sun*

sıcak *hot*

güneşli *sunny*

güzel *good, nice*

hava sıcaklığı *temperature*

harika *marvellous*

sıcaklık *heat*

yağmur *rain*

derece *degree(s)*

yağmur yağmak *to rain*

şemsiye *umbrella*

yağmurlu, yağışlı *rainy*

ılık *warm*

kar *snow (n.)*

hava *weather*

kar yağmak *snow*

hava tahmini *weather forecast*

kar yağışlı, karlı *snowy*

hava durumu weather condition

dolu hail

hafif light

yel wind

sert heavy

poyraz breeze

durmak stop

rüzgar wind

rüzgar esmek to blow

yıldırım lightning

rüzgarlı windy

Weather Expressions

Ne güzel bir gün!

What a lovely day!

Hava yarın nasıl olacak?

What will the weather be like tomorrow?

Yine güneşli, fakat biraz rüzgarlı.

It's sunny again, but a little windy.

Kaç derece?

What is the temperature?

Hava çok sıcak.

The weather is very hot.

Neredeyse 31 derece.

Nearly 31°C (degree Celsius).

Erzurum'da kar yağacağını düşünüyor musun?

Do you think it will snow in Erzurum?

Sanmıyorum. Kar için erken.

I don't think so. It is early to snow.

Fırtına olacağını düşünüyor musun?

Do you think there will be a storm?

Sanmıyorum.

I don't think so.

Ama Ağrı'da kar yağıyor.

But it is snowing in Ağrı.

Orada kar yağışı ne zaman durur?

When will it stop snowing up there?

Yakında durur.

It will stop soon.

Yağmur mu başlayacak?

Will it start to rain?

Evet, birazdan yağmur başlayacak gibi.

Yes, looks like rain soon will start

Şemsiyeye ihtiyacım olur mu?

Do I need an umbrella?

Sana şemsiyeni yanına almanı öneririm.

I suggest you to get your umbrella with you.

Ne berbat hava! Saat başı değişiyor.

What an awful weather! It changes hourly.

Yağmur mu, kar mı yağıyor?

Is it snowing or raining?

Yağmur yağıyor. Kar yağıyor.

It is raining. It is snowing

Weather Forecast "Hava Durumu"

Açık *Clear*

Sıcak *Hot/Heat*

Soğuk *Cold/Chill*

Az bulutlu *Light cloud*

Parçalı bulutlu *Partly cloudy*

Çok bulutlu *Very cloudy*

Duman *Smoke, muggy*

Pus *Mist, haze*

Sis *Fog*

Hafif yağmurlu *Light Rain*

Yağmurlu *Rainy*

Kuvvetli yağmurlu *Heavy rain*

Hafif sağanak yağışlı *Light downpour*

Sağanak yağışlı *Continuous rain*

Kuvvetli sağanak yağışlı *Heavy continuous rain*

Hafif kar yağışlı *Light snow*

Kar yağışlı *Snow*

Yoğun kar yağışlı *Dense snow*

Yer yer sağanak yağışlı *Outbreaks of snow*

Dolu *Frost*

Gök gürültülü sağanak yağışlı *Thunderstorms*

Actual Weather Forecasts

Türkiye’de yağışlar kesilmiyor, art arda gelmeye devam edecek. Bugün de birçok yerde kar var, soğuk hava Marmara ve Karadeniz’de daha uzun süre kalacak.

In Turkey the rain will not stop, it will continue back to back. Today there will be a little snow, The cold weather will continue in Marmara and Black Sea (areas).

İstanbul’da hafif karla karışık yağmur var, yarın ise hafif yağmur olacak. Ankara’da kar iki gün daha aralıklarla yağacak. Bursa’da da kar var. İzmir çok soğuk ve bulutlu. Adana üç gün sağanak yağmurlu.

There is mixed rain and snow in Istanbul, as for tomorrow it will be light rain. In Ankara it will snow periodically for a further two days. Izmir, very cold and cloudy. Adana, three days rain showers.

Marmara soğuklardan en fazla etkilenen bölge. Ayın sonuna kadar sıcaklık fazla yükselmeyecek. Bugün Tekirdağ, Balıkesir, Bilecik ve Bursa’da hafif kar var. Sıcaklık 5 dereceyi geçemiyor. Yarın bölgede yağış çok zayıf.

Marmara is area most affected by the cold. It will not get any warmer up to the month's end. Today there is light snow in Tekirdağ, Balıkesir, Bilecik and Bursa. The temperature will not move from 5 degrees. Tomorrow the rains will be very light in the area.

İç Anadolu’nun genelinde Pazartesi, Salı ve Perşembe günleri yine aralıklarla kar olacak. Yarın Sivas çevresinde kar yoğunluğunu artıracak.

Throughout central Anatolia it will be snow showers on Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday. Tomorrow the snow will fall more heavily around Sivas.

Ege bugün de soğuk. Güneyi yağışlı. Afyon, Kütahya-Uşak çevresinde kar olacak. Muğla merkezde de sulu kar görülebilir. Yarın sıcaklık biraz yükseliyor. Çarşamba günü yeni bir yağışlı hava, kuvvetli rüzgarlarla birlikte bölgeye gelecek.

The Aegean is also cold today. The south showery. Around Afyon, Kütahya-Uşak it will snow. In the centre of Muğla watery snow may be seen. Tomorrow the temperature will rise. On Wednesday there will be be showery weather together with strong winds.

Akdeniz’de Güneydoğuda ve Girne’de sağanak yağışlar üç gün devam edecek. Antalya’nın özellikle sahil beldelerinde yağmur daha kuvvetli. Lodos sıcaklığı yükseltmeye başlıyor, Antalya 14 derece.

In the South-east Mediterranean and Girne [Kyrenia Cyprus] the showers will

continue for three days. Especially for the beach resorts of Antalya the rain will be heavier. The South-west wind temperature will begin to increase.

Dođu Anadolu’da köy yollarının çođu kapandı. Bugün Erzurum-Van arasında kar yağışı zayıflasa da bölgede üç gün daha aralıklarla devam edecek.

Many village roads in Eastern Anatolia have been closed. Today between Erzurum and Van the snow may ease and continue periodically for the next three days.

Karadeniz’de yağışlar bugün oldukça zayıfladı. Bolu, Giresun ve Gümüşhane’de kar var, Trabzon’da hava kapalı. Yarın yağış Bolu, Kastamonu, Samsun arasında yeniden kuvvetlenecek.

In the Black Sea the showers will ease back today. The is snow in Bolu, Giresun and Gümüşhane, in Trabzon the weather is overcast. Tomorrow snow will increase again between Bolu, Kastamonu, Samsun.



Ch. 40 : Colours



"Türk Renkleri" Turkish Colours



karaburun *peninsular*
[Lit: land-nose]

The Farsi Word **siyah** *black* is mainly used for **siyah zeytin** *black olives* (for eating), otherwise the word **kara** *black* is always used.
Other meaning of "Kara" **kara düşünceleri** *black (dark thoughts)*
kara *land, shore*
karayolları *land roads (network), main roads*
kara kuvvetleri *land forces*
kara suları *territorial waters*

Qualities of Colours

The suffix **-(i)mtrak** is used with colours to produce adjectives of colour quality:

karamtrak *blackish, darkish, dusky*

sarımtırak *yellowish, sallow*

mavimtrak *bluish, blued, steel coloured.*

This suffix always retains the form **-mtırak** and does not follow vowel harmony rules.

The suffix **-(i)msi** is also used with colours to produce adjectives of colour quality:

morumsu *purplish*

mavimsi *bluish*.

This suffix follows vowel harmony rules.

renk *colour*, **rengi** *its colour*, **renkli** *coloured*, **renkler** *colours*

Basic Colors

siyah (Farsi) *black*

simsiyah *pitch black*

kara *black*

kapkara *pitch black*

beyaz *snow white*

bembeyaz *snow white*

kırmızı *red*

kıpkırmızı *bright red*

mavi *blue*

masmavi *bright blue*

turuncu *orange*

yeşil *green*

yemyeşil *bright green*

mor *purple*

mosmor *deep purple*

pembe *pink*

pespeembe *shocking pink*

pembe *pink*

tozpeembe *light (dusty) pink*

kahverengi *brown*

sarı *yellow*

sapsarı *yellow*

gri *grey*

Extended Colours

ala *variegated*

ala *light brown*

acı renkli *lurid coloured*

alaca *spotted, mottled*

alacalı bulacalı *many coloured*

alaca buluca *spotted*

açık renkli *light coloured*

açık yeşil *light green*

koyu renkli *dark coloured*

koyu gri *dark grey*

koyu yeşil *dark green*

turkuvaz *turquoise*

lacivert *navy blue*

çakır (renkli) *grey-blue*

bej *beige*

eflatun *lilac*

morumsu kırmızı renk *magenta*

galibarda *fuchsia*

menekşe rengi *violet*

bordo *claret*

gül rengi *rose colour*

çim rengi *lime color*

zeytin rengi *olive colour*

haki rengi *khaki, olive drab*

metalik rengi *metallic colour*

altunî *gold coloured*

altın renkli *gold coloured*

gümüş rengi *silver colour*

gümüş renkli *silver coloured*

gök kuşağı *the rainbow*

çimlime *colour from turf, grass, lawn*

zeytin *olive fruit*

altın *gold*

gümüş *silver*

menekşe *violet flower*

gül *rose flower*

alabalık *rainbow trout*

sarımtırak altuni metalik rengi *yellowish golden metallic colour*

kahverengi *brown* [Lit: coffee coloured]

bordo [Fr. bordeaux]

About Old Turkish

ak (Old Turkish) *white*

al (Old Turkish) *red*

The Old Turkish Words for *Red Al* and *White Ak* are mostly used in place names and family names; otherwise the words "beyaz *white*, kırmızı *red*" are used.

Alsancak (an area of İzmir) *Red Banner*

Akhisar (a town in Turkey) *Whitefort*

Bay Alkan *Mr. Redblood*

Akdemir Sanayi A. Ş. *The White-Iron Industry Ltd.*

Seeing "red"

The word **kızıl** means *red-coloured* and is used in certain situations as these examples show:

Kızıldeniz *the Red Sea*

Kızılderili *American Red-Indian*

kızılötesi *infrared*

kızıl saçlı *red haired*

Kızılay *the Red Crescent* (same as The Red Cross health service)

Kızılırmak *the Red River* (the longest river in Turkey)

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 41 : Numbers



Cardinal Numbers 0 - 49

sıfır-0 bir-1 iki-2 üç-3 dört-4 beş-5 altı-6 yedi-7 sekiz-8 dokuz-9

on-10 on bir-11 on iki-12 on üç-13 on dört-14 on beş-15 on altı-16 on yedi-17 on sekiz-18 on dokuz-19

yirmi-20 yirmi bir-21 yirmi iki-22 yirmi üç-23 yirmi dört-24 yirmi beş-25 yirmi altı-26 yirmi yedi-27 yirmi sekiz-28 yirmi dokuz-29

otuz-30 otuz bir-31 otuz iki-32 otuz üç-33 otuz dört-34 otuz beş-35 otuz altı-36 otuz yedi-37 otuz sekiz-38 otuz dokuz-39

kırk-40 kırk bir-41 kırk iki-42 kırk üç-43 kırk dört-44 kırk beş-45 kırk altı-46 kırk yedi-47 kırk sekiz-48 kırk dokuz-49

Cardinal Numbers 50 - 99

elli-50 elli bir-51 elli iki-52 elli üç-53 elli dört-54 elli beş-55 elli altı-56 elli yedi-57 elli sekiz-58 elli dokuz-59

altmış-60 altmış bir-61 altmış iki-62 altmış üç-63 altmış dört-64 altmış beş-65 altmış altı-66 altmış yedi-67 altmış sekiz-68 altmış dokuz-69

yetmiş-70 yetmiş bir-71 yetmiş iki-72 yetmiş üç-73 yetmiş dört-74 yetmiş beş-75 yetmiş altı-76 yetmiş yedi-77 yetmiş sekiz-78 yetmiş dokuz-79

seksen-80 seksen bir-81 seksen iki-82 seksen üç-83 seksen dört-84 seksen beş-85 seksen altı-86 seksen yedi-87 seksen sekiz-88 seksen dokuz-89

doksan-90 doksan bir-91 doksan iki-92 doksan üç-93 doksan dört-94 doksan beş-95 doksan altı-96 doksan yedi-97 doksan sekiz-98 doksan dokuz-99

Cardinal Numbers 100 - 1,000,000

yüz-100 iki yüz-200 üç yüz-300 dört yüz-400 beş yüz-500 altı yüz-600 yedi yüz-700 sekiz yüz-800 dokuz yüz-900

bin-1000 iki bin-2000 üç bin-3000 dört bin-4000 beş bin-5000 altı bin-6000 yedi bin-7000 sekiz bin-8000 dokuz bin-9000

on bin-10000 on bir bin-11000 on iki bin-12000 on üç bin-13000 on dört bin-14000 on beş bin-15000 on altı bin-16000 on yedi bin-17000 on sekiz bin-18000 on dokuz bin-19000

yirmi bin-20000 yirmi bir bin-21000 yirmi iki bin-22000 yirmi üç bin-23000 yirmi dört bin-24000 yirmi beş bin-25000 yirmi altı bin-26000 yirmi yedi bin-27000 yirmi sekiz bin-28000

otuz bin-30000 kırk bin-40000 elli bin-50000 altmış bin-60000 yetmiş bin-70000 seksen bin-80000 doksan bin-90000 bir milyon-100000

Peculiarities of Numbers

yüz 100 also means "face" or "reason"

Bu yüzden, O yüzden.

Because of this, For that reason.

Binanın ön yüzü.

The front face of the building, Facade

Cardinal numbers are followed by singular nouns.

iki ev two houses

beş yüz araba five-hundred cars

kırk ağaç forty trees

beş yüz yirmi üç bin yedi yüz elli sekiz 523,758

Which may also be written in official papers and banks without any spaces:
beşyüzyirmiüçbinyediüzellisekiz 523,758

When English states a small general numerical amount it says: "Two or three"
Turkish will say "üç bes" "three (or) five"

üç beş yumurta *three (or) five eggs*

[English: "two or three eggs", "two or three cars"]

In Turkish the number **kırk** *forty* is used to signify an uncountable amount.

Kırk yılda bir *Once in forty years* is equivalent to "Once in a blue moon" in English.

Ordinal Numbers *first, second, etc.*

sıfırncı *zeroth*

ilk *first; 1st, the original*

birinci *first; 1st of a list*

ikinci *second; 2nd*

üçüncü *third; 3rd*

dördüncü *fourth; 4th*

beşinci *fifth; 5th*

altıncı *sixth; 6th*

yedinci *seventh; 7th*

sekizinci *eighth; 8th*

dokuzuncu *ninth; 9th*

onuncu *tenth; 10th*

on sekizinci *eighteenth; 18th*

yirmi üçüncü *twenty-third; 23rd*

otuz dördüncü *thirty-fourth; 34th*

elli beşinci *fifty-fifth; 55th*

kırk altıncı *forty-sixth; 46th*

altmış yedinci *sixty-seventh; 67th*

seksen sekizinci *eighty-eighth; 88th*

doksan dokuzuncu *ninety-ninth; 99th*

yüzüncü *hundredth; 100th*
bininci *thousandth; 1000th*

Fractions and percentage

yarım (noun) *half*
yarım elma *a half an apple*
yarı (adj.) *half*
yarı elma *a half apple*
elmanın yarısı *the apple half*

buçuk *half*
[an hour, a kilo, a serving]

çeyrek *quarter*
of [an hour, a kilo, a serving]

bir *one, #1*
[And is also the indefinite article *a* or *an*]

üçte iki [üç-te iki] *two-thirds*
[Lit: three-in two written as 3/2 in Turkish.]

yüzde yirmi beş *twenty-five percent*
[Lit: one hundred-in 25 written as %25 in Turkish]

Distributive Numbers *One each, two each, three each*

yarımşar *half each*
birer *one each*
ikişer *two each*
üçer *three each*
dörder *four each*

beşer *five each*
altışar *six each*
yedişer *seven each*
sekizer *eight each*
dokuzar *nine each*

onar *ten each*
on birer *eleven each*
yirmişer *twenty each*
yirmi beşer *twenty-five each*
otuzar *thirty each*

kırkar *forty each*
ellişer *fifty each*

yüzer *a hundred each*
ikişer yüz [NOT iki yüzer] *two hundred each*
biner *a thousand each*
ikişer bin [NOT iki biner] *two thousand each*
birer milyon[NOT milyonar NOR bir milyonar] *a million each*

Kızlara ikişer elma verin.
Give the girls two apple each.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 42 : Word Recognition in Turkish



Word Formation in Turkish

English has many little such as *-ness*, *-ly*, *-tion* etc. used to form and modify existing words. The same exists in Turkish language.

As the connection of the modified word is not always apparent, this list helps to recognize parts of speech for taking an educated guess at its meaning.

It is all part of the language learning curve. The ability to recognize word endings is useful in reading and communications.

Forming Nouns and Adjectives.

-lık/-lik/-lülük/-lülük

Makes concrete and abstract nouns like *-ness* or *-tion* in English.

iyi - *good*

iyilik - *goodness*

göz - *eye*

gözlük - *spectacles*

güzel - *nice, lovely*

güzellik - *beauty*

Also forms nouns of place and usage

kömür - *coal*

kömürlük - *coal cellar*

elma - *apple*

elmalik - *apple orchard*

tuz - *salt*

tuzluk - *salt cellar*

-lı/-li/-lu/-lü

Forms adjectives - furnished with, containing, emanating from, and nationalities.

şehir - *town*

şehirli - *a townsman*

para - *money*

paralı - *requiring payment in cash*

ağaç - *tree*

ağaçlı - *a copse, a glade*

İngiliz - *English*

İngilizli - *an Englishman*

-sız/-siz/-suz/-süz

Forms adjectives of "lacking, lack of" *without, -less*

su - *water*

susuz - *thirsty*

para - *money*

parasız - *stony broke*

zarar - *damage, injury*

zararsız - *undamaged*

-ci/-cı/-cu/-cü or -çi/-çı/-çu/-çü

Forms nouns of occupation, work etc.

taksi - *taxi*

taksici - *taxi driver*

kebab - *kebab*

kebabçı - *kebab seller*

balık - *fish*

balıkçı - *fisherman*

yol - *road, way*

yolcu - *traveller*

-ca/-ce/-ça/-çe

Forms the names of national languages and also adverbs and adjectives.

Türk - *Turk, Turkish*

Türkçe - *Turkish [as a language]*

İngiliz - *English (as an adjective)*

İngilizce - *the English language*

İspanyol - *Spanish (as an adjective)*

İspanyolca - *the Spanish language*

aptal - *fool*

aptalca - *foolishly*

yavaş - *slow*

yavaşça - *slowly*

sert - *hard*

sertçe - *hardish*

giz, gizli - *secret*

gizlice - *secretly*

Gives the meaning of likeness.

ÇocukÇA davranıyorsun.

You are behaving childishly.

İnsanCA yasamalıyız.

We must live humanLY.

Means - "in terms of, on the point of"

KiloCA senden daha fazla.

He weighs more than you IN kilograms.

AkılCA birbirinizden farkınız yok.

There is no difference between you in terms intellect.

Means - "according to"

SenCE yaptığın doğru mu?

Do YOU THINK it is right what you have done.

BenCE sana yeşil çok yakışıyor.

I THINK green suits you well.

Means - "muchness, exaggeration"

YüzlerCE kitap okumuş.

He has read hundreds of books.

Enumerates a time period.

Bu okulda yıllarCA çalıştım.

I worked at this school FOR years.

Seni saatlerCE bekledim.

I waited for you FOR hours.

Defalarca sana yazmak istedim.

I wanted to write to you SO MANY times.

Means - "togetherness, unity"

Bu kararı aileCE aldık.

We took this decision AS ALL the family.

SınıfÇA pikniğe gittik.

We went to picnic ALL TOGETHER WITH the class.

Makes an adverb.

SessizCE beni dinle.

Listen to me quietLY.

Onunla gizliCE buluştum.

I met him secretLY.

Means - "-ish, rather "

YaşlıCA bir adam bana seni sordu.

An oldISH man asked me for you.

BüyükÇE bir taşı fırlattı.

He threw away a SOMEWHAT large stone.

-daş

Basically this suffix means "fellow"

vatan - *native country*

vatandaş - *fellow countryman; citizen*

arka - *back, behind*

arkadaş - *friend*

yol - *road, way*

yoldaş - *fellow traveller*

-inci/-ıncı/-uncu/-üncü

Used for ordinal numbers.

üç - *three*

üçüncü - *the third*

beş - *five*

beşinci - *the fifth*

-msı/-msi

acı - *bitter*

acımsı - *slightly bitter*

ekşi - *sour*

ekşimsi - *sourish*

-cil/-cıl

ben - *I*

bencil - *selfish*

insan - *person*

insancıl - *humane; caring*

-şın

sarı - *yellow*
sarışım - *blonde*

-sal

kum - *sand*
kumsal - *sandy*

kadın - *woman*
kadınsal - *feminine*

-cağz

A diminutive suffix, for persons and pets

kız - *girl*
kızcağz - *poor little girl*

çocuk - *child*
çocukcağz - *poor little child*

-cık/-cik/-cuk/-cük

A diminutive suffix for size, quantity.

az - *little, a bit*
azıcık - *just a bit*

küçük - *small*
küçücük - *tiny, smallish*

büyük - *big*
büyücük - *biggish*

-tı/-ti/-tu/-tü

horuldamak - *to snore, to gurgle*

horultu - *a snore*

cıldamak - *to chirp, to twitter*

cıvıltı - *a chirping; a twittering*

Forming Verbs from Nouns or Adjectives

-lamak/-lemek

su - *water*

sulamak - *to water; to irrigate*

taş - *stone*

taşlamak - *to pave; to throw stones at.*

uğur - *good luck*

uğurlamak - *to see somebody off.*

temiz - *clean*

temizlemek - *to clean something*

-almak

az - *less*

azalmak - *to lessen*

dar - *narrow*

daralmak - *to become narrow*

-I

doğru - *correct, accurate*

doğrulamak - *to correct*

sivri - *sharp*
sivrilmek - *to become pointed*

-a/-e

kan - *blood*
kanamak - *to bleed*

yaş - *age*
yaşamak - *to live; to exist*

tür - *a sort*
türemek - *to derive*

-ar

mor - *purple*
morarmak - *to turn purple*

-damak/-demek

fısıltı - *a mutter*
fısıldamak - *to murmur; to whisper*

horultu - *a snore*
horuldamak - *to snore*

gürültü - *noise*
gürüldemek - *to rumble*

-atmak/-etmek

yön - *direction*
yönetmek - *to direct; to administer*

göz - *eye*
gözetmek - *to look after*

-ıkma/-ikmek

geç - *late*

gecikmek - *to be late*

bir - *one*

birikmek - *to collect; to assemble*

-ımsamak/-imsemek

az - *less, small*

azımsamak - *to regard as of little value*

benim - *my*

benimsemek - *to regard as one's own*

küçük - *small*

küçümsemek - *to regard as small; to condescend*

-kırmak

fıstı - *a squirt*

fıskırmak - *to gush*

haykırış - *a squeal*

haykırmak - *to scream*

-lanmak/-lenmak

ev - *house*

evlenmek - *to marry*

-laşmak/-leşmak

şaka - *joke*

şakalaşmak - *to joke with each other*

dar - *narrow*

darlaşmak - *to narrow down;*

soğuk - *cold*

soğuklaşmak - *to get cold*

-samak/-semek

Very often means "to regard as"

su - *water*

susamak - *to get thirsty*

garip - *odd, peculiar*

garipsemek - *to regard as strange, curious*

önem - *importance*

önemsemek - *to regard as important*

Forming Nouns from Verb Roots.

-ca/-ça -ce/-çe

düşünmek - *to think*

düşünce - *thought; opinion*

eğlenmek - *to enjoy oneself*

eğlence - *amusement; entertainment*

-acak/-ecek

This is a form of the Future Participle used as a noun.

giymek - *to dress*
giyecek - *clothes; outfit*

olmak - *to become*
olacak - *suitable; reasonable*

açmak - *to open*
açacak - *can or bottle opener*

-ak/-ek

yatmak - *to lie down*
yatak - *bed*

kaçmak - *to escape*
kaçak - *escapee*

durmak - *to halt/stop*
durak - *bus stop; a halt*

-ga/-ge

bölmek - *to divide, partition*
bölge - *zone; area*

süpürmek - *to sweep. brush*
süpürge - *a broom; a brush; a whisk*

-gan/-kan/-gen/-ken

çalışmak - *to work*
çalışkan - *industrious*

unutmak - *to forget*
unutkan - *forgetful*

kaymak - *to slide*
kaygan - *slippery*

-gı/-gi

sevmek - to love, like
sevgi - love; affection

çalmak - to play (mus.) ; to steal
çalgı - musical instrument

asmak - to hang (up)
askı - peg; hanger

-gıç/-giç

bilmek - to know
bilgiç - info; data

başlanmak - to begin, to be begun
başlangıç - initial; start up

-gın/-kın/-gin/-kin/-gün/-kүн/-gun/-kun

Forms nouns and adjectives of description and result.

bıkmak - to be fed up with.
bıkkın - bored; fed up

yormak - to tire, to become weary
yorgun - tired

solmak - to fade
solgun - faded

şaşmak - to deviate
şaşkın - bewildered; amazed

kızmak - to get angry, to get hot

kızgın - *angry; hot*

-ı/-i/-u/-ü

Added to single syllable verb roots ending in a consonant to form a noun.

ölmek - *to die*

ölü - *a corpse*

yapmak - *to make*

yapı - *a construction; a building*

dolmak - *to fill*

dolu - *full (adj.)*

kokmak - *to smell*

koku - *a smell*

koşmak - *to run*

koşu - *a race*

-ıcı/-ici/-ucu/-ücü

Denotes nouns of profession and "doers"

yapmak - *to do*

yapıcı - *performer; doer; builder*

görmek - *to see*

görücü - *matchmaker (for intended marriage)*

almak - *to take*

alıcı - *purchaser*

satmak - *to sell*
satıcı - *seller; dealer*

-ık/-ik/-uk/-ük

Forms nouns and adjectives of result.

kesmek - *to cut*
kesik - *a cut*

açmak - *to open*
açık - *open (adj.)*

bozmak - *to spoil*
bozuk - *ruined; spoiled; out of order*

çıkmak - *to go/come out*
çıkık - *dislocated, projecting*

delmek - *to bore, to drill*
delik - *hole*

saçmak - *to scatter*
saçık - *scattered*

-ım/-im/-um/-üm

Forms nouns of a single occasion/happening.

saymak - *to count*
sayım - *census; count*

seçmek - *to choose*
seçim - *choice; election; selection*

ölmek - *to die*

ölüm - *death*

ölçmek - *to measure*

ölçüm - *measurement*

satmak - *to sell*

satım - *a (single) sale*

-ın/-in/-un/-ün

yığmak - *to heap up*

yığın - *heap, stack*

akmak - *to flow, stream out*

akın - *raid; rush*

ekmek - *to plant, sow (v.); bread (n.)*

ekin - *crop*

-inç/-inç/-unç/-ünç

gülmek - *to laugh*

gülünç - *laughable, ridiculous*

sevmek - *to like, love*

sevinç - *mirth, delight*

-ıntı/-inti/-untu/-üntü

esmek - *to blow*

esinti - *breeze*

çıkma; - *to go out, exit*

çıkıntı - *projection, bulge, ledge*

dökmek - *to pour, dump, empty*

döküntü - *spillage, debris, waste*

-ar/-er/-ır/-ir/-ur/-ür and -r

From the Simple Present Participle Positive

gelmek - *to come*

gelir - *income; takings*

gider - *to go, leave*

gider - *expenditure*

okumak - *to read*

okur - *reader*

-ış/-iş/-uş/-üş

The Co-operative (in concert) Verb Mood sign

oturmak - *to sit, to reside*

oturuş - *way of sitting*

yürümek - *to walk*

yürüyüş - *a walk*

-ıt/-it/-ut/-üt

geçmek - *to pass*

geçit - *passageway*

yaş - *age*

yaşıt - *of the same age*

yakmak - *to burn*

yakıt - *fuel*

ölçmek - *to measure*
ölçüt - *measure of value*

-tı/-ti/-tu/-tü

belirmek - *to emerge, appear*
belirti - *indication, indicator*

kızartmak - *to redden/chafe; to grill*
kızartı - *eruption/glow*

Forming New Verbs from Existing Verbs.

-ala/-ele

kovmak - *to drive away*
kovalamak - *to chase (after)*

silmek - *to shake, toss*
silkelemek - *to shake s.o. out*

-ımsa/-imse

Forms a verbs "to regard as

gülmek - *to laugh*
gülümsemek - *to smile*

anmak - *to mention*
anımsamak - *to recollect*

-ın/-in/-un/-ün

Forms verbs with a Reciprocal meaning.

gezmek - to wander

gezinmek - to roam

görmek - to see

görünmek - to seem, appear

sevmek - to love, like

sevinmek - to feel glad

taşımak - to move

taşınmak - to move in/out

-r

Forms a Causative Verb.

kaçmak - to escape

kaçırmak - to miss; to kidnap

batmak - to sink (by itself)

batırmak - to sink s.o

içmek - to drink

içirmek - to ply drinks

-ş

Forms verbs with a Co-operative meaning.

görmek - to see

görüşmek - to meet

uçmak - *to fly*
uçuşmak - *to fly away*

gülmek - *to laugh*
gülüşmek - *to laugh at each other*

-t

Forms verbs with a Causative meaning.

uzamak - *to lengthen*
uzatmak - *to extend*

sapmak - *to deviate*
sapıtmak - *to go crazy*

korkmak - *to fear*
korkutmak - *to frighten*

üşümek - *to chill/to cool down*
üşütmek - *to get a chill/cold*

-ıl/-il -ul/-ül

Forms Verbs of the Passive Mood

sevmek - *to like, love*
sevilmek - *to be loved/liked*

kırmak - *to fracture*
kırılmak - *to break s.o.*

satmak - *to sell*
satılmak - *to be sold*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 43 : Conversation Items



The following Conversational Items are dealt with in these chapters:

1. How to say "Thank you"
2. Street Turkish
3. Body Language
4. Common Door Signs
5. About "Buyurun
6. Expressing Need
7. About the important word "**Hoş**"
8. Modes of Address
9. Greetings
10. Saying "too much, too many"
11. Hello and Goodbye
12. Saying "yes" and No" in Turkish.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 44 : How to say "Thank you"



What are the services being rendered to us?

*Many tourists use **sağ olun** wrongly instead of using **teşekkür ederim** as they copy the boy waiter's way of thanking as the waiters often use **sağ olun** for misguided effect.*

The difference in usage of **teşekkür ederim** *thank you* and the more sincere **sağ olun** *stay healthy*.

(1) **sağ olun** *be healthy, be strong* is used as *thank you* for a service which: Was not necessarily needed to be performed.

For someone who has gone out of his way to help you.

(2) **teşekkür ederim** *thank you* is used in normal circumstances and receiving presents.

[Lit: "a thanking perform I" Arb.]

Scenario (1)

The waiter puts a nice meal in front of you.

Your *thank you* is **teşekkür ederim**, it is his job.

The waiter puts a bottle of wine in front of you.

Your *thank you* is **teşekkür ederim**; it is his job.

Then the waiter uncorks the bottle of wine and pours it in your glass.

Your *thank you* is **sağ olun**, he need not have performed this service.

The recipient of your gratitude will often answer your **sağ olun** with the rejoinder **siz de sağ olun** *health to you also* [this is the Polite Version said to to

stranger]

Other forms are **sen de sağ ol**, or quite short **siz de** or **sen de** *you too*

Scenario (2)

You ask someone the time. He looks at his watch and says "*Half past three*".

Your answer is **sağ olun**. You have caused him to perform a service to you.

Scenario (3)

You drop your handkerchief a stranger picks it up and hand it to you.

Your answer is **sağ olun**, He need not have done it.

*The rule is, if in doubt then use **teşekkür ederim**.*

How to answer a "thank you"

The answer to **teşekkür ederim** is **bir şey değil** *It is nothing* or **rica ederim** *I request!*

[as "bitte schön" in German.]

Also used is **ne demek?** *what does it mean?*

The expression **ne demek?** sounds quite comical in English.

It actually means something like: *It doesn't matter at all.*

The answer **Rica ederim** is the politest one.

The recipient of your gratitude will often answer your **sen sağol** with the rejoinder **sen de sağol** *health to you too*.

Other Versions are:

sağ ol [familiar]

sağ olun [polite and/or singular]

sağ olunuz [public and/or plural]

A simple **teşekkürler** also means a very informal *thanks* and is used in shops

and for small duties performed.

A little caveat or "take care."

Many people when first learning Turkish are tempted to use the Present Continuous Tense form **teşekkür ediyorum**.

This form sounds quite comical to the Turkish ear and can also be construed as being sarcastic.

One should always use the Present Simple form **teşekkür ederim** and you will not go wrong nor be misunderstood.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 45 : Street Turkish and Daily Talk



Invoking the Intervention of Allah.

The using of the name of Deity in daily speech is not considered strong talk as it would be to call on Jesus, Christ or God in the English language.

The following examples are quite ordinary usage in daily Turkish. Some of the younger people do not use all these invocations but they are heard everywhere and used in newspapers and novels and are useful to know.

Some Daily Interjections!

İnşallah *Before beginning something*

Bismillah *Just at beginning.*

Allahaısmarladık! *Goodbye!*

New Turkish: **Hoşçakal!** *Keep well!*

Allah Allah!! *When surprised/disappointed.*

New Turkish: **Hadi ya!, Vay canına!** *Well now!, What the heck?*

Eyvallah *When giving up trying.*

Eyvallah *Self reassurance.*

Ya Allah *At finishing off.*

Vallahi Billahi *Promise, swear.*

New Turkish: **Yemin ederim.** *I swear..*

Alimallah *Fully motivated.*

Fesuphanallah *Bored.*

New Turkish: **Bıktım** [verb: bıkmak] *I am fed up.*

Ondan bıktım! *I got fed up with that!*

Of! (a sound) *Disappointed.*

Hasbınallah *More bored*

İllallah *Gives up.*

Allah, Allah, Allah *Showing enjoyment.*

Maşallah *After success; Giving admiration.*

New Turkish: **Aferin!** *Well done!*

Estağfurullah *Showing modesty.*

New Turkish: **Lafi bile olmaz** *It is not even worth mentioning*

Hay Allah *On failure.*

Some notes on the formulas above

Allahaısmarladık. *Goodbye when leaving company or after making a visit to someones home.*

[Lit: "I leave you to God's care"]

This formula is only spoken by the persons who are actually leaving.

Those who are staying behind should reply **Güle güle.** as their own Goodbye to the visitors.

[Lit: "Go with a smile."]

Eyvallah *Thanks (with gratitude)* has other meanings:

It is used to say *Goodbye for now.*

It is mainly used in conversations between men.

Estağfurullah If someone compliments you on your ability to converse in Turkish, then your reply is **Estağfurullah** *"Please don't mention it"* which implies a modicum of modesty.

"On holiday in **Kuşadası** I had a meal on **Güvercin Adası** *Pigeon Island* out in the bay.

It was expertly served by a waiter of advanced age.

I told him that I could see that he was an **Usta** *Expert* at his job.

His reply to me was **Estağfurullah!**"

Street Turkish Body Language and Sign Language

Yes **evet** is shown by a single downward nod of the head.

No **hayir** or **yo(k)** is shown by a single tilt the head backwards while lifting the eyebrows at the same time.

Expressing negation or disagreement

"No" is signified by raising his eyebrows with an up tilt of the head. Quite often one will make the sound "tut" at the same time.

Shaking the head from side to side does not mean "NO". It signifies *I don't understand*.

This is often a mistake made by Europeans when trying to say "No" and is the cause of many misunderstandings.

It is correct to tilt the head backwards and raise the eyebrows when indicating negation and saying "No"

The hand sign for "Come along"

To express "Come along, Follow me, Continue on" the hand is held out with the fingers downward and a scooping motion is made to signify the meaning.

The fingers are not held upwards as in Europe as this may be construed as being a little rude.

The Turkish Trafik Polisi use this gesture when directing vehicles.

The hand sign showing enthusiasm and approval.

To signify you approval you should use the French method of holding the fingers and thumb together in an upright position. *Ooh la la!*

Never use this rude hand sign

Finally never give the "thumbs up" gesture to signify that you like something

Finally never give the "thumbs up" gesture to signify that you like something.

This gesture is obscene in Turkish and only used amongst males.

Never point at anything.

Pointing is considered rude. A sweep of the whole hand should be used when describing directions.

Common Door signs

AÇIK *Open*

KAPALI *Closed*

GİRİŞ *Entrance*

ÇIKIŞ *Exit*

İTİNİZ *Push*

ÇEKİNİZ *Pull*

TUVALET / WC *Toilet*

BAY (B.) *Gentleman Man*

ERKEK (E.) *Male Man*

BAYAN (Bn.) *Lady Woman*

KADIN (K.) *Female Lady*

YASAKTIR *Forbidden Prohibited*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 46 : About *buyurun* "Please be so kind"



"*buyurun*" *Your'e welcome!*

There are many translations of **buyurun** according to context.

The Public/Plural form is **buyurunuz**.

It is the second person Singular or Plural of the Simple Present tense of the verb **buyurmak** *to deign to*

[Lit: "Would you deign to, to command, to decree, to make an order."]

All or any of these meanings can be applied according to context; this word has become a sort of universal polite request, pleasant command, and is in constant daily use in all areas of Turkish life.

It is a catch-all word for most situations. It is a very important word to learn.

Let us consider how it is used:

1. When calling on someones house and they say **buyurun** it means *Please come in.*
2. When they point to a chair **buyurun** *Please sit down.*
3. When they serve tea **buyurun** *Please drink and enjoy.*
4. On entering a shop the shopkeeper may say **buyurun efendim** meaning *Can I help you, sir?*
5. In a restaurant or cafe when the waiter or bar man says **buyurun** it means *What would you like?*
6. In many busy places markets, souvenir shops, cafes *etc.* there is often a professional barker who will be saying to all passers by **buyurun** *Come and buy.*

7. If in a cafe you ask to see what food is being prepared in the kitchen (normal in Turkey) then the answer would be **buyurun** meaning in this case *Of course you may!*
8. When answering the telephone you say **buyurun** meaning *I'm listening to your call.*
9. Turkish speakers also say **efendim** on answering telephone phone to say *Hello* in a polite manner.
10. When passing people in narrow places or entering lifts etc. **buyurun** means *After you!*

There are many cases where **buyurun** is used and there are probably many more examples ; you will hear it all the time when in Turkey.

Expressing need

To say that "We like something" the verbs **sevmek** and **beğenmek** are used.

sevmek to love, to like

sevmemek not to love, not to like

beğenmek to like

beğenmemek not to like

The word **rica** is also used for polite requests.

rica etmek to request

rica etmemek to not request

The word **rica** is of Arabic Origin and the pronunciation of the last letter -a is very "open" and it is pronounced with a long final vowel **ricAAA ederim** and being Arabic, this word does not follow Turkish Pronunciation Rules.

Use of the Past Tense

When a Turkish person asks if you like something, they normally ask in the past tense *Did you like the apple?*

These type of questions are also answered in the past tense, *Yes I liked the apple?*

Turkish usually uses the past tense in its questions and answers of preference. It is different to English as both present and past tenses are used in these situations.

Asking with the **-diniz** form for the polite *you*

Yemeğinizi sevdiniz mi?

Did/Do you like your meal?

Yemeği sevdim.

I like/liked the meal.

Yemeğinizi beğendiniz mi?

Did/Do you like your meal?

Yemeği beğendim

I like/liked the meal.

The familiar form uses **-in** informal form for *you*

Türkiye'yi sevdin mi?

Did you like Turkey?

Yolculuğu sevdin mi?

Did you enjoy the journey?

Türkiye'yi beğendin mi?

Did you like Turkey?

Saying "I love you!"

Turkish says **Seni seviyorum!** [Lit: I am loving you!] *I love you!*

Turkish uses the Continuous Tense to say "I am loving you!" as it is more vivid than the simple tense "I love you!" which is used in English.

Saying that you do not like something.

To say that "We do not like something" the negative verbs **sevmemek** and

beğenmemek are used.

You may not have liked it!

Türkiye'yi sevdiniz mi?

Do/Did you like Turkey?

Türkiye'yi beğendiniz mi?

Do/Did you like Turkey?

Şunu sevmedim.

I don't like/ didn't like that.

Şunu beğenmedim.

I don't like/ didn't like that.

[This shows the use of **şunu** *that one* in its disparaging meaning.]

Examples of the Negative

Yolculuğunuzu sevdiniz mi?

Did you like your journey?

Hayır, yolculuğumu sevmedim

No, I didn't like my journey.

Hayır, onu beğenmedim

No, I didn't like it.

Bamyayı sevmiyor musunuz?

Don't you like okra?

Yoo, bamyayı sevmem.

No, I don't like okra (at all).

Ankara'yı beğendiniz mi?

Did you like Ankara?

Ankara'yı beğenmedim.

No, I didn't like Ankara.

Using the Present Continuous Tense in Turkish in this situation conveys

...

vividness.

Evet, onu çok seviyorum.

Yes, I like it a lot.

Yoo, onu sevmiyorum.

No, I am not liking it (at the moment).

The use of **Yoo** for No is a polite conversational way of saying No.

It actually comes from **yok** *There isn't*, but it is gentler than **hayır** which is the real No!

Other ways of Expressing Need

Use of the verb **istemek** to want.

Need can be expressed with various verbs, the main one being **istemek** to want.

This can be answered with the verb **rica etmek** to (would) like, to request very much like the "bitte schön" of German.

İstedğiniz bir şey var mı?

Is there anything that you want?

Bir havlu rica ederim

I would like (I request) a towel.

"ihtiyaç" necessity/need/requirement

Bir ihtiyacınız var mı?

Is there anything that you require?

it: Have you a requirement?]

Evet, bir bardak su, rica ederim.

Yes, I would like (I request) a glass of water

"arzu" wish, desire

Başka arzunuz var mı?

Is there any thing else (that you desire)?

This word is often used by shop keepers, grocers and the like. *Anything else madam?* when daily purchases are being made.

The important word Hoş agreeable, joyful

This word is used in many idioms and daily speech, and has many related meanings.

Hoş joy is used with the auxiliary verb **gitmek** to go: **Hoşuma gitti** [Hoş-um-a] *I enjoyed it* [
[Lit: It went to my joy].

This formula is heavily used in daily Turkish conversation.

Some of the many meanings of "Hoş"

hoş agreeable, amiable, amusing, bonny, charming, congenial, cosy, cozy, cuddly, darling, debonair, delicious, enchanting, engaging, entertaining, fine, genial, good, graceful, grateful, tolerant, pleasant, nice, quaint.

Hoş geldiniz! [said to an arriving guest.]
Welcome!

Hoş bulduk! [said in reply to a welcoming greeting.]
Thank you!
[Lit: we found goodness]

Other uses of "hoş"

"bir hoş" strange, odd, peculiar

O şarkıyı duyunca Dursun'un yüzü bir hoş oldu.
When he heard that song Dursun got an odd look on his face.

Midem bir hoş.
My stomach feels funny.

Ali'nin söylediklerine hiç aldırma, kafası bir hoştur.
Don't pay any attention to what Ali says, his head has gone.

Saying "even if"

Hoş param da olsa almazdım.
Even if I had the money I wouldn't buy it.

"anyway, anyhow"

Hoş, bunu biliyordum.
I knew this anyway.

"-la hoş geçinmek" to get on well (with)

Mehmet'le hoş geçiniyoruz.
We are getting on well with Mehmet.

"Hoşa gitmek" to be pleasing

Hoşuma gitti [Hoş-um-a]
I enjoyed it.

Mehmet'in hoşuna gitti. [hoş-u-n-a]
Mehmet enjoyed it.

John'un hoşuna gitmiş [hoş-u-n-a]
It seem that John enjoyed it.

"Hoş görmek" to be tolerant, overlook, condone

Polis, onu hoş gördü.
The policeman tolerated it.

Bu çıkan problemi hoş gördük.
We tolerated the problem that happened.

"Hoş karşılamak" to assent to

Belediye, yeni ev planlarımı hoş karşılayacak.

The Town Corporation will give assent to my new house plans.

"Hoş tutmak" to be nice to s.o.

Lütfen yeni gelen turistleri hoş tutunuz.

Please be nice to the newly arrived tourists

Very often suffixes are added ;to the important noun hoş goodness, joy.

hoş goodness

hoş-um my goodness

hoş-um-a to my goodness

hoş-um-a gitti I enjoyed it

[Lit: "It went to my goodness."]

This is a Turkish idiom and much used in daily conversation.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 47 : Turkish Modes of Address



Who are you?

The usual method of address when you do not know the person's name or title is as follows:

For males: **Beyfendi** *Sir*. Daily pronunciation is truncated to: **Beyfendi**

For females: **Hanımefendi** *Miss* or *Madam*. Daily pronunciation is truncated to: **Hanfendi**.

These are used in formal situations and to strangers.

Personal Addressing Formal and Informal

Once names are known then **bey** and **hanım** are used after the first name.

This usage is formal and semi-formal. These titles follow the given-name (first name) and are written without a capital letter:

Mustafa bey

Mr. Mustafa

Ayşe hanım

Miss or Mrs. Ayşe

These are used in formal situations when you know the person's first name but also in informal situations to acquaintances, friends and even to you own family members.

Surnames are not usually used in conversational Turkish, so the **Mustafa bey**

can mean *Mr. Mustafa* and **Ayşe hanım** can mean *Mrs.* OR *Miss Ayşe* in a formal situation, or it can mean just a friendly *Mustafa* or *Ayşe* (without the title) between acquaintances.

All About Names

Turkish has two words for the first name of a person **isim** or **ad** and they can both be used at any time as they are interchangeable.

The Turkish word for surname is **soyadı**, there is no corresponding word for surname based in the word "isim"

İsminiz ne?

What is your first name?

İsmim Ayşe.

My name is Ayşe.

isim name becomes **isminiz** your name and **ismim** my name.

This is one of the nouns that "apocopate" See Ch. 51

Adınız ne?

What is your first name?

Adım Ali

My name is Ali.

Soyadınız ne?

What is your surname?

Soyadım Karaca

My surname is Karaca.

Finding out about a Third Person

The third person suffix is **-i** or **-ı** meaning *his, her, its*

Onun ismi ne?

What is his name?

Onun ismi Mehmet
His name is Mehmet.

Onun adı ne?
What is her name?

Onun adı Deren
Her name is Deren.

Onun soyadı ne?
What is his surname?

Onun soyadı Gürses
His surname is Gürses.

When talking about a third person remote from us we may ask the question:
What is that man's name? In this case the words "man's name" is translated correctly by using the Possessive Relationship to show that the two words belong to each other.

adamın ismi
the man's name
[Lit: the name of the man]

adamın adı
the man's name

adamın soyadı
the man's surname

O Beyefendinin soyadı ne?
What is that gentleman's surname?
[Lit: the surname of the man]

O Beyefendinin ismi ne?
What is that gentleman's name?

To make the sentence more conversational we would normally say: *I wonder what that lady's name is?* "I wonder" is simply translated by adding the word **acaba** at the beginning or end of the Turkish question.

O Hanımefendinin adı ne, acaba?

I wonder what that lady's name is?

Acaba, Mehmet'in soyadı ne?

I wonder what Mehmet's surname is?

Kız kardeşinizin ismi ne, acaba?

What is your sister's name, I wonder?

There is an increasing use of addressing people by their surname, especially used on television in interviews *etc.*

This method uses the word **Sayın** *esteemed* before the surname directly.

If the interviewee's name is **Musafa Kurt**, then he may be addressed as **Mustafa bey** (formal and informal) or directly by his surname as **Sayın Kurt** *Esteemed Kurt* (formal and public) or **Bay Kurt** *Mr. Kurt* (polite and official).

Bay Mr. and **Sayın** *Esteemed* are usually spelt with capital letters, but they can be found without capital letters.

Addressing Letters and Envelopes

Letter Addressed in Turkish

Analysis of This Address

Sayın Mustafa Kurt

Esteemed Mustafa Kurt

Çekmece Mah.

Çekmece District

Uzunyol Sok. Nolu:24 D:6

Uzunyol Street No.24 Apt No. 6

Bağarası Köyü

Bağarası Village

02332 İZMİR, TÜRKİYE

Post Code. Postal County. TURKEY

Abbreviations Used in Addresses

Sok. (Sokak or Sokağı) *Street*

D. (Daire) *Apartment, Suite*

Cad. (Cadde or Caddesi) *Road*

Apt. (Apartman) *Apartment*

Bul. (Bulvar or Bulvarı) *Avenue*

K. (Kat) *Floor*

Yol. (Yol or Yolu) *Way, Route*

No. (Numara) *Number*

Mah. (Mahalle or Mahallesi) *Local District*

Nolu. (Numarala) *Numbered*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 48 : Greetings



In semi formal situations there is a four stage greeting procedure:

1. *The Welcome:* **hoş geldiniz** or less formal **hoş geldin** *Welcome!*
This is answered by **hoş bulduk** *We found it well!*
2. *The Greeting:* This is an exchange of **merhaba** *Hello*
3. *The Asking after Health Stage:* **nasılsınız?** (formal) or **nasılsın?** (informal)
How are you?
4. *The Response:* This is answered by **İyiyim, teşekkür ederim** *I am well, thank you.*
This then followed by a question about the others health: **Siz nasılsınız?** *You, how are you?*

Daily Greetings

günaydın

good morning, good day, good afternoon

iyi günler

good day

iyi akşamlar

good evening

[said on arrival]

iyi geceler *good night*

[said on leaving company]

görüşmek üzere *see you soon*

hoşça kal *so long*

[Lit: stay joyful]

In Turkish the plural is used in "Good day, Good evening, Good night" similar to the Spanish "Buenos Días"

Some Daily Informal Greetings

For an informal greeting like *Hi!* in English, Turkish uses **Selam!** to which the answer is the same **selam!**

Na'ber? Na'ber? *What's up?* is commonly used in everyday language.

It is actually **Ne haber?** *What news?*

The answer is generally **İyidir, senden?**

[Lit: It's good, and from you?]

An informal greeting is:

Ne var ne yok? *What is happening?*

[Lit: What is there (going on?) What isn't there (going on?)]

The answer to this is:

İyilik! *Goodness! Wellness!*

A Long Goodbye

There is a "Formula Speak" that is used quite a lot and is very common for saying your "Goodbyes".

The person(s) who are leaving will say **Allaha ısmalardık!** *Goodbye!*

This is often used when leaving company or on going away to somewhere.

The answer said by those staying behind is **Güle güle!** *Cheerio!*

[Lit: Go with a smile!].

If you use this formula after visiting your Turkish friends they will be suitably impressed.

The Muslim Peace Greeting

Selâmunaleyküm, (a Muslim peace greeting), answered by **Aleykümselâm**.

This greeting is mainly used between passing strangers, normally both male, during travel or on entry to a crowded room, such as a tea house, when one cannot address everybody personally.

Daily Talk

Günaydın

Good morning

İyi akşamlar

Good evening

İyi geceler

Good night

In English the expressions *Good evening* and *Good night* are singular. In Turkish they are plural, as is the Spanish "Buenos Dias".

Hello...

Merhaba *Hello!, Hi!* **Merhaba** corresponds to *Hello!, Hi!* in English. Its usage is identical in either language.

The reply for **Merhaba** is **Merhaba**.

However **Merhaba** is not used for *Hello!* on the telephone. This type of "Hello!" is **Alo!**

Selam *Hello!, Hi!*

Selam is more informal than **Merhaba**

Selamünaleyküm: literally means *May God's peace be upon you* and is used by Muslims as a greeting.

Aleykümselam: said in reply to the greeting **Selamünaleyküm**.

Hoş geldin (familiar/singular) or **Hoş geldiniz** (polite/plural) corresponds *Welcome!* in English.

The reply for **Hoş geldin(iz)** is **Hoş bulduk**. *We found it well.*

...and Goodbye.

Allahaısmarladık, Hoşça kalın *Goodbye*

Hoşça kal (familiar) or **Hoşça kalın** (polite) corresponds to *Stay well, Keep happy* in English.

The guest on leaving leaves, says **Allahaısmarladık** or **Hoşça kalın**

The person staying behind, says **Güle güle**. *Goodbye* [Lit: Smiling, smiling.]

Güle güle corresponds *Go well*. in English.

Allahaısmarladık *Goodbye* [
Lit: I leave you to God's care.]

Either **Allahaısmarladık** or **Hoşça kalın** is correct in informal situations.
In formal situations **Hoşça kalın** is better.

İyi günler *Good day*. It is also the formal of **Allahaısmarladık** and **Hoşça kalın**.> The reply for **İyi günler** is either **İyi günler** or **Size de** *To you also*.

Görüşürüz *See you later*. [Lit: We will see each other.]

The reply for **Görüşürüz** is **Görüşürüz**.

Allah rahatlık versin. [Lit: May God give you peace and comfort.]

An informal expression for "*Good night*" used by the family and friends on retiring to bed.

The reply for **Allah rahatlık versin** is **Sana da!** or **Size de!** [plural/formal] "*And to you also!*".

Thanks and Be Happy.

Teşekkür ederim *Thank you*. This is used in all normal situations.

The reply for **teşekkür ederim** is **Bir şey değil** or **Rica ederim** *You are welcome*.

sağol (familiar) or **sağolun** (polite) [Lit: "Health to you"] equates to *thank you* but is more sincere than **Teşekkür ederim**.

The reply for **sağ olun** is **sen de sağ olun** or **siz de sağ olun** *And health to you also.*

Gözün aydın [familiar/singular] or **Gözünüz aydın** [polite/plural]
[Lit: "May your eyes shine."]

The expression indicates that the others share the speaker's happiness, and that they are also happy about it.

The reply for **Gözünüz aydın** is **Teşekkür ederim.**

Hayırlı olsun *Let it be with goodness.* Used when someone opens a shop or starts a new business, others say **Hayırlı olsun** to him.

The expression indicates the speaker's wish that the new business will bring him prosperity, and it will be profitable.

The reply for **Hayırlı olsun** is **Teşekkür ederim.**

Güle güle kullan (kullanın). or **Hayırlı olsun** is also be used.
Use it with a smile.

When someone buys new item, new clothes, shoes or a car his friends say **Güle güle kullan/kullanın.**

The reply for both expressions is **Teşekkür ederim.**

Have a Good Journey.

İyi yolculuklar/Hayırlı yolculuklar.

Have a nice journey.

İyi tatiller.

Have a nice holiday.

İyi şanslar.

Good Luck.

İyi eğlenceler.

Have a nice time.

İyi seneler/yıllar.

mutlu seneler/yıllar.

Happy new year.

Doğum/Yaş günün kutlu olsun!

Happy birthday!

Afiyet olsun

Bon appetite, Enjoy your meal.

Well done and Take It Easy.

Kolay gelsin *May it come easy.*

Used when the speaker sees someone working, busy with something.

It indicates the speaker's wish that whatever that person is doing at the moment, may be easy for him.

The reply for **Kolay gelsin** is **Teşekkür ederim/**

Aferin *Bravo, Well done!*

Very often used in competition and especially to congratulate young children.

Sorry About It

Affedersin (singular/familiar) or **Affedersiniz** (plural/polite): *Excuse me./Pardon me.*

Affedersin(iz)! Merkeze nasıl gidebilirim?

Excuse me! How can I get to the city centre?

Özür dilerim.

I am sorry.

Sometimes **Affedersin(iz)** is used instead of **Özür dilerim.**

However **Özür dilerim** is more formal

Bir şey değil, Rica ederim.

You are welcome.

Used in reply to **Teşekkür ederim**

Ways of saying "Yes" in Turkish.

1. **Evet** Yes in the sense of answering "Yes/No" questions in English.
2. **Tamam** Yes in the sense of "O.K."
3. **Peki** Yes in the sense of "All right, O.K., If that's so then."
4. **Oldu** Yes in the sense of "That's good, agreed."
5. **Evet, efendim** - "Yes, Sir or Madam."
6. **Var** Yes, *there is*. Answers questions which contain "var mı?" "Is there?, Are there?"

Ways of saying "No" in Turkish.

1. **Hayır** No in the sense of answering yes/no questions in English.
2. **Olmaz** No in the sense of *That's not possible, I don't agree with you, That won't do*
3. **Yok, Yo** - informal and gentle saying of No.
[Also answers questions containing **Yok mu?** *Isn't there?*]
4. **Hayır efendim** *No sir./No madam.*
"Efendim" must be used in this case else this answer could be construed as being curt.

Words of Condolence What a pity.

Geçmiş olsun *May it pass away .*

This expression is used when a friend is ill or has had an accident, like "Get well soon" in English

The reply for **Geçmiş olsun** is **Teşekkür ederim**.

Başın sağ olsun. (singular/familiar) or **Başınız sağ olsun.** (plural/polite) *Health to your head.*

This equates to *My condolences to you, So sorry about it.* in English.

The reply for **Başınız sağ olsun.** is **Siz de sağ olun, Dostlar sağolsun.**

Çok yazık!/Ne yazık!

What a pity!

Çok üzüldüm!

I'm sorry to hear that!

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 49 : How to say - "Too much, many"



Saying "too much, too many"

The translation of *too, too much* is a common difficulty for the student of Turkish.

The dictionary equivalent is **fazla** *in excess* or **lüzumdan fazla** *in excess of its necessity*.

(1) Too meaning "very"

In daily conversational Turkish **çok** *very* is used to convey the meaning *too much, too many*.

In such a sentence as *I didn't buy it, it was too expensive*. the word "too" is translated by **çok** *very*.

Onu almadım, çok pahalıydı.

I didn't buy it, it was too expensive.

(2) Too meaning "overly, excessively"

fazla *in excess* should be used where the context does not make sense by using **çok** *very*,

Baban, seninle fazla sabırlıdır.

Your father is too patient with you.

(3) Too as "ability to" or "inability to"

For the type of sentence *He was too tired to undress (himself)* where neither **çok** very or **fazla** in excess is not suitable Turkish uses a special comparative type construction.

Soyunamayacak kadar yorgundu.

[Lit: He was tired the amount pertaining-to-his-future inability-to-undress.]
He was too tired to get undressed.

This third form is explained in detail below.

soymak to undress somebody else

Reflexive Infinitive

soyunmak to undress oneself

Negative Reflexive Infinitive

soyunmamak not to undress oneself

Negative Potential Reflexive Infinitive

soyunamamak not to be able to undress oneself

Future Relative Reflexive Participle ("-ecek/-acak")

soyunacak a future undressing of oneself

Negative Future Relative Reflexive Participle

soyunmayacak a future not undressing oneself

Negative Future Potential Relative Reflexive Participle

soyunamayacak a future not being able to undress oneself

A further example of this type

Sinemaya gidemeyecek kadar meşgulüm.

I am too busy to go to the cinema.

The verb is basically **gitmek** to go which in this sentence takes the form of the Negative Potential **gidememek** not to be able to go

.

The construction of this type of "too" is: Future Potential Relative Participle + **kadar** + comparison verb + person

Ayşe, bu yıl tatil yapamayacak o kadar hastaydı.

[Lit: Ayşe, this year her-future-inability-to-make-a- holiday that-amount ill she was.]

Ayşe was too ill to go on holiday this year.

Araba güzel zaman içinde duramayacak kadar çabuk sürüyordu.

[Lit: The car in-good-time its-future-inability-to-stop that-amount quickly was-going.]

The car was going too fast to be able to stop in time.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 50 : Word Glossaries



The Glossaries

Apocopating Noun List

A comprehensive list of nouns which lose their terminal vowel when adding a suffix which itself begins with a vowel.

In effect a "buffer letter" is not used with these nouns.

Daily Locutions

A list regularly used locutions translated into Turkish.

These kind of sayings are used in daily language to help us think and to emphasize our meaning.

Using these locutions will makes conversational language seem more fluid and normal in daily speech.

High Usage Word List

A list of words constantly used in daily speech in Turkish.

Irregular Simple Tense Verb List

The Simple Tense is the only one that shows partial irregularity in its formation.

There are only thirteen verbs that show this irregularity.

This list famous thirteen irregular single syllable verbs in the Simple Present.

Twelve of them end their root in **-l** or **-r**.

The single exception which root ends in **-n** (of these famous 13 exceptions) is **sanmak** which has the form **sanır** to suppose.

These verbs are in common daily use

Single Syllable Verb List

Turkish has many single syllable verbs simply because they become very lengthy after addition of suffixes indicating mood, tense and person.

Here is a comprehensive list of these verbs; knowing then expands vocabulary enormously.

Intensive Adjective List

This is a comprehensive list of Intensified Turkish Adjectives and Adverbs.

They are commonly used in conversation, newspapers, periodicals and novels. It is a way that language colours itself.

Turkish Reduplicated Word List

Turkish has reduplication of words to intensify meaning.

Some of these words are not true words alone.

English also has similar constructions *pell mell*, *helter skelter*.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 51 : An Apocopating Noun List



Nouns which lose their final vowel from the root word.

These particular nouns are to be shortened before adding any suffixes beginning with a vowel.

This list is comprehensive.

As an example the addition of the vowel **-i -ı -u -ü** is the 3rd Person Singular.

In the list below **Ağız** *Mouth* becomes **Ağzı** [Ağzı] *his mouth*.
The final internal vowel of the original word is 'lost'.

This is the same for all the nouns in this Apocopation Noun Listing.

Noun - Possessed Noun - Meaning

Aciz Aczi (NOT acizi) *Impotence*

Ağız Ağzı (NOT ağızı) *Mouth*

Ahit Ahdi *Injunction*

Akıl Aklı *Intelligence*

Akit Aktı *Treaty*

Akis Aksi *Reflection*

Alın Alın *Forehead*

Asıl Aslı *Origin*

Asır Asrı *Century*

Azim Azmi *Determination*

Bağır Bağrı *Bosom*

Bahis Bahsi (girmek) to bet

Beyin Beyni *Brain*

Boyun Boynu *Neck*

Burun Burnu *Nose*

Cisim Cismi *Substance*

Cürüm Cürmü *Crime*

Defin Defni *Burial*

Devir Devri *Period*

Ecir Ecri *Wage*

Emir Emri *Command*

Fasıl Faslı *chapter*

Fetih Fethi *Conquest*

Fikir Fikri *Idea*

Geniz Genzi *Nostril*

Göğüs Göğsü *Breast*

Gönül Gönlü *Heart*

Hacim Hacmi *Volume*

Haciz Haczi *Confiscation*

Hapis Hapsi *Prison*

Hasım Hasımı *Enemy*

Hazım Hazmı *Digestion*

Hışım Hışmı *Rage*

Hüzün Hüznü *Grief*

İlim İlmi *Science*

İsim İsmi *Name*

İzin İzni *Leave*

Kadir Kadri *Worth/Value*

Kahr Kahrı *Anxiety*

Karın Karnı *Stomach*

Kasıt Kastı *Intention*

Kayın Kaynı *Brother-in-law*

Kayıp Kaybı *Loss*

Kesir Kesri *Fraction*

Keşif Keşfi *Discovery*

Keyif Keyfi *Pleasure*

Kısım Kısmı *Part (of)*

Metin Metni *Text*

Nabız Nabzı *Pulse*

Nakil Nakli *Transport*

Nakit Nakdi *Cash*

Nazım Nazmı *Verse*

Nefis Nefsi *personality*

Nesir Nesri *Prose*

Neşir Neşri *Publication*

Nutuk Nutku *Speech*

Oğul Oğlu *Son*

Resim Resmi *Picture*

Sabır Sabrı *Patience*

Sath Sathı *plane (area)*

Seyir Seyri *Motion*

Sıkıt Sıktı *Miscarriage*

Şehir Şehri *City*

Şekil Şekli *Form/Shape*

Şükür Şükrü *Gratitude*

Tavır Tavrı *Mode/Manner*

Ufuk Ufku *Horizon*

Vakit Vakti *Time, occasion*

Vasıf Vasfı *Characteristic*

Zehir Zehri *Poison*

Zihin Zihni *Intellect*

Zulüm Zulmü *Tyranny*

Many of these nouns including the parts of the body are in constant daily use.:

burun nose becomes **burnum** my nose

beyin brain becomes **beynim** my brain

The noun "şehir city" itself apocopates normally "Şehre'ye gidiyorum." "I'm going to town." However actual city names being Proper Nouns do not apocopate: "Eskişehir", "Nevşehir" (cities in Turkey). "Eskişehir'e gidiyorum" or "Nevşehir'imiz çok güzel" are without any vowel loss.

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 52 : Conversational Locutions



Common Turkish Locutions

These kind of sayings are used in daily conversation to help in clarity of meaning.

Locutions give conversational language and speech fluidity and fluency.

acele ; ivedili *In a hurry*

açık havada *In the open*

affedesisiniz!; üzülüyorum *I am sorry!*

aldırmam! *I don't care*

Allah aşkına! *For God's sake!*

amacıyla *In order to*

amacıyla *With a view to*

anlaştık *Agreed ; OK!*

ara sıra *Once in a while*

aracıyla *By means of*

arada sırada *Now and again ; now and then*

arkada *At the back*

asla *By no means*

aşağı yukarı *More or less*

aynı zamanda *At the same time*

ayraksız *With no exceptions*

azar azar *Little by little*

bana kalırsa *As for me*

baştan başa *From end to end*

belki ; olabilir *Maybe*

bile bile ; kasten *On purpose*

bir an önce *The soonest possible*

bir çırpıda *In no time*

bir daha *Once again*

bir dakika *Just a moment*

bir parça *A little bit*

bir şey değil *Don't mention it*

bir şey değil *You're welcome*

biraz *A little*

birdenbire *All of a sudden*

birer birer *One by one*

boşuna *It is of no use*

böylelikle *In this manner*

bravo! *Well done!*

bu andan sonra *From this moment*

bu arada *In the meantime*

bu halde *In this case*

bundan başka *Besides*

bundan dolayı *Consequently*

bundan sonra *From this time on*

buyurun *Help yourself*

buyurun ; giriniz *Come in!*

bütün dünyada *All over the world*

bütün gün *All day long*

çok geçmeden yakında *Before long*

çoktan beri *A long time ago*

daha az *Less*

daha iyi *Better*

darmadağın *Up side down*

değil mi? *Isn't it?*

değmez *It is not worth while*

derhal *At once*

diğer taraftan *On the other hand*

dikkat et! *Look out!*

doğru ; tamam *That right*

dolmuştur *Full up*

durmadan *On and on*

elde *At hand*

elimde değil *I can't help it*

eliyle *Care of*

eminim *I am sure*

en azından *At least*

en çok ; azami *At most*

er geç *Sooner or later*

esasen ; nitekim *In fact*

eyvallah *So long*

ezberden *By heart*

fark etmez *It is all the same*

galiba *I suppose so*

geçenlerde *Of late*

gelecekte *In the future*

gene görüşeli *See you later*

gerekirse *If need be*

gidelim *Let's go*

gidiş-dönüş bileti *Return ticket*

git gide *Gradually*

git işine *Let me alone*

gölgede *In the shade*

haftada bir *Once a week*

hazır konfeksiyon *Ready made*

hemen hemen *Almost*

hepiniz *All of you*

her bakımdan *In every respect*

her gün *Every day*

her halde ; nasılsa *In any case ; somehow*

her zaman *At any rate*

her zamanki gibi *As usual*

hiç de değil *Not at all*

hoş geldiniz *Welcome!*

ısmarlama *Made to order*

ikiniz de *Both of you*

ilişik olarak *Enclosed*

ilk kez olarak *For the first time*

ilk önce *In the first place*

ilkin *At first*

ister istemez *Willy-nilly*

işe yaramaz *Good for nothing*

işte burada *Right here*

işte orada *Right there*

iyi şanslar *Good luck*

izinli *On leave*

izninizle *With your leave*

kabilse *If possible*

kaç tane *How many?*

kaç? ; ne kadar? *How much.*

kapıda *At the door*

kesinlikle *Once and for all*

kısa süre içinde *At short notice*

kiralık *To let ; to rent*

lütfen ; rica ederim *Please*

merak etmeyin *Don't worry*

modern *Up to date*

nasıl isterseniz *As you please*

nasıl olur? *How is that?*

nasılsınız? *How are you?*

ne çıkar? *What's the matter?*

ne oldu? *What happened?*

ne olur ne olmaz *Just in case*

ne oluyor? *What's happening? ; What's up?*

nede olsa *After all*

neden olmasın? *Why not?*

neniz var? *What's wrong with you?*

nihayet ; sonunda *At last*

nitekim *As a matter of fact*

o zaman ; öyleyse *Then*

o zamandan beri *Ever since*

o zamandan beri *Since then*

olabilir *That maybe*

ona göre *According to that*

ona rağmen *In spite of it*

orada *Over there*

ortada *In the middle*

oy birliği ile *With one accord*

önünde ; karşısında *In front of*

örneğin *For instance*

özür dilerim *I beg your pardon*

pek çok *Too many*

pek fazla *Too much*

peki *All right*

rasgele, rast gele *At random*

sabaha kadar *Till morning*

sabahleyin *In the morning*

sağ salim *Safe and sound*

sağda *On the right*

sahi mi? *Is that so?*

sanki ; güya *As if ; as though*

satılık *For sale*

sık sık *Frequently*

sıra ile *By turns*

sıra ile *In turns*

sırası gelmişken *By the way*

solda *On the left*

sonsuzca *For ever*

sonunda *At the end*

sonunda *In the end*

sonunda *In the long run*

sözde ; sanki *So to say*

Suçüstü *In the very act*

şartıyla *On condition that*

şartıyla *Providing that*

şimdiden sonra *From now on*

şimdilik *for the time being*

şimdiye kadar *Up to now*

şöyle böyle *So-so*

şöyle ki *So that*

şüphesiz *No doubt*

tabii *Of course*

tabii *To be sure*

tam vaktinde *Just in time*

tam vaktinde *On time*

tam zamanında *In due time*

tamam mı? *All set?*

tekrar *Over again*

tekrar ; bir daha *Once more*

tepesinde *On top of*

tersine ; aksine *On the contrary*

teşekkürler *Thanks a lot*

uçakla *By airmail*

usulen *As a rule*

uzun zamandan beri *Long ago*

uzun zamandan beri *Since a long time*

ya sonra? *What next?*

yakışıklı *Good looking*

yan yana *Side by side*

yani *That is to say*

yarım yamalak *Rough and ready*

yaşca küçük *Under age*

yürüyerek *On foot*

yüz yüze *Face to face*

zamanında *In due course*

zamansız *Ill-timed*

zararı yok *No harm done*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 53 : Common Daily Words



Acele et. *Hurry up.*

Acıktım. *I'm hungry.*

Affedersiniz. *Excuse me.*

Akşam. *Evening.*

Allahaısmarladık [said by person leaving] *Bye bye.*

Anlamıyorum. *I can't understand.*

Anlıyorum. *I understand.*

Arkada. *At the back.*

Bana söyleyebilir misiniz? *Can you tell me?*

Bana yardım eder misiniz? *Can you help me?*

Bana yardım edin. *Help me.*

Bana postaneyi gösterebilir misiniz? *Can you show me the post office?*

Ben de memnun oldum *Nice to meet you, too.*

Bey. *Mr.*

Biliyorum. *I know.*

Bilmiyorum. *I don't know.*

Bir şey değil. *You're welcome.*

Bugün. *Today.*

Burada. *Here.*

Buyurun ne istemiştiniz? *What would you like?*

Dün. *Yesterday.*

Elimde var. *Yes, on hand.*

Elimde yok. *No, not on hand.*

Eşiniz nasıl? *How is your wife/husband?*

Gece. *Night.*

Güle güle [said by person staying] *Good bye.*

Günaydın *Good morning*

Hangi? *Which?*

Hanım. *Mrs.*

Hoş geldiniz. *Welcome*

İlerde. *Ahead.*

İmdat. *Help!*

İstemiyorum. *I don't want.*

İstiyorum. *I want.*

İtalya'yım. *I'm Italian.*

İyi akşamlar. *Good evening.*

İyi dileklerimle *Best wishes*

İyi geceler. *Good night.*

İyi günler *Good day*

İyi şanslar *Good luck*

İyi yıllar *Happy new year*

İyi yolculuklar *Have a good holiday*

İyi, teşekkürler, ya siz? *Fine, thanks and you?*

Kaç tane? *How many?*

Kayboldum. *I'm lost.*

Kim? *Who?*

Lütfen. *Please.*

Merhaba *Hello/hi*

Mutlu yıllar *Happy birthday*

Nasıl yardımcı olabilirim ? *How can I help you?*

Nasıl? *How?*

Nasılsınız? *How are you?*

Ne istiyorsunuz? *What would you like?*

Ne kadar uzaklıkta? *How far?*

Ne kadar zamandır? *How long?*

Ne kadar? *How much?*

Ne yapmalıyım? *What must I do?*

Ne zaman? *When?*

Ne? *What?*

Neden? *Why?*

Nerede kalıyorsunuz? *Where are you staying?*

Nerede benzin alabilirim? *Where can I get/buy petrol?*

Nerede bir banka bulabilirim? *Where can I find a bank?*

Nerede? *Where?*

Nerelisiniz? *Where are you from?*

Öğle. *Afternoon.*

Önde. *On/At the front.*

Önemli. *That's important*

Orada. *Over there*

Oraya nasıl gidebilirim? *How can I get there?*

Sabah. *Morning.*

Sağda. *On/At the right.*

Sağ olun, iyim. *Thank you. I'm fine.*

Sizde para var mı? *Do you have any money?*

Size yardım edebilir miyim? *Can I help you?*

Solda. *On/At the left.*

Sorun nedir? *What's your question?*

Şurada. *Just there*

Susadım. *I'm thirsty.*

Tam karşıda ; dosdoğru. *Straight ahead.*

Tamam. *Ok.*

Tanıştığımıza memnun oldum *Nice to meet you*

Teşekkür ederim. *Thank you.*

Türkiyeliyim. *I'm from Turkey.*

Türküm. *I'm Turkish.*

Yarın görüşürüz *See you tomorrow*

Yarın. *Tomorrow.*

Yine görüşürüz. *See you later.*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 54 : Irregular Simple Tense Verbs



Simple Present Irregular Verb List (13)

The famous thirteen irregular single syllable verbs in the Simple Present.

Twelve of them end their root in **-l** or **-r**.

The single exception is **sanmak** which has the form **sanır** *to suppose*.

These verbs are in common daily use.

The Irregular Simple Present of these verbs is shown in the second column.

The Causative Verb form is shown in the last column.

UnDotted Vowel Group A I O U

Regular verbs use the regular tense sign -ar.

The Wide Tense Root of the Regular verb **atmak** *to throw* becomes **atar** as in **at-ar-ım** *I throw*

almak **alır** *to take/get* aldırmaq

bulmak **bulur** *to find* buldurmaq

durmak **durur** *to stop/to halt* durdurmaq

kalmak **kalır** *to remain/to stay* kaldırmaq

olmak **olur** *to be/to become* oldurmaq

sanmak **sanır** *to suppose* (lacking)

varmak **varır** *to arrive* vardırmaq

vurmak **vurur** *to strike/to hit* vurdurmaq

Dotted Vowel Group E İ Ö Ü

Regular verbs use the regular tense sign -er.

The Wide Tense Root of **geçmek** *to pass* becomes **geçer** as in **geç-er-im** *I pass*

bilmek **bilir** *to know how to* bildirmek

gelmek **gelir** *to come* geldirmek

görmek **görür** *to see* göstermek

ölmek **ölür** *to die* öldürmek

vermek **verir** *to give* verdirmek

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 55 : Single Syllable Verbs



Turkish Single Syllable Verb List

Turkish has many single syllable verbs.

Turkish Verbs can become very lengthy after addition of suffixes indicating mood, tense and person.

The second column shows the Simple Present Tense form.

The A-UnDotted Single Syllable Verbs

açmak - açar *to open*

akmak - akar *to flow*

almak - alır *to take/get*

anmak - anar *to mention*

artmak - artar *to increase*

asmak - asar *to hang down*

aşmak - aşar *to pass over*

atmak - atar *to throw*

bakmak - bakar *to look*

banmak - banar *to dip into*

basmak - basar *to tread on*

bıkmak - bıkar *to be fed up*

bozmak - bozar *to spoil*

bulmak - bulur *to find*

caymak - cayar *to change ones mind*

coşmak - coşar *to enthuse*

çakmak - çakar *to strike*

çalmak - çalar *to steal/play a mus. instr.*

çarpmak - çarpar *to bump*

çatmak - çatar *to bump against*

çıkma - çıkar *to go out*

çırpmak - çırpar *to beat*

doğmak - doğar *to be born*

donmak - donar *to freeze*

doymak - doyar *to be filled*

durmak - durur *to stop/to halt*

kaçmak - kaçar *to escape*

kalmak - kalır *to remain/to stay*

kalkmak - kalkar *to stand up*

kapmak - kapar *to snatch/to grab*

katmak - katar *to join*

kaymak - kayar *to slip/to slide*

kazmak - kazar *to dig*

kıpmak - kıpar *to wink/to blink*

kırpmak - kırpar *to trim/to clip*

kırmak - kırar *to break*

kısmak - kısar *to reduce*

kıymak - kıyar *to chop up*

kızmak - kızar *to get angry*

kokmak kokar *to smell of*

konmak - konar *to alight on/to camp*

kopmak - kopar *to snap*

korkmak - korkar *to be afraid*

koşmak - koşar *to run*

koymak - koyar *to put/to place*

kurmak - kurar *to set up/to establish*

kusmak - kusar *to vomit*

olmak - olur *to be/to become*

onmak - onar *to mend/to heal*

ovmak - ovar *to rub*

oymak - oyar *to carve*

salmak - salar *to let go*

sanmak - sanır *to suppose*

sapmak - sapar *to swerve*

sarmak - sarar *to wrap up*

sarkmak - sarkar *to hang down*

sarsmak - sarsar *to agitate/to upset s.o.*

satmak - satar *to sell*

saymak - sayar *to count*

sıĝmak - sıĝar *to fit into*

sıkmak - sıkar *to squeeze/to press*

sızmak - sızar *to ooze*

sokmak - sokar *to insert*

solmak - solar *to fade*

sormak - sorur *to ask*

soymak - soyar *to undress*

sunmak - sunar *to offer/to present*

susmak - susar *to be silent*

şaşmak - şaşar *to be surprised*

takmak - takar *to fix to*

tartmak - tartar *to weigh*

taşmak - taşar *to overflow*

tatmak - tadar *to taste of*

tıkmak - tıkar *to cram in*

tutmak - tutar *to hold/to take hold*

uçmak - uçar *to fly*

ummak - umar *to hope*

uymak - uyar *to suit/to fit*

varmak - varır *to arrive*

vurmak - vurur *to strike/to hit*

yağmak - yağar *to rain/to precipitate*

yakmak - yakar *to burn*

yanmak - yanar *to ignite*

yapmak - yapar *to do/to make*

yarmak - yarar *to split*

yatmak - yatar *to lie down/to go to bed*

yaymak - yayar *to spread*

yazmak - yazar *to write*

yığmak - yığar *to heap up*

yıkmak - yıkar *to demolish*

yılmak - yılar *to be afraid*

yırtmak - yırtar *to tear/to rip*

yolmak - yolar *to pluck*

yonmak - yonar *to pare/to sharpen*

yontmak - yontar *to snip/to chip*

yormak - yorar *to tire*

yummak - yumar *to close eyes or fist*

yutmak - yutar *to swallow*

The E-Dotted Single Syllable Verbs

biçmek - biçer *to reap*

bilmek - bilir *to know how to*

binmek - biner *to mount/to board*

bitmek - biter *to end*

bölmek - böler *to separate/to divide*

bükmek - бүker *to bend*

çekmek - çeker *to pull*

çizmek - çizer *to draw*

çökmek - çöker *to collapse/to kneel*

çözmek - çözer *to solve*

demek - der *to say*

değmek - değer *to touch*

delmek - deler *to pierce/to drill through*

dermek - derer *to collect*

dikmek - diker *to sow/sew/erect/plant*

ditmek - dider *to shred*

dizmek - dizer *to line up*

dökmek - döker *to pour*

dönmek - döner *to spin/to turn*

dövmek - döver *to beat/to thrash*

dürtmek - dürter *to prod*

düşmek - düşer *to fall*

düzmek - düzer *to arrange in place*

emmek - emer *to suck*

ermek - erer *to attain/to reach*

esmek - eser *to blow (wind)*

etmek - eder *to do*

ezmek - ezer *to crush*

gelmek - gelir *to come*

germek - gerer *to stretch*

gezmek - gezer *to stroll*

gitmek - gider *to go*

girmek - girer *to enter*

giymek - giyer *to dress*

göçmek - göçer *to migrate*

gömmek - gömer *to bury*

görmek - görür *to see*

gülmek - güler *to laugh*

içmek - içer *to drink*

iğmek - iğir *to bend/to curve*

inmek - iner *to dismount/to alight*

itmek - iter *to push*

kentmek - kenter *to notch*

kesmek - keser *to cut*

küsmek - küser *to be offended*

ölmek - ölür *to die*

ölçmek - ölçer *to measure*

öpmek - öper *to kiss*

örmek - örür *to knit/to plait*

örtmek - örter *to cover/to wrap*

ötmek - öter *to sing (bird)*

övmek - över *to praise*

pişmek - pişir *to cook (itself)*

seçmek - seçer *to choose*

sekmek - seker *to hop*

sevmek - sever *to love*

sezmek - sezer *to feel/to perceive*

silmek - siler *to wipe/to polish*

silkmek - silker *to shake off*

sinmek - siner *to crouch*

sökmek - söker *to undo/to pull up*

sönmek - söner *to be extinguished*

sövmek - söver *to swear*

sünmek - süner *to be extended*

sürçmek - sürçer *to stumble*

sürtmek - sürter *to rub with hand*

süzmek - süzer *to strain/to filter*

şişmek - şişer *to swell up*

tepmek - teper *to kick*

tütmek - tüter *to emit smoke*

ürkmek - ürker *to jump with fright*

üşmek - üşer *to flock*

üzmek - üzer *to hurt the feelings of*

vermek - verir *to give*

yenmek - yener *to win (game)/to conquer*

yermek - yerer *to blame*

yetmek - yeter *to suffice*

yüzmek - yüzer *to swim*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 56 : Turkish Intensified Adjectives



A comprehensive list of Intensified Turkish Adjectives and Adverbs.

Commonly used in conversation, newspapers, periodicals and novels, it is a way that language colours itself.

List of Turkish Intensified Adjectives

acayip - *queer*

apacayip - *very strange*

acele - *in a hurry*

alelacele - *very hastily*

açık - *clear/open*

apaçık - *very clear/open*

ayrı - *separate*

apayrı - *quite separate*

bakkal - *grocer*

bakkal çakkal - *grocers and the like*

başka - *another*

bambaşka - *quite another thing*

bayağı - *common*

basbayağı - *very common*

baygın - *unconscious*
aygın baygın - *languid*

bedava - *gratis*
besbedava - (little used) - *completely free*

belli - *evident*
besbelli - *very clear*

beter - *worse*
besbeter - *even worse*

beyaz - *white*
bembeyaz - *brilliant white*

bok - *shit*
bombok - *utterly spoilt*

bol - *full*
bosbol - *filled to the brim*

boş - *empty*
bomboş - *quite empty*

burun - *nose*
baltaburun - *hook nosed*

buruşuk - *creased*
bumburuşuk - *wrinkled all over*

bütün - *all*
büsbütün - *wholly*

canlı - *alive*
capcanlı - *animate*

çabuk - *quickly*
çarçabuk - *very quickly*

çevre - *surroundings*

çepeçevre - *all around*

çöp - *rubbish*

çerçöp - *sweepings*

çıplak - *nude, naked*

çırılçıplak - *stark naked*

dağınık - *untidy*

darmadağınık - *really untidy*

dar - *narrow*

dapdar - *cramped, tight-fitting*

daracık - *pretty narrow*

dapdaracık - *very narrow*

dazlak - *bald, skin head*

dumdazlak - *completely bald*

deli - *madman*

zıpırdeli - *frantic madman*

deli - *crazy*

zırdeli - *raving mad*

delice - *crazily*

deldelice - *madly*

dik - *perpendicular*

dimdik - *bolt upright*

diri - *alive*

dipdiri - *full of life*

dizgin - *(stirrup)*

doludizgin - *at full pelt*

dızlak - *bald/naked*

dımdızlak - *destitute*

doğru - *right/correct*
dosdoğru - *dead right*

dolu - *full*
dopdolu - *crammed full*

duru - *limpid*
dupduru - *very clear*

düz - *flat*
düpedüz - *dead flat*

düz - *straight*
dümdüz - *dead straight*

düz - *even*
düpedüz - *dead even*

geniş - *wide*
gepgeniş - *expansive*

gıcır - *brand new*
gıpgıcır - *spanking brand new*

gündüz - *daylight*
güpegündüz - *broad daylight*

hızlı - *fast*
hıphızlı - *very fast*

ince - *thin*
ipince - *very thin*

ılık - *tepid*
ıplık - *lukewarm*

ıslak - *wet*
ıpslak - *sopping/all wet*

ıssız - *uninhabited*

ıpıssız - *desolate*

iri - *big*

ipiri - *very huge*

kara - *black*

kapkara - *black as night*

kalın - *thick*

kapkalın - *quite thick*

karişık - *mixed up*

karmakarişık - *completely mixed up*

kısa - *short*

kıpkısa, kısacık - *very short*

koca - *large*

koskoca - *huge*

kocaman - *huge*

koskocaman - *enormous*

kolay - *easy*

kopkolay - *very easily*

koyu - *dense dark*

kopkoyu - *really dark*

kör - *blind*

köpkör - *absolutely blind*

kötü - *bad*

köpkötü - *(child talk) - very bad*

kötürüm - *paralyzed*

köskötürüm - *completely paralyzed*

kuru - *dry*

kupkuru - *bone dry*

kütük - *a log*
küskütük - *hopelessly drunk*

kıvrak - *tidy*
kıskıvrak - *neat and tidy*

mavi - *blue*
masmavi - *bright blue*

mor - *purple*
mosmor - *bright purple*

pak - *clean*
akpak - *squeaky clean*

pembe - *pink*
pespeembe - *shocking pink*

perişan - *miserable/worried*
perperişan - *very perturbed*

parça - *bits*
paramparça - *in smithereens*

pis - *dirty*
pimpis - *(child talk) - filthy dirty*

sağlam - *healthy*
sapasağlam - *in fine fettle*

sarı - *yellow*
sapsarı - *bright yellow*

sefil - *miserable/poor*
sersefil - *very miserable/poor*

sıcak - *hot*
sımsıcak - *red-hot*

sıkılam - *damp*

sırılsıklam - *sopping wet*

sıkı - *tight*

sımsıkı - *very tight*

sivri - *sharp*

sipsivri - *dead sharp*

siyah - *black*

simsiyah - *jet black*

şirin - *charming*

şipşirin - *very charming*

talan - *pillage*

alantalan - *in utter confusion*

tamam - *complete*

tastamam - *perfect*

tatlı - *sweet*

taptatlı - *very sweet*

taze - *fresh (food)*

terütaze - *blooming/very fresh*

taze - *fresh*

taptaze - *very fresh*

temiz - *clean*

tertemiz - *squeaky clean*

top - *round, ball-like*

tortop - *quite round*

uslu - *well behaved*

upuslu - *very well behaved*

uzun - *long*

upuzun - *very long*

uygun - *suitable*
upuygun - *quite adequate*

yalnız - *alone*
yapayalnız - *absolutely alone*

yassı - *flat and wide*
yamyassı - *very flat*

yaş - *wet*
yamyaş - *all wet*

yeni - *new*
yepyeni - *brand new*

yeşil - *green*
yemyeşil - *bright green*

yumru - *swollen/round*
yusyumru - *very swollen/round*

yumuşak - *soft*
yusyumuşak - *very soft*

yuvarlak - *globular*
yusyuvarlak - *absolutely spherical*

zayıf - *thin/feeble*
zapzayıf - *very thin/feeble*

zor - *difficult, hard*
zopzor - *very difficult*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 57 : Turkish Doubled Words



Turkish Re-duplicated Word List

Turkish has re-duplication of words to intensify meaning.

Some of these words are not true words alone. English also has similar constructions *pell mell*, *helter skelter*.

Turkish also has the added change of meaning with the use of suffixes. Very often these meanings have become specialized.

Reading is one of the best ways to assimilate these kinds of examples, as they appear everywhere, in novels, signs and newspapers.

Turkish Doubled Words

abuk sabuk *codswallop, waffle, tommy-rot*

abur cubur *junk food, to snack*

açık seçik (açık saçık) *clean cut, direct*

adım adım *step by step, incrementally*

afal afal *bewildered, stupefied*

ağır ağır *slow and gradual*

ağır ağır kaynamak *to simmer*

ahım şahım *beautiful, excellent, favourable*

akın akın *rushing, surging*

akça pakça *(pale-skinned) girl*

alaca(lı) bulaca(lı) *many coloured, spotted*

alet edevat *paraphernalia, gadgets*

alık alık *stupidly*

alık alık bakmak *to gawk, to gorm at*

allak bullak *shambolic*

allak bullak etmek *to jumble up*

allı pullu *showily dressed*

anlı şanlı *flamboyant, renowned*

apul apul *with waddling steps, toddling*

ardı ardına *back to back*

aval aval *stupidly*

avuç avuç *lavishly, in handfuls*

bangır bangır bağırarak *to shout loudly*

bas bas bağırarak *to shout loudly*

başa baş *neck-and-neck, par*

başka başka *one by one, separately*

başka biri *someone else*

başı başına *on one's own, independent*

baştan başa *from top to bottom*

bata çıka *with difficulty, to flounder*

belli belirsiz *uncertain, indistinct*

bıcı bıcı yapmak *to take a bath (child language)*

bingıl bingıl *fat and bulging, blubbery, quivering like jelly*

bili bili *chuckie, chuckie (a call for chickens)*

bire bir *one to one*

boğum boğum *gnarled*

boşu boşuna *in vain, uselessly*

bön bön bakmak *to look vacantly*

buram buram *a lot, in clouds of*

burcu burcu *fragrant smelling*

büklüm büklüm *curly, in curls*

cayır cayır *fiercely, burning furiously*

cazır cazır *burning with a crackly noise*

cır cır *chattering continuously [cicida]*

cıvık cıvık *sticky*

cıvıl cıvıl *alive and kicking, frisky*

cıyak cıyak *with a screech, with a squawk*

cızır cızır *with a sizzling noise*

cik cik *with a sizzling or sputtering sound*

cümbür cemaat *the whole lot, the whole caboodle*

çalı çırpı *sticks and twigs, brushwood*

çangıl çungul *with a clatter, crash*

çangır çungur *with a clatter, crash*

çatır çatır *with a crackling noise, easily, without difficulty*

çatır çutur *cracking or a crunching*

çeşit çeşit *assorted, all kinds of*

çıldır çıldır *brightly, with a sparkle*

çingır çingır *with a tinkle or a rattle*

çıpı çıpı *child's language taking a bath*

çıt çıt *a snap fastener, press-stud, nail-clipper*

çıtı pıtı *petite, dainty*

çıtır çıtır *crackling, crispy, crunchy*

çoluk çocuk *wife and children, household*

çör çöp or çer çöp *litter, sweepings, trash*

daldan dala *from branch to branch, always on the move*

darı darına or dar darına *narrowly, hardly, barely*

derin derin *deeply*

dırdır *continuous grumbling, nagging*

dişe diş *tit for tat, retaliation*

diz dize *with knees together*

doğru düzgün *straight and correct*

düşe kalka *with great difficulty, struggling along/on*

eciş bücüş *shapeless, crooked, distorted*

eğri büğrü *crinkly, contorted, twisted, gnarled*

el ele *hand in hand, hand by hand, hand to hand*

elden ele *from hand to hand*

enine boyuna *in length and breadth, broadly*

eski püskü *shabby, ragged, worn-out, tattered, tatty*

estek köstek *so so, that's the way it is*

ev bark *hose and home, home and family*

falan feşmekan *and so on, etc., blah blah*

falan filan *and so on, etc., blah blah*

feryat figan *wailing, squally*

fıkır fıkır *lively and flirtatious*

fır fır *around and around, popping up*

fırl fırl *whirling around*

firt firt *bumpety bump*

fıs fıs *in whispers, whispering*

fısıfısı *in whispers, whispering*

fısıfısı *with a sizzle or a hissing*

fış fış *with a swish or a rustle*

fışır fışır *with a swishing or a rustling*

fokur fokur *bubblingly hot and noisy, frothing up*

gelişi güzel *haphazard, slapdash*

gani gani *abundantly*

gıcır gıcır *squeaky clean, brand new*

gıdım gıdım *inching along, bit by bit*

gide gide (gitgide) *as it goes, gradually*

göz göze *eye to eye, to eyeball s.o.*

göze göz *an eye for an eye, (a tooth for a tooth)*

güm güm *with loud thumps, bangs, bumps*

gümbür gümbür *thundering, with a rumble*

günden güne *from day to day, daily*

günü gününe *to the very day*

gürül gürül *with a gurgling sound, in a loud/rich voice*

güzel güzel *calmly and quietly, peacefully*

haldır haldır *speedily and noisily*

harala gürele *hustle and bustle*

hıpur hupur *scoffing food, guzzling*

harıl harıl *diligently, intensively*

hava cıva *stuff and nonsense, bosh, naff*

hırıl hırıl *wheezy, rattling*

hışır hışır *with a rustling sound*

hop hop *stop!, a warning shout*

horul horul *snoring loudly*

hüngür hüngür *sobbing uncontrollably*

ıvır zıvır *unimportant details, trifles*

ıvır zıvır abur cubur *this and that*

içten içe *inwardly, secretly*

incik boncuk *baubles, trinkets*

kapış kapış *greedily*

kara kara *brooding(ly)*

karınca kararınca *in a small way*

kariş kariş *every inch of*

kaşık kaşık *by/in spoonfuls*

kerli ferli *well dressed elderly man*

kıkır kıkır *giggling*

kıpır kıpır *fidgety, restless*

kıtır kıtır *crisp, crackly, crunchy*

konu komşu *the neighbours, the whole neighbourhood*

körü körüne *hit or miss, blindly, carelessly*

kös kös *looking neither right nor left*

kucak kucak *by armfuls, in abundance*

kuçu kuçu *oggie, bow-wow, used to call a dog*

küt küt *pit a pat, a knocking*

lami cimi *no "buts". That's the way it is!*

lapa lapa *big snow flakes*

mırıl mırıl *with a mutter, murmur*

mışıl mışıl *(sleeping) soundly*

omuz omuza *shoulder to shoulder, side by side*

paldır güldür *headlong, pell-mell, helter-skelter*

parıl parıl *glitteringly, sparkingly*

pat pat *chug chug*

peşi peşine *One after another*

pılı pırtı *worn-out things, junk, rummage*

pır pır *whirring, Get going!, Make tracks!*

pırıl pırıl *squeaky clean, gleaming*

pış pış *nasty*

pıt pıt *pit a pat*

pıtır pıtır *pit a pat, clickety-click*

pisi pisi *pussy, kitty, to call cats*

pisi pisine *in vain, uselessly, for nothing*

poh poh *flattery, fulsome praise*

pütür pütür *chapped, cracked*

saati saatine *punctually*

saçma sapan *stuff and nonsense*

salkım saçak *hanging down untidily*

sapır sapır *in great quantities and continuously*

sere serpe *stretched out at full length,*

sıcağı sıcağına *while the iron is hot*

soy sop *family relations, ancestors*

sus pus *silent and cowering*

süklüm püklüm *in a crestfallen manner*

sürüm sürüm *miserably*

sütliman *very still and silent, dead calm*

süzüm süzüm *coquettish behavior*

şakır şakır *with a jingle, rattle, or clack.*

şap şap *kissy kissy*

şap şup *lip smacking, noisy eating*

şapır şupur *lip smacking eating*

şıkır şıkır *with a jingling, clinking noise*

şıp şıp *a drip drop sound*

şıpır şıpır *continuous dripping*

şırıl şırıl *a continuous splashing*

şöyle böyle *so so, indifferent, comme ci comme ça*

tak tak *rat tat tat, knock knock*

takım takım *in groups, in platoons*

takır takır *very stiff and dry, very stale food*

takır tukur *clatter, bang, wallop*

tamı tamına *exact, exactly, just so*

tangır tangır *clatter with a racket*

tangır tungur *with a rude clatter*

teke tek *one to one*

tık tık *tick-tock, rat a tat*

tıkır tıkır *perfectly, like clockwork*

tıkış tıkış *crowded*

tıklımıklım *jam packed with people*

tingırtingır *a continual clanging sound*

tirtir *shivering, trembling*

tiriltiriltir *spotlessly clean, gossamer like*

topu topu *all in all, all told*

ucucuna *end to end, just about*

usluuslu *polite(ly)*

vızırvızır *moving continually*

viyakviyak *squawking*

yaka paça *forcibly*

yan yana *alongside, adjacent*

yana yakıla *complaining(ly)*

yarım yamalak *sloppy, slipshod*

yavaş yavaş *slowly, easing*

yıldan yıla *annually, year on year*

yıvış yıvış *sticky*

zamazingo *thingamajig, thingy*

zangır zangır *shaking violently*

zehir zemberek *very poisonous and bitter*

zır zır *nerve-racking noise*

zırıl zırıl *incessant noise*

zırt fırt *at any time*

zırt pırt *whenever one feels like it*

zırt zırt *every so often*

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



Ch. 58 : The Author and the Book



The Author

I first went to Turkey in the late seventies to work a Professional Chartered Engineer in the industrial vehicle sector. I worked in a large factory in the Mersinli area of Izmir, and later in a factory in Manisa.

I could not speak Turkish at that time and most of the Turkish employees could not speak English to any great extent. So I made an effort to learn their language.

Eventually my contract ended but as I had found the language so fascinating, I continued my studies back home in England.

I was able eventually to pass the National Certificate Turkish Examinations and as I neared retirement I became a part-time lecturer in Turkish at my local Technical College for a number of years.

Some years ago I emigrated from England and retired to live in New Zealand.

I set up free Turkish teaching website (Manisa Turkish) as a thank you to my many Turkish friends and acquaintances who had helped me in many ways during my stay in Turkey while I was domiciled there.

The Book

This book is the result of notes I made while teaching and later from publishing the Manisa Turkish free website.

I am not a trained linguist and I have had quite a lot of help along the road of my own Turkish learning curve.

I feel learners of all levels will find that this book will help in their

A few readers of all levels will find that this book will help in their understanding of Turkish for English Speakers, as most language text books do not explain many of the intricacies of the Turkish language adequately.

"The Turkish Language Explained for English Speakers" does not pretend to be a course in Turkish; there are no exercises, drills or sound files as these can be found in many other text book or on the internet.

It explains and answers some of the difficulties that the learner of Turkish may encounter along their way.

I hope for those who are interested in the whys and wherefores of Turkish that they may find amongst these pages the key to their particular problem; I had many myself on my own learning curve.

The way I have understood may not be the accepted way for the grammarians and linguists, however if it helps anybody to understand then I am happy. Good Luck.

Finally I thank my dear wife, Dorothy, for her help and support in this venture.

John Guise

Kawerau, New Zealand

March 2012

[Back to Table of Contents](#)



ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS



Thanks to the helpers along my own learning curve.

I would like to thank some of the many people who have made suggestions, corrections and other contribution to these notes over the last 30 years.

My especial friends Ergun and Jale Kirkağaçlı, Nejati and Ayşe Sarıkut, the Biçer Family of Manisa and my old friend and colleague Ergun Karaca, who has now sadly left us.

Along the way there have been many other contributors and I thank them all:

Bahaddin Çankut, Oytun Arslan, Uğur Görgülü, John Rees, Jim Masters, Kim Sanders, Andrew Wroblewski, Princeton University, USA, Ulas Kayusu, Emrah Ayar, Nurcan Akaltun Çiftçi, Gülçin K., Dan Kneezel, Necati Türe, akyaka.org, Carl Boswell, A.E.R.Taylor, wikipedia.com, Onur Üstünel, Ebru Salıç, K. Murat Aras, audioenglish.net, Fırat Özgül, Stan Sutherland, Tuğba Demireli, Kadir Demirel, Nilda Ginn, Özer Kaan, Kıvılcım Günbattı, Alex Taurus, Dicle Düzgün, Ergin Asyalı, Umut Odabaşı, Nicholas Ragheb, Volker Bodegom, and many others.

The book I learned from many years ago: ISBN0710084153 "Colloquial Turkish" - Yusuf Mardin (1976)
Pub: RKP.



Manisa Turkish

Manisa Turkish Web Site:
<http://www.Turkishlanguage.co.uk>

[Back to Table of Contents](#)

